691.

THE HISTORY OF THE GERMAN EMPIRE

Continued FROM Sprengell

CHARLEMAGNE,

Down to the

PRESENT EMPEROR CHARLES VI.

Being a

Continuation of Mr. *Echard's*

ROMAN HISTORY.

VOL. I.

LONDON,
Printed for LAWTON GILLIVER, oppoſite to St. *Dunſtan's* Church and F. COGAN at the *Middle Temple Gate, Fleetſtreet*. MDCCXXXI.

HISTORY

OF THE

GERMAN EMPIRE

FROM

CHARLEMAGNE

TO

CHARLES VI.

PRESENTED
BY
THE HON. SOC.
OF
LINCOLN'S INN

Continuation of

ROMAN HISTORY



THE

PREFACE.

THE following History contains all that is properly Historical in *L' Heiss's Account of the German Empire*, and as such may be allowed to be called a *Continuation of the Roman History* published by *Mr. Echard*, and others. For the fourth Volume of that Work concludes with the Period of Time where this begins, and their fifth is confin'd to the affairs of the Eastern Empire alone, 'till the final destruction of it by the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Turks*. Whereas

this Hiſtory is a full Account of what has been tranſacted by thoſe, who, in a continual Succeſſion from *Charlemagne*, have to this Day retained the Name of Emperors in theſe Weſtern Parts.

As for the other Part of the Work, which treats of the Method of Election, of Genealogies, and Treaties, they would have raiſed the Price conſiderably, without yielding any Entertainment to the generality of Engliſh Readers; and are therefore here omitted.



THE CONTENTS.

BOOK I.

The Rise, Growth, and State of the Empire under CHARLEMAGNE, *and his Successors, to the time that the Imperial Dignity was no more Hereditary.*

Emperors began to Reign, An. Dom.		Pag.
768.	CHAP. I. *The Origin of the Empire.*	1
	Chap. II. *Charlemagne.*	11
814.	Chap. III. *Lewis the* Debonnair.	59
840.	Chap. IV. *Lothaire.*	85
855.	Chap. V. *Lewis* I.	90
875.	Chap. VI. *Charles* II *Sirnam'd the* Bald.	92
878.	Chap. VII. *Lewis* III. *call'd the* Stammerer, *and* Carloman.	94

Chap.

CONTENTS.

880. Chap. VIII. *Charles* III. *nam'd the* Groſs, *or the* Fat. 96
888. Chap. IX. *Arnold.* 98
900. Chap. X. *Lewis* IV. 100
Chap. XI. *The Genealogy of the* French *Emperors.* 106

BOOK II.

Emperors of different Families that have poſſeſs'd the Imperial Throne by Election, till the Time of the Houſe of AUSTRIA.

A. D.
912. CHAP. I. *Conrad* I. Pag. 111
920. Chap. II. *Henry* I. 114
936. Chap. III. *Otho* I. *called the* Great. 117
974. Chap. IV. *Otho* II. 130
983. Chap. V. *Otho* III. 133
1002. Chap. VI. *Henry* II. 139
1024. Chap. VII. *Conrad* II. 142
1040. Chap. VIII. *Henry* III. 146
1061. Chap. IX. *Henry* IV. 151
1106. Chap. X. *Henry* V. 193
1125. Chap. XI. *Lothaire* II. 211
1139. Chap. XII. *Conrad* III. 216
1152. Chap. XIII. *Frederick* I. 222
1190. Chap. XIV. *Henry* VI. 244
1198. Chap. XV. *Philip* I. 253

Chap.

CONTENTS.

1208. Chap. XVI. *Otho* IV. Pag. 260
1218. Chap. XVII. *Frederick* II. 267
1250. Chap. XVIII. *Conrad* IV. 289
1254. Chap. XIX. *William of* Holland. 291
1257. Chap. XX. *Richard* and *Alphonſo*. 294
1260. Chap. XXI. *Interregnum*. 297
1273. Chap. XXII. *Rodolphus of* Hapſbourg, *call'd the* Merciful. 301
1292. Chap. XXIII. *Adolphus of* Naſſau. 313
1298. Chap. XXIV. *Albert* I. 317
1309. Chap. XXV. *Henry* VII. 324
1314. Chap. XXVI. *Lewis* V. *of* Bavaria, *and Frederick* III. *of* Auſtria, *call'd the* Fair. 333
1348. Chap. XXVII. *Charles* IV. 348
1378. Chap. XXVIII. *Wenceſlaus*. 358
1401. Chap. XXIX. *Robert*. 364
1410. Chap. XXX. *Sigiſmund*. 367

BOOK III.

Emperors of the Houſe of AUSTRIA.

1437. CHAP. I. *Albert* II. 1
1440. Chap. II. *Frederick* III. 4
1493. Chap. III. *Maximilian* I. 20
1519. Chap. IV. *Charles* V. 35
1556. Chap. V. *Ferdinand* I. 123
1564. Chap. VI. *Maximilian* II. 130

Chap.

CONTENTS.

1576.	Chap. VII. *Rodolphus* II.	143
1612.	Chap. VIII. *Matthias.*	172
1619.	Chap. IX. *Ferdinand* II.	181
1637.	Chap. X. *Ferdinand* III.	244
1657.	Chap. XI. *Leopold.*	282
1705.	Chap. XII. *Joseph.*	341

THE HISTORY OF THE EMPIRE.

BOOK I.

The Riſe, Growth, and State of the Empire under CHARLEMAGNE, and his Succeſſors, to the Time that the Imperial Dignity was no more Hereditary.

CHAP. I.

The Origin of the Empire.

IN order to make a compleat Hiſtory of the *German* Empire, 'tis abſolutely neceſſary to ſhew how it received Birth, and the Name of the *Roman* Empire, though it had neither the Extent, Power, nor Dignity of that ancient and vaſt Empire, to which ſo many different Nations were ſub-

ject. And therefore I ſhall not content my ſelf with deriving its Eſtabliſhment from the Decline and Ruin of others, but ſhall go even back to the Origin of the firſt *Cæſars*, and relate ſo much of the old *Roman* Hiſtory as is proper for our preſent purpoſe.

ROMULUS laid the Foundation of the City and Kingdom of *Rome* in the Year of the World 3198. Six Kings, his Succeſſors, enlarged its Bounds for about two hundred and fifty Years before the Birth of JESUS CHRIST. But the *Roman* People, being no longer able to bear the Tyranny and Pride of *Tarquin*, the laſt of their Monarchs, reſolved to ſhake off the *Roman* Yoke, and be governed by themſelves, under the Name of a Commonwealth, and the Authority of two Magiſtrates, whom they called Conſuls. This ſort of Government was found ſo beneficial to her, that it laſted near four hundred Years, during which ſhe not only ſubdued *Italy*, but alſo many other Provinces in *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa*, where ſhe carry'd her Eagles.

BUT before I proceed farther, 'twill not be improper to obſerve, that the Eagle was not always the *Roman* Enſign; for in the Reign of *Romulus* they had no other Banner but a Handful of Hay or Straw, faſten'd to the End of a Rod, called in *Latin*, *Manipuli*, from whence came the Name of their firſt Troops, which they called *Manipulares*; but afterwards they followed the Example of their Neighbours, and uſed the Figures or Images of divers Animals faſtened to a ſort of Pike, ferrul'd at the Bottom, that it might ſtick in the Ground. Among theſe were the Figures of Wolves and Vultures; the firſt to commemorate the Wolf which ſuckled their Founder, and the other on account

account of twelve Vultures, by whoſe auſpicious Omen he obtained the Preference of his Brother *Remus*. When *Tarquinius Priſcus* became the fifth King of *Rome*, they choſe the Eagle for their principal Enſign, being inform'd by the *Etrurians*, that *Jupiter* was the firſt Inventor of this Banner, and had taken it for his Standard in his War againſt the *Titans*. From thence, they ſaid, that the Eagle was carried to the *Cretans*, ſince called *Candians*, from them to the *Trojans*, thence to the *Latins*, to whom it was brought by *Eneas*, and, in ſhort, from the *Latins* to the *Etrurians*, whoſe Example was followed by the *Romans*. They did not immediately reject the uſe of their former Enſigns; but 'tis thought that *Caius Marius*, in the War he waged ſo ſucceſsfully againſt the *Cimbrians*, obliged his Legions to leave all their private Enſigns in the Camp, and only carry to the Battle the Eagle, which was made of Silver, that it might give the greater Luſtre, and be more eaſily diſcerned by the Soldiers. Each Legion had one; but they were diſtinguiſh'd from each other by different Ornaments, to denote the Order and Rank of the Legions, and teach them to know their own with more Eaſe. The firſt Cohort of the Legion carry'd it, but that did not hinder the other Cohorts from having their particular Enſigns, according to the Fancy of the Officers who commanded them. Thus the Eagle became the principal Banner of the *Romans*, and remained ſo; which was afterwards held in ſuch great Veneration, that the Generals of the Armies, who aſpired to the ſupream Power with the Aſſiſtance of the Legions, took care to poſſeſs themſelves of the Eagle firſt, well knowing that all the World would immediate-

ly take Arms for that Side which was in Poſſeſſion of the Eagles. It has hardly ever been known that the *Roman* Senate and People, who had the Right to appoint the Emperors and Generals of the Armies, ever refus'd to confirm, or conſent to thoſe whom the Legions elected on extraordinary Occaſions: Such was the Reſpect they preſerv'd for the Eagles.

WE here, with a good deal of Reaſon, uſe the Title *Emperor*; the Word then ſignify'd no more than *General of an Army*, and only conferr'd an abſolute Command and Authority over the Troops; although afterwards it was the Appellation given to the Sovereigns of *Rome*, and Provinces ſubject to the Empire.

THOUGH its Territories, whilſt a Commonwealth, were prodigiouſly enlarged, and the Republick thereby raiſed to ſuch a Pitch of Grandeur, as to become formidable to the whole World under the Conſular Government; yet ſuch Confuſion enſued, that ſeveral of the Chiefs of Parties entertained Thoughts of taking the Advantage, and ſeizing the Sovereign Power; and Attempts were accordingly made. But Fortune at laſt declared for *Julius Cæſar*, who, having triumph'd over the *Gauls*, *Britain*, *Spain*, and Part of *Germany*, defeated *Pompey*, an Aſſertor of the Liberty of his Country, gained of him the famous Battle of *Pharſalia*; and, having no more Competitors that could diſpute the Empire with him, became Sovereign Prince, and enjoy'd it peaceably four Years, under the Title of PERPETUAL DICTATOR, whereunto they added that of EMPEROR, which was retain'd by his Succeſſors with the Empire, and all the Marks of Sovereignty.

THIS

THIS firſt Founder of the Empire was kill'd eight Years after his Return to *Rome*, in the Year of the World four thouſand and ten, forty four Years before the Birth of JESUS CHRIST, at the Age of fifty ſix: And this Murder was committed in the Senate-houſe by *Brutus* and *Caſſius*; of whom he was the leſs ſuſpicious, as having done them many Services, and therefore ranked them among the number of his beſt Friends. *Brutus* was incited to this bloody Action by his Zeal for the Liberty of his Country; and *Caſſius*, through Ambition, though veil'd under the ſame Pretence of Liberty: Whence one might reaſonably judge, that, on *Cæſar*'s Death, the Sovereign Power would have reverted to the *Roman* Senate and People, as before; but nothing could alter the Deſtiny of that great Empire. *The Death of Julius Cæſar.* 4010.

AUGUSTUS, the adopted Son of *Cæſar*, reveng'd his Death: joining with *Anthony* and *Lepidus*, and creating the *Triumvirate*. But as he could not call himſelf truly Maſter, whilſt the Sovereignty was thus divided, he began to diminiſh the Power of *Lepidus*, by inticing away his Forces, that he might rid his Hands of him with more Eaſe; which being effected, he depriv'd him of the Provinces fallen to his Lot, and ſent him to *Rome*, where he was reduced to a private Station. This Deſign having ſucceeded, he rejoiced at the War's breaking out between him and *Anthony*, wherein he manag'd himſelf with ſo much Courage and Conduct, that he became Victor; which Overthrow was ſoon after followed with the Death of his unfortunate Colleague. Thus *Auguſtus* became ſole Maſter of the Empire, whoſe great Succeſs was attended with ſo much good Fortune and Glory, that, after he 4111. *Auguſtus.*

had enlarged the Empire by ſeveral Conqueſts, he eſtabliſhed a general Peace, in the Year of *Rome*'s Foundation, 750, about the Time that JESUS CHRIST, came into the World to give it to all Mankind: and, after having reigned fourteen Years more with all the good Fortune imaginable, he died in the ſeventy ſixth Year of his Age.

A. D. 14. THE Heathen Emperors, who ſucceeded him in the Empire, did not inherit his Virtue. Moſt of them, at firſt, ſhew'd a great deal of Prudence and Generoſity, to gain the Affections of the Senate and People; which being done, and they ſettled on the Throne, ſoon indulged their Paſſions, and thereby plunged themſelves into all ſorts of Vice, and thence into Tyranny, its inſeparable Companion: Inſomuch that, as their Lives were lewd and barbarous, ſo their Deaths were miſerable, ſome being kill'd by their Soldiers, their Guards or Domeſticks, and others laying violent Hands upon themſelves.

A. D. 306. FROM the Death of *Auguſtus* they reckon thirty nine Heathen Emperors, who reigned but two hundred ninety two Years, to the time of *Conſtantine*, ſirnamed the *Great*, who ſucceeded his Father *Conſtantius Chlorus*, and was elected in the Year 306. He was the firſt Chriſtian Emperor; and he embraced the Chriſtian Religion on a very remarkable Account: Being on full March to fight the Tyrant *Maxentius*, he ſaw, at Noon-day, the Sign of a Croſs in the Heavens, around which, in the *Greek* Language, were theſe Words: *Under this Banner thou ſhalt overcome.* This Prodigy created an equal Aſtoniſhment in him, and his whole Army, who ſaw it, not at firſt underſtanding what it meant. But the Night following,

lowing, JESUS CHRIST appeared to him in his Sleep, and commanded him to make a Standard in the Shape of a Croſs, after the ſame manner as that which he had ſeen the Day before in the Skies, and carry it in his Army on the Day of Battel, if he deſir'd to be victorious over his Enemy.

THIS Viſion he related to his Friends when he awaked, and at the ſame time ſent for Workmen, and, deſcribing the Form of the Sign he had ſeen, order'd them to make him one of the ſame Figure in Gold ſet with Jewels.

'TWAS like a long Pike, the top whereof was croſs'd with a piece of Wood like a Crucifix, over which was a golden Crown ſet with precious Stones of infinite Value, artfully interwoven with the two firſt *Greek* Letters of the Name of JESUS CHRIST in a Cypher. From the Staff that croſs'd the top of the Pike, a Flag of Purple, imbroidered with Gold and Jewels, wav'd in the Wind, at the bottom whereof the Emperor had his own, and his Childrens Pictures imbroidered at half length. This was the Figure of that famous Standard, which was called by the Name of *Labarum*, and which he carry'd at the Head of his Army, as a Pledge of his good Fortune, and a Preſage of Victory. In effect, depending upon this, he continued his March, offer'd Battle to *Maxentius*, and entirely routed him. This was the Occaſion of this great Emperor's Converſion, and made this Standard reverenced and reſpected till the Time of *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, who aboliſh'd the Uſe of it in his Armies. A. D. 312.

SOME Years after, he transferred the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Byzantium*, changing its Name to *Conſtantinople*, that is to ſay, the City of *Conſtantine*. He thought that Situation *The Eſtabliſhment of the* Eaſtern *Empire.*

moſt convenient; becauſe from thence he could eaſily tranſmit his Orders either to *Europe*, *Aſia*, or *Africa*, and could better defend his Frontiers againſt the Irruptions of the *Perſians*, and other foreign Nations.

HAVING named his new City in the Year three hundred and thirty, he divided the Em-
[An. 330. pire into two Parts, the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern*, which were afterward called the *Eaſtern* and *Weſtern* Empires, and often govern'd by two *Cæſars*. Some Authors pretend that 'twas He, who (on account of this Diviſion) made the Alteration which is yet to be ſeen in the Imperial Arms; that is, that, inſtead of a plain black Eagle, which former Emperors had always born in their Enſigns from the time of *Auguſtus*, who (as they ſay) bore the ſame; he had a Spread Eagle, with two Heads, crown'd with a cloſe Imperial Crown, as at preſent; inſtead of a Laurel Wreath, which was before in Uſe on all his Standards; and, amongſt ſeveral Reaſons given for this Alteration, the moſt credible is, that he intended it as a Sign, that both the Eaſt and the Weſt had ſubmitted to his Power.

An. 337. HE died in the Year 337, at the Age of ſixty five, not without Suſpicion of being poiſoned, memorable, amongſt other great Actions, for having called the *Council of Nice*.

Diſſentions between the Sons of Conſtantine *the* Great *about their Inheritance.*

A YEAR before his Death, foreſeeing the Diſorders that might happen in his Family, he endeavoured to prevent them, by dividing his Empire amongſt his three Sons. But this Precaution could neither reſtrain their Ambition, nor curb their Avarice. *Conſtantine*, the eldeſt, not content with the Share his Father had given him, wanted to make himſelf Maſter of *Italy*, which was the Lot of *Conſtantius*,

ſtantius, his younger Brother; and, taking Advantage of his Abſence, he march'd that way purpoſely with a powerful Army. *Conſtantius*, being apprized of his Deſign, ſent his Troops to oppoſe him, under the Conduct of one of his Generals; and the Armies meeting near *Aquileia*, gave Battel, where *Conſtantine* loſt both the Day and his Life.

CONSTANTIUS, ſeeing himſelf thus Maſter of *Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Spain*, with all his Father poſſeſſed from the Gulph of *Venice* to the Ocean, and from the *Mediterranean* Sea to *Germany*, took upon himſelf the Title of *Emperor of the Weſt*, which he loſt ſoon after, together with his Life, by *Magnentius*, who depriv'd him of them both; but he did not long enjoy the Fruits of his Infidelity: *Conſtans*, the only ſurviving Son of *Conſtantine* the Great, finding himſelf obliged to revenge his Brother's Death, purſued the Tyrant, met him in *Pannonia*, and defeated him in a pitched Battel near the City of *Murſa*. *Magnentius* eſcaped from the Action, and retired into *Italy*, where he was follow'd by *Conſtans*, who drove him thence, oblig'd him to fly to the *Alps*, and there entirely routed him in a third Battel. *Magnentius*, finding no further Refuge, threw himſelf into the City of *Lyons*, where, having firſt killed his own Mother in a Fit of Deſpair, he laid violent Hands upon himſelf; by whoſe Death *Conſtans* remained the ſole Poſſeſſor of all *Conſtantine* the Great's Dominions. From that Time the Eaſtern and Weſtern Empires were often ſeparated from each other, and afterwards reunited till the Year 397, when the Emperor *Theodoſius* divided them before his Death between his two Sons *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, giving the Eaſtern Empire to the former,

The two Empires reunited in the Perſon of Conſtans, the laſt of Conſtantine the Great's Sons.

An. 353.

Another Diviſion of the Empire made by Theodoſius *the Great.*

An. 397. mer, and the Weſtern to the latter. But as they were yet young, and conſequently incapable of governing for themſelves, they were attack'd by divers Nations, and, not being able to aſſiſt each other, the two Empires ſuſtain'd great Loſſes, eſpecially that of the Weſt, the Succeſſors of *Honorius* retaining hardly any more than the Title of Emperors of the Weſt, nor did they long preſerve even that; for, about fifty Years after the Death of *Honorius*, *Auguſtulus*, the laſt of theſe Emperors, being taken Priſoner, and confin'd in a Caſtle near *Naples*, by *Odoacer*, King of the *Herules*, the latter made himſelf Maſter of *Italy*, and gave Riſe to the Kingdom of the *Herules*, which did not continue long; for, a few Years after, the *Oſtrogoths* entring, with the Conſent of the Emperor *Zeno*, in the Year four hundred eighty nine, under the Conduct of their King *Theodorick*, he conquer'd, and put to Death *Odoacer* with his Son, and made himſelf Maſter of the Kingdom, without aſſuming the Title of Emperor, though it was offer'd him.

400.

476.

The Empire is invaded by ſeveral foreign Nations.

489.

NEITHER was the Government of the *Goths* of long Continuance in *Italy*; they remained there but about fifty eight Years, when that People were almoſt entirely exterminated by *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*. The *Lombards* eſtabliſhed themſelves upon their Ruins, and were Maſters of *Italy* till the Time of *Charlemagne*, who freed *Rome* from that ſhameful Bondage, under which ſhe had groan'd for many Ages, and reeſtabliſhed the Weſtern Empire, as will be ſeen in the ſequel of this Hiſtory.

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

CHARLEMAGNE.

WE ſhall no longer mention the Emperors of the Eaſt, becauſe their Empire was entirely at an End in the Weſt, under the Reign of *Conſtantine* the Younger, and his Mother *Irene*, and devolv'd upon the Perſon of *Charlemagne*. The Valour and prudent Conduct of this Prince obſcured and obliterated their Memory in ſuch a manner, that, in a little time, they were hardly known; and as, on the one hand, his Reign was but a continued Series of Victories and Conqueſts; ſo, on the other, the Reigns of thoſe Emperors were but a Chain of Loſſes and Misfortunes. Whilſt they were thus hurrying on to their utter Ruin, let us ſee by what Means *Charles* recovered the Empire of the Weſt, and to what a pitch of Grandeur he carry'd it, till he had it declared the only *Roman* Empire. But, in order to ſet in a clear Light what promoted this great Eſtabliſhment, and to illuſtrate this Prince's Virtue, his Zeal for Religion, his heroick Actions, and all the other extraordinary Qualities that were conſpicuous in his Perſon, I ſhall be obliged to enter into a Detail of his whole Life. For this end I ſhall enlarge a little upon his principal Actions, eſpecially upon his Conqueſts, that we may the better know what this his glorious Inheritance conſiſted of, which he held only of GOD, and his Sword, and

CHARLEMAGNE. An. 552.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

and left to his Succeſſors to enjoy by hereditary Right.

His Mother, *Bertrade*, who was of the Blood Royal, and lawful Queen to *Pepin*, King of *France*, brought him into the World the twenty eighth of *January*, 747, in the Palace of *Ingelheim*, two Leagues from *Mentz*, though ſome will have it that he was born at *Conſtance*, and others affirm that it was at *Carlsberg* near *Munich* in *Bavaria*. This Birth cauſed the more Joy in the Chriſtians of *France* and *Germany*, becauſe a new Star, of an extraordinary Brightneſs, appearing in the Heavens both before and at the Time of his coming into the World, they reckoned it as a certain Preſage that the Child would be made the Inſtrument by God to carry the Light of the Goſpel amongſt the *German* Heathens, which accordingly happened.

PARTICULAR Care was taken of his Education; of which he made ſo good Uſe, that he became the Admiration of the whole Court for his Wiſdom. He had from his Youth the BIBLE and a SWORD carried before him, declaring that he would edify Chriſtians by the one, and defend them by the other. His good Temper won him the Heart of King *Pepin*, his Father, who, from the Moment that he ſaw him capable of acting, thought he could not truſt the Command of his Armies in *Gaſcony* in better Hands than his Son's; where *Charles* gave the firſt Proofs of his Courage.

An. 768. PEPIN dying the twenty eighth of *October*, 768, his two Sons, *Charles* and *Carloman*, divided his Dominions. *Charles* had the Weſtern *France*, and *Carloman* the Eaſt, or *Auſtraſia*: They were both acknowledged as Kings, and crowned,

crowned; the first at *Worms*, others say at *Noyon*; and *Carloman* at *Soissons*. CHARLE-MAGNE.

CHARLES being desirous to continue the War he had begun in his Father's Life-time against *Hunold*, Duke of *Aquitain*, who persisted in his Revolt, endeavour'd by his Ambassadors to gain over his Brother *Carloman*'s Consent. But finding he could not compass his Design that way, because *Carloman* being of an odd Temper, and susceptible of bad Impressions, had conceived a violent Jealousy of him; he resolved to go in Person to visit him, that he might remove that Jealousy, and that the World might believe there was a good Understanding between them. He had a Conference with him about this Enterprise, and, in order jointly to bring it to a Conclusion, he prevail'd so far upon *Carloman*, that he engaged him to join Forces with him; who, falling again into Distrust of his Brother, left him half way. However, this did not hinder *Charles* from continuing his March at the Head of a considerable Army, towards the Capital of *Aquitain*, whereof he soon made himself Master, together with all the rest of the Province; he even drove his Enemies beyond the *Garonne*, where they retir'd to *Wolf*, Duke of *Gascony*. But *Charles*, not content with an imperfect Victory, and, depending upon the Justice of his Cause, summon'd the Duke, demanding *Hunold* to be delivered up to him, threatening, on Refusal, to come himself and take him out of his Custody: *Wolf*, terrify'd at this Menace, not only sent *Hunold*, with his Wife and Children, but also put himself under the Protection of *Charles*, that he might not expose either his Person or his Country to the Resentment of the Conqueror. An. 769.

THUS

CHARLE-MAGNE.

THUS *Aquitain* loſt for that Time the Title of a Dukedom; but ſome time after, *Charles* erected it into a Kingdom in favour of one of his Sons; but he nevertheleſs created Counts, and made them Sub-Governors of this Province. Theſe Counts, as well as the Dukes and Marquiſſes, were at firſt generally liable to be turned out, according to the Pleaſure of the Sovereign.

THE Dukes were ſuperior in Dignity to Counts, and had the Government of Provinces, the Command of Armies, and the principal Adminiſtration of Juſtice; they had uſually Counts with them, who were called in *Latin*, *Comites*, that is to ſay, Companions; becauſe they were given to the Dukes as Aſſiſtants to do Juſtice; however, when theſe Dukes were either wanting or abſent, they had often Authority to command the Forces and Provinces where they were ſettled. The Word *Duke* came from the *Latin*, *Dux*, which is a General; becauſe the chief Employment of the Dukes was to command Provinces and Armies. The Office of Marquiſſes was to be Governors of the Frontiers called *Marches*; for which reaſon they who had ſuch Governments, were ſtyled Marchis, and afterwards, by Corruption, Marquiſſes, or, in the *German* Tongue, Markgraves, that is to ſay, Counts of the Frontiers. There were Dukes, whoſe Power was much ſuperior to the others, being ſometimes Governors even of many Provinces; but of theſe there were very few. There were Counts alſo, who had greater Juriſdiction than others; as the Counts of the Kings or Emperors Palace, whence came the Title of Counts Palatine, who adminiſter'd Juſtice in caſe of their Abſence, or any other Hindrance, and had the Cognizance of ſupream Cauſes,

Cauſes. The other Counts were ſettled in the Provinces, and from them are deriv'd the *Landgraves*, a *German* Word which ſignifies the Counts of the Country. Some were likewiſe often ſent into Towns (whence comes the Title of *Burgrave*) to diſtribute Juſtice, take care of the Prince's Revenue, and ſuperintend the raiſing of the publick Money. In the Beginning, theſe Titles of Dukes, Marquiſſes, Counts, Landgraves, and Burgraves, were but Titles of Offices and Governments, not of Inheritance; and were only granted for a limited time, ſometimes more, ſometimes leſs, according to the Merit or Quality of the Perſons, or other Motives; but, in Proceſs of Time, the Properties of Provinces, Countries, Lands, and Cities, were annex'd to theſe Titles, before which theſe Dukes, Counts, and others, were but Adminiſtrators of the publick Affairs: And theſe Provinces, *&c.* with theſe Titles, were granted to ſome Noblemen for their Lives, to others for ever in their Families from Male Heir to Male Heir, or otherwiſe, on Condition of defending the Country, and of holding them by Fealty and Homage to the Sovereign. As to the regal Dignity, it was abſolutely perpetual and independent, unleſs it had been conferr'd on ſuch as were inveſted with it, on Condition of holding it of him from whom they had received the Crown. CHARLE-MAGNE.

As ſoon as *Charlemagne* had ſettled Affairs in *Aquitain*, he return'd into *Germany*, and went to paſs the *Chriſtmas* at *Mentz*, and the *Eaſter* at *Heriſtal*. Herein he, and his Succeſſors, imitated his Father *Pepin*, who celebrated theſe Feſtivals with the greateſt Solemnity. On theſe Feſtival-days they appeared in all their Royal Robes and Ornaments, having the Crown upon An. 770

CHARLE-MAGNE.

upon their Heads, and attended by all their Officers and Grandees of the Kingdom, who were all invited thereto. This was called holding a plenary Court, which the Hiſtorians of that Time never fail to mention every Year, and even ſo much as the Place where 'twas held. From thence he went to *Worms*, where the Aſſembly of the States General of the Empire (ſince term'd the Diet) was called together. Herein he deliberated with them upon, and conſulted proper Means for keeping the *Saxons* within their due Limits, and to reduce that fierce, idolatrous People, who only liv'd upon the Spoils of their Neighbours. Whilſt he was preparing for this Expedition, he received News that his Brother *Carloman* was dead of a Bleeding at the Noſe, which could not be ſtopped. This Accident obliged him to defer the Execution of his projected Scheme, till after he had ſecured to himſelf the Succeſſion to his Brother's Dominions. It was of the utmoſt Importance to him to become Maſter of them; and the Occaſion was favourable: Moſt of the *Auſtraſian* Nobility and Prelates demanding him for their King. He therefore repaired to the Dominions of his Brother, and took Poſſeſſion thereof with the joint Conſent of the States and People, who ſubmitted voluntarily to his Obedience, whereby all the Provinces, whereof his Father *Pepin* was poſſeſſed, were reunited under his ſovereign Power. *Gerberge*, *Carloman*'s Widow, called by ſome *Berte*, or *Bertrade*, had taken flight before the coming of *Charles*, for fear of being ſeiz'd, and ſought Refuge with her Children in *Bavaria*. From thence ſhe retired with them to *Didier* King of *Lombardy*, who received them very honourably, eſpouſed their Intereſt, and even ſollicited the

An. 771.

Pope

Pope to crown the Sons of *Carloman* Kings; but though he made his Addreſſes for that purpoſe in a very polite manner, yet could not prevail. CHARLE-MAGNE.

As there had been already great Cauſes of Enmity between *Charles* and *Didier*, the chief whereof was, that *Charles*, having married that King's Daughter, nam'd *Theodore*, or, as others ſay, *Hermengarde*, had put her away a Year after, on pretence of her having the Leproſy, the Refuge and Protection which the *Lombard* had granted to *Gerberge* and her Children, exaſperated *Charles* afreſh, and made him think of revenging himſelf on him. He ſtrengthened himſelf the more in this Reſolution, being at that Time powerfully ſollicited by the Pope, and the *Romans*, to paſs the Mountains immediately, and deliver them from the Tyranny of the *Lombards*, and the Oppreſſion under which they had long made the Holy See to groan. But he was willing, before he ſet in earneſt about the Affairs of *Italy*, to conſummate the Marriage that had been propoſed to him with *Hildegarde*, Daughter of *Hildebrand* Duke of *Suabia*; and alſo to execute the Reſolutions he had made a Year before in the Diet held at *Worms* againſt the *Saxons*, for the Reduction of thoſe Barbarians, even by Fire and Sword. To this end he march'd againſt them with a powerful Army; but he was oblig'd to halt at the Head of the River *Lippa*, near *Hermenſeil*, on account of an exceſſive Drought, which would infallibly have deſtroyed his Forces, if GOD, by a miraculous Providence, had not three Days after ſent down Water enough from the top of a Hill to refreſh the whole Army. 'Twas not till the fourth Day that he advanced towards the *Weſer*, where he obliged the *Saxons*, being terrified at the An. 772.

CHARLEMAGNE.

Sight of ſo many Forces as they had drawn upon their backs, to ſubmit themſelves, and give him twelve Hoſtages, as an Aſſurance of their Fidelity.

Charlemagne's Expedition into Italy, *to revenge himſelf on* Didier, *and re-eſtabliſh the Pope.* 773.

IN the mean while *Didier* perſiſted in perſecuting the Pope and the *Romans*: He even ridicul'd the *French*, and ſaid, he did not value the *barking of thoſe Curs*, truſting to his Forces, and the Difficulty of paſſing the *Alps*; but *Charles* made him ſoon change his Tone. He undertook the Expedition into *Italy* with two Armies, which he cauſed to paſs the *Alps*, one at Mount *Cenis*, commanded by himſelf in Perſon, and the other at Mount *Jou*, under the Conduct of his Uncle, Prince *Bernard*. They forced the Barricades and the Paſſes with more Labour and Expence than Bloodſhed, meeting with but little Reſiſtance. On their Arrival in *Lombardy*, *Didier* quitted the Field, and threw himſelf into *Pavia*, with his Queen *Gauſa*, his Children, and beſt Troops. *Charles* immediately made himſelf Maſter of *Verona*, and, without Loſs of Time, laid ſiege to *Pavia*, whereof *Didier* made ſuch an obſtinate Defence, that *Charles* had leiſure enough to go to *Rome*, where he met with a very magnificent Reception from Pope *Adrian* I. and the whole *Roman* People. During his Stay there, ſome Authors affirm that the Pope, the Senate, and the *Roman* People, looking upon *Charles* as their Deliverer, and come on purpoſe to free them from the Oppreſſion of the *Lombards*, ſubmitted themſelves to him, and tender'd him the ſame ſovereign Power as the former Emperors had over them and their City. Purſuant to this they took the Oath of Allegiance to him in St. *Peter*'s Church, and upon his Tomb, as to their Sovereign; and ratified the whole ſolemn-

Charles *goes to* Rome, *which ſubmits to him, and confirms the Gift of King* Pepin *to the* Pope.

ſolemnly by an authentick Act, which is the famous Decree of *Adrian* I. CHARLEMAGNE.

BY this Title, beſides his ſovereign Power over *Italy*, as his undoubted Conqueſt, he was declared a *Patrician* of the City of *Rome*, which was the next Degree to the Empire; and in this Quality he had a Right, as well as the former Emperors above two hundred Years before, to confirm the Election of the Pope, and to give the Inveſtiture of Biſhopricks throughout all his Dominions.

CHARLES, on his ſide, confirm'd, in favour of the Church of *Rome*, the Gift his Father *Pepin* had made her of the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*, after he had conquer'd it from *Aſtolphus*, King of the *Lombards*; as alſo of the Marquiſate of *Ancona*, of the Cities of *Bologna*, *Mantua*, *Ceſenna*, *Modena*, *Regio*, *Parma*, *Piacenza*, *Ferrara*, *Farneſe*, and ſome other Places and Caſtles belonging to this *Exarchate*, which deriv'd its Name from the Title of *Exarch*, which the Emperors gave to their Prefects, Governors, or Lieutenants, whom they appointed to command thoſe Parts in their Name. 774.

THUS the *Exarchate*, which the Emperors, and after them the *Lombards*, had poſſeſſed for the ſpace of ſeven hundred and fifty Years, was transferr'd from their Hands into the Pope's. *Charlemagne* added alſo the Gift of ſeveral other States; as alſo of the Iſland of *Corfu*, of the River of *Genoa*, the upper *Tuſcany*, the State of *Urbino*, and other Places; and, having thus ſettled Affairs, return'd with all ſpeed to *Pavia*, to put an End to the Siege.

THE greateſt Part of the Soldiers and Inhabitants that were in the Town, were dead either of the Plague or Famine. This extream Miſery obliged *Didier* to ſurrender at Diſcre- *The Reduction of Pavia and King Didier.*

CHARLE-MAGNE.

tion, and *Charles* baniſh'd him with his Wife to *Liege*, where he ended his Days in the Year 782. His Son *Adalgiſes* dy'd at *Conſtantinople*, whither he had withdrawn, and ſettled, after having receiv'd the Title of *Patrician*, wherewith the Emperor of the Eaſt had honour'd him.

CHARLES having reduc'd *Pavia*, and all *Lombardy*, and having fortify'd the Places, and reſtored to the Pope and the *Romans* all that the *Lombards* had taken from them, return'd into *Germany*, where his Preſence was extreamly neceſſary.

War with the Saxons.

THE *Saxons* perſiſted in their natural Perfidiouſneſs, in ſpite of all the Aſſurances they had given *Charlemagne*, that *they would keep their Words faithfully*. He had perſuaded them to live in Peace; but they, being willing to take advantage of his Abſence, would not hearken to his Perſuaſions, but continued their Incurſions and Ravages in *Franconia* more obſtinately than ever. To ſuppreſs theſe Diſorders, this great Prince therefore aſſembled his Council, and took a Reſolution to declare War once more againſt them. In the following Year, 775, he took the Field, with an Intent to bring them to Reaſon, and particularly to make them renounce their Idolatry, which was the Source of their Inſolence and Rebellions; and one may eaſily judge of the Obſtinacy of theſe *Barbarians*, by the length of the War, which laſted thirty Years, whereby the Chriſtians gained great Advantages, and that Prince the greater Glory, having, by the ſingular Grace of GOD, more Courage to enable him to overcome this fierce Nation, than they had Obſtinacy to reſiſt him. In fine, after abundance of Succeſs, and, gaining two

775.

ſignal

ſignal Battles, wherein the *Saxons* loſt above eighty thouſand Men, he reduced them to his Obedience, and not only made them deliver up the Chiefs of their Country as Hoſtages, for an Aſſurance of their Fidelity; but, to deprive them of any Opportunity to break out again into Rebellion, he tranſported into *France* and *Italy* above twenty thouſand of the beſt Families that lived along the *Elbe*. By which means he put it out of their Power to violate the Treaty juſt made with them, whereof one of the principal Conditions was, *That they ſhould renounce their Idolatry; and that the* CHRISTIAN *Religion ſhould be eſtabliſhed throughout* Saxony. CHARLEMAGNE.

IF any one would dive into the Reaſons which induced him to undertake this extraordinary Enterprize, there would be found three principal Motives. The firſt, was his Deſign to root out the Idolatry of theſe People, who had always refuſed to acknowledge the true GOD; inſtead of whom they adored the Statue of *Mars*, which was erected upon a Pillar, adorned with Flowers, as their Deity. This Statue had in its Right Hand a Banner, whereon a Roſe was painted, and in the Left a pair of Scales; and its Breaſt cover'd with a Bear's Skin, with an Eſcutcheon, whereon a Lion was repreſented; this Idol was plac'd before the Caſtle of *Heersbourgh*, ſo fortified by the *Saxons*, that they thought it impregnable. They took Refuge there as in an *Aſylum*, where they expected to find both Safety and Happineſs. They called the Sanctuary by the *German* Name, *Jedermanſheil*, or, by an Abbreviation, *Jemanſheil*, or *Hermanſeil*. The ſecond Motive was, becauſe they would never acknowledge him for their Sovereign; but choſe a *Motives that engaged* Charles *in the War with the* Saxons.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

Chieftain from amongſt themſelves, whom they obeyed with this Reſerve nevertheleſs, that they would be ſubject to him no longer than they thought proper. The third Reaſon was their Treachery; having broken their Word ſo often, and even their Promiſes which they had ſign'd, ſeal'd, and ſworn to, inſomuch that he was at laſt obliged by force to bring them under Subjection.

I will not here enlarge upon the other Wars which *Charlemagne* carry'd on, even during the Time that he was employ'd againſt the *Saxons*. The Duke of *Lutgard*, on whom he had conferr'd the Government of *Friuli*, was one of thoſe who took advantage of the Buſineſs thoſe People cut out for him, by revolting and ſeizing on ſome Cities in *Italy*; of which *Charles* being appriz'd, march'd againſt him, conquered, and condemn'd him to Death, and gave the Government of that Province to Counts whom he had eſtabliſhed there; which done, he return'd into *Germany* the ſame Year ſeven
776. hundred ſeventy ſix.

THE Count *Ibinalarabi*, Governor of ſeveral Provinces and Places in *Spain* for the *Saracens*, came to *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, with a great Number of Noblemen his Friends, offering *Charles* the Places under his Government, together with the ſure Means to reduce others in the Power of the *Mahometans*. *Charles* accepted the Offer, and levied in the Begin-
778. ning of the Year 778 a great Body of Forces, which he divided into two Bodies. The one he ordered to paſs thro' *Rouſſillon*, and, not meeting with any Reſiſtance, he eaſily poſſeſſed himſelf of *Saragoza*, and all the Country on this Side the *Ebro*. The other, which he commanded in Perſon, advanced by *Navarre* as far

as

as *Pampeluna*, which he took, but upon Terms, and after a very long Siege. This Succeſs was follow'd by a Diſgrace; for, at his Return, the *Gaſcons* being informed which way he march'd, ruſh'd out on a ſudden from their Rocks, ſo that they fell upon his Rear at the Paſs of *Roncevalles*, and put it to the Rout. In this Onſet he loſt a great many brave Men, among whom were not only *Eghart* and *Anſelm*, the one Major, the other Count of the Palace, but the famous *Rowland*, his Nephew by his Siſter, who was Marquiſs or Governor of the Marches or Coaſts of *France*, the whole Length of the *Britiſh* Channel. CHARLEMAGNE. *Defeat of Charlemagne's Rear.*

THIS did not prevent his continuing his Rout, and, having reach'd *France*, he directed his March towards the Weſtern Ocean, in order to gain *Brittany* with all ſpeed, thoſe People having rebelled againſt him; but, on his Arrival, his Arms ſoon forced them to return to their Duty; and then return'd into *Saxony*, from whence he went to *Franconia*, with an intent to prepare all things for a Journey into *Italy*.

IN the Year 780 he ſet forward on his Way, out of a Motive of Devotion, with his Wife and Children, and was received by Pope *Adrian* at *Rome* with all poſſible Honour; and, on *Eaſter* Day, his Holineſs performed the Ceremony of baptizing and crowning this Prince's two Sons, *viz.* *Pepin*, the eldeſt, who was proclaimed King of *Italy*; and *Lewis*, the youngeſt, who was declared King of *Aquitain*. *Charlemagne's ſecond Tour into* Italy.

AFTER the Holy-Days *Charles* ſent Ambaſſadors to *Taſſilon*, Duke of *Bavaria*, to invite him to pay Homage, and take an Oath of Allegiance to the new Kings, *Pepin* and *Lewis*,

CHARLE-MAGNE.

whom he would have acknowledged throughout his Dominions. *Taſſilon* promiſed he wou'd, and did it accordingly at *Worms* in the Year 781, when *Charles* was returned from *Italy*: But *Taſſilon*, as we ſhall ſee, did not continue long in his Duty.

781.

A new War againſt the Saxons. 782.

THE Year following 782, *Charles* ſent Orders, towards the End of the Spring, to his Troops to march againſt the *Saxons*, who had again taken the Field. He had drawn together his Army in the Eaſtern *France*, and *Thuringia*, by the Help of his principal Officers, *Adalgiſes*, his Chamberlain; *Geilon*, his Maſter of the Horſe; and *Wolrad*, Marſhal of his Court. He had alſo commanded *Thierry* his Relation to form another Army in *Ripuaria*, which then comprehended all the Countries ſituated between the *Elbe* and the *Rhine*. *Thierry* was upon March to join the other Troops near the River *Weſer*, which was the Place of Rendezvous. The chief Commanders, jealous of his Arrival, reſolv'd, without waiting for him, to attack the *Saxons*, who were incamp'd near *Sintal*. *Adalgiſes* therefore, with *Geilon* and *Wolrad*, order'd their Forces to paſs the *Weſer*, and poſted themſelves along this River. But they were defeated by the *Saxons*, and the Runaways were obliged to take Refuge even in *Thierry*'s Camp. The *French* and *Thuringians* loſt in Battel above ten thouſand Men, moſt Part whereof were kill'd upon the ſpot, and almoſt all the others died of their Wounds. *Adalgiſes* and *Geilon*, with four Counts, twenty Knights, and above one hundred Gentlemen, were of this Number.

UPON the News of this Defeat, *Charles* marched with another Army to *Thierry*'s Aſſiſtance; where-

whereupon the *Saxons*, being informed of the Arrival of all theſe Forces, againſt whom they were no ways able to make head, thought it would be more proper to have recourſe to an Accommodation, by a voluntary Submiſſion, than to be obſtinate, and expoſe themſelves, by a vain Reſiſtance, to harder Terms. Hereupon they reſolved to ſend to him their principal Officers to ask Pardon for their Diſobedience. But, inſtead of granting their Requeſt, he caus'd them to be ſeiz'd, and, without accepting of the Excuſe they brought, which was, *That through the Advice of their Duke* Witelkind *they had perſiſted in their Revolt; and that He, as the Author of that Miſchief, had immediately fled to the* Normans *to implore their Protection*, *Charles* was determin'd to make an Example of theſe Rebels, and to chaſtiſe, by a publick Puniſhment, their Breach of Faith, and frequent Inſurrections: And that it might be the more memorable, he cauſed five thouſand five hundred, or, as others ſay, four thouſand five hundred *Saxons* to be beheaded in the City of *Ferden*, or *Werden*, near the River *Aller*.

THIS Execution did not prevent theſe People from relapſing again the following Year 783, into their uſual Diſloyalty; whereby he was again obliged to march againſt them. This fell out after he had celebrated the Funeral of his Wife *Hildegarde*, who died the laſt of *April* the ſame Year at *Thionville*, where he had ſpent the Winter. The Rebels were divided into two Bodies, the one was poſted at *Tiſtmel* in *Weſtphalia*, and the other near the River *Haſis*.

783.

Death of Hildegarde Charlemagne's *ſecond Wife.*

CHARLES having received this Information, reſolv'd to attack them whilſt ſeparate; hereupon

CHARLEMAGNE.

upon he advanced with his whole Army towards *Tictmel*, and overthrew them. From thence he paſſed on to the *Haſis* beyond *Paderborn*, where he put the reſt of their Troops to the Sword: And after this ſucceſsful Expedition, he went to *Franconia* to marry *Faſtrade*, Daughter to *Rodulphus*, Count of that Province, who had, through the paternal Care of her Father, all the Advantages of a polite Education; of which ſhe made ſo good a Uſe, that ſhe not only gained the entire Affection of *Charlemagne*'s Children by his ſecond Wife, and particularly *Charles* the eldeſt, but the Eſteem and Love of all the World.

Defeat of the Saxons *in* Weſtphalia.

Charlemagne *marries a third time.*

784. CHARLEMAGNE being returned into the Territories of *Liege* in the Year 784, to celebrate the Holy-Days of *Chriſtmas*, and *Eaſter* at *Heriſtal*, found himſelf again obliged to paſs the *Rhine* at *Lippenheim*, to reduce the *Saxons* in *Thuringia*. Nevertheleſs he could only harraſs them by divers Skirmiſhes, being hindered from giving them Battel by the continual Rains in Autumn. He ſubmitted to his Fate, (which is what muſt be done when Accidents render ineffectual all the Efforts of human Prudence) and, quitting the Field, took up his Winter Quarters at *Eresbourg*, called at preſent *Mersbourg*, and gave the Command of his Army in *Weſtphalia* to *Charles* his Son. The *Saxons* coming upon the young Prince, attacked him in his Camp; he expected them, fought them with incredible Courage, and beat them; the Rebels loſt in this Battel above ſeventeen thouſand Men upon the ſpot.

He continues the War againſt the Saxons, *and reduces them.*

785. WINTER being over, *Charlemagne*, leaving at *Eresbourg* Proviſion and Forces ſufficient for the Defence of the Place, at the Beginning of the Year 785 met the Diet which he had aſſem-

CHARLE-MAGNE.

aſſembled at *Paderborn*; where it was reſolved to make head againſt the *Saxons* commanded by *Witilkind* and *Elbion*, who were moving on towards *Upper Saxony*. Theſe he put himſelf in Readineſs to meet, but thought it proper at firſt to try fair means; to this end he ſent to them *Almavin*, one of his principal Councellors, not only to perſuade them to return to their Obedience, but alſo to embrace the Chriſtian Religion. In ſhort, after a great many Meetings, and a number of Entreaties, they ſubmitted to *Charles*, promiſed to be baptized, and the Deputy gave them his Maſter's Word for their Lives, with thoſe of all their Adherents. Theſe Aſſurances, and Hoſtages being given on each Side, Peace was re-eſtabliſhed in *Saxony* for a long Time; *Charles* having choſen this Way of Negotiation with them, foreſeeing that he ſhould want his Forces elſewhere.

Agreement with the Saxons.

IN effect, whilſt he was intent upon this Accommodation, he received Advice of another Inſurrection hatching in *Franconia*; whereupon he immediately ſent one of his Officers to inform himſelf of the Reaſon of their Commotion; and, being appriz'd of it, managed Matters ſo well, that he depriv'd thoſe People of the Power of either maintaining or increaſing their Sedition, by ſtifling it in the Birth, and chaſtizing the Authors of the Diſorders: *Arnold*, one of his Generals, in the like manner put an End to the Revolt in *Brittany*, by his Addreſs. And thus *Charles* left no means untry'd to appeaſe domeſtick Troubles, finding it proper to take this Method, that he might be in Readineſs to oppoſe the Attempts that were forming abroad againſt his Authority.

AR-

CHARLE-MAGNE.

His third Tour into Italy. 786.

ARGISES, Duke of *Apulia*, had a Deſign to make himſelf Sovereign of that Province; but *Charlemagne*'s Courage and Vigilance again quaſhed this Project: for he appear'd in ſo ſhort a Time with a powerful Army in the *Campagna di Roma* in the Year 786, that every one was ſurpriz'd thereat. From thence he went and encamped before *Cadna*, and in the mean while diſpatch'd Ambaſſadors to the Magiſtrates of *Benevento*, to ſummon them to ſurrender up their City to him, that he might open himſelf a Paſſage to *Apulia*. On the Arrival of theſe Ambaſſadors, and upon their Summons, Duke *Argiſes* deliberated with his Council and the People, what was to be done; and it was reſolv'd that *Argiſes* ſhould ſend his two Sons *Rumold* and *Grimoald*, as Hoſtages to *Charles*, together with a conſiderable Sum of Money, to aſſure him, that he was ready to obey all his Commands, provided he would not inſiſt on his coming himſelf to him.

THOUGH *Charles* knew very well that *Argiſes* only endeavour'd to gain Time, and that he had Reaſon enough to chaſtize him, yet, having a particular View to the extricating himſelf from this Affair, he preferr'd the publick Tranquillity to his own private Reſentment, and contented himſelf with keeping *Argiſes*'s youngeſt Son, with twelve of the People, as Hoſtages. The eldeſt he ſent back to his Father, and, accepting of the Duke's Proteſtations, diſpens'd with his coming to him. Nevertheleſs he inſiſted that his Ambaſſadors ſhould have Homage paid them in his Name by the Burgeſſes of *Benevento*, and that they ſhould take an Oath of Allegiance to him; which was done: At which Time the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*'s Ambaſſadors arriv'd at *Charles*'s Court,

Court, and were receiv'd, and ſent back, with abundance of Civility; but without granting them his Daughter, whom they came to demand in Marriage for the Emperor their Maſter. CHARLEMAGNE.

Charles refuſes his Daughter in Marriage to the Emperor of Conſtantinople.

HAVING thus ſettled the Affairs of the Kingdom of *Naples*, he repair'd to *Rome*, where he receiv'd from the *Romans* the uſual Tribute of twenty five thouſand Ducats, which they were oblig'd to pay him yearly. He ſtaid there but few Days, being in haſte to return to *Germany*, upon receiving Advice that *Taſſilon*, Duke of *Bavaria*, had ſome Deſigns againſt him.

The Romans pay him Tribute.

IN effect, this Duke, who had a great deal of Pride and Ambition, and was continually ſollicited by *Luitpurge* his Wife, Daughter of *Didier* King of *Lombardy*, to take Arms againſt him, in revenge of the ill Uſage ſhe pretended this Prince had ſhewn her Father, in keeping him always in Baniſhment, had reſolv'd to wage War againſt him; and, in order to ſtrengthen his Party, had already made an Alliance with the *Huns*, his Neighbours in the Eaſt. But *Charles*, being fully inform'd of his Deſigns and Practices, was ſo much incenſed, that he would not defer taking the Field with his Army one Moment, but march'd without ſtopping to the River *Lech*, which ſeparates *Bavaria* from *Suabia*, formerly call'd *Almania*, whence comes the Word *Allemane*, which in the old *Frank* Tongue ſignifies *any Man*, whereby the *Germans* meant that all ſorts of Men were welcome amongſt them. He incamp'd then along this River, and ſent his Ambaſſadors into *Bavaria*, not ſo much to ſound *Taſſilon*'s Intentions, which he knew were very contrary to his Duty, as to diſcover the Sentiments of his chief Miniſters, and the People, in this Juncture

Charles reduces Taſſilon, *Duke of* Bavaria, *to his Duty.* 787.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

Juncture of Affairs. This Conduct, the Prudence whereof was ſupported with a great Courage, brought *Taſſilon* to himſelf. As he was better acquainted than any other with the State of Affairs, and knew that if he perſiſted obſtinately in his Rebellion, he ſhould expoſe this Province to the Diſcretion of the Emperor's Army, he chang'd his Mind, and reſolv'd to ſubmit to the Ambaſſadors Demands. And as they told him that there was no other Way but to throw himſelf at *Charles*'s Feet, ask Pardon for his Infidelity, and give him Hoſtages, amongſt which his Son *Theodon* muſt be one; the Duke ſubmitted to theſe Conditions, being incapable of doing better, and went to *Charles*, accompany'd by the chief Men of his Country; but being accuſed of Rebellion, by thoſe very Perſons that attended him, was deprived of the Government of *Bavaria*, and alſo impeach'd in a Diet call'd for that Purpoſe at *Ingelheim*, where he was condemn'd to loſe his Head for high Treaſon, and Rebellion, whereof he was attainted and convicted. However, when they were going to proceed to the Execution of that Sentence, *Charles*, following the Dictates of his natural Clemency, gave him his Life, and by a peculiar Favour ſatisfy'd himſelf with confining the Criminal and his Son in a *Monaſtery* call'd *Carſta* upon the *Rhine*, in the Palatinate, where they both dy'd. As for his Wife, ſhe was ſhut up in a Convent, where ſhe ended her Days ſoon after.

War with the Sclavonians, *and their Submiſſion.*

788. THIS good Prince had no ſooner ſuppreſſed one Inſurrection, than he was forced to reſume his Arms to quell another. The *Sclavonians*, call'd alſo the *Wilſes*, *Valelobes*, and *Vandals*, which are now the Inhabitants of *Sileſia* and *Pomerania*, along the *Baltick* Sea, in Imi-

Imitation of the *Saxons*, made Incurſions into the Provinces of the *Abotrites*, a People in Alliance with the *Franks*. And as *Charles* intereſted himſelf as much in defending his Allies, as in preſerving his own Territories, he reſolv'd to reduce the *Sclavonians*, and to engage the *Saxons* either voluntarily, or by Force in the Expedition. CHARLEMAGNE.

THEY could not avoid ſending him ſome of their Troops, which had no ſooner join'd his Army, but he march'd ſtrait againſt the *Sclavonians*; who, perceiving that he intended to attack them in earneſt, were ſeiz'd with Terror, and ſent the Heads of the City of *Dragovitz* to meet him, and teſtify that they were all diſpoſed to obey his Orders; whereupon, they giving him an Aſſurance thereof by Oath, he granted them Peace.

War againſt the Huns, *and their Reduction.*

TASSILON, a little before his Diſgrace, having made a League with the *Huns*, to wage War with *Charles*, theſe Barbarians accordingly had arm'd powerfully. And as they ſaw that *Charles*, after depoſing *Taſſilon*, had retired from *Bavaria* to carry his Arms elſewhere, they were willing to take Advantage of his Removal, and march'd with two Armies, to penetrate with one into *Carniola* and *Friuli*, and with the other into *Bavaria*. But he had provided ſo well for the Defence of theſe Provinces, that the Governors ſuſtain'd both Armies without Difficulty, and defeated them. This nevertheleſs did not hinder theſe Barbarians from making another Attempt, ſome while after, with more Forces; but they were routed a ſecond Time in *Bavaria*, and moſt part of them, endeavouring to eſcape, either kill'd or drown'd in the *Danube*.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

The Eaſtern Emperor's Troops defeated in Italy.

In the mean while, the Emperor *Conſtantine*, Son of *Irene*, being incenſed at *Charles* for refuſing to give him his Daughter in Marriage, ſent Orders to *Theodore*, Governour of *Sicily*, with ſome other Generals, to make a Deſcent upon the Duchy of *Benevento*, with as many Troops as they could gather together, and put all to Fire and Sword. They obey'd, and, to execute their Deſign, invaded *Calabria*. But *Grimoald*, whom *Charles* had made Duke of *Benevento*, in his Fathers Stead; and *Hildebrand*, Duke of *Spoleto*, march'd immediately to meet them in *Calabria* with all the Forces they could draw out of their Provinces, and defeated them entirely in a pitch'd Battel. The Enemy were moſt of them either kill'd or taken Priſoners, and loſt their Baggage; and *Charles*, who was already upon the March to reinforce theſe Dukes, hearing of the Succeſs of the War, return'd back into *Bavaria*. There he had leiſure to appoint after what Manner he would have them rule, to keep the People quiet, and conſtituted Count *Gerald*, Brother to his ſecond Wife *Hildegarde*, a Man of Experience and Reſolution, Governnor of that Province.

788.

789.

THESE fortunate Expeditions were attended with ſeveral as ſucceſsful. *Charles* very bravely repuls'd the *Saracens*, who had made an Incurſion into *France*, and at the ſame Time he alſo reduced ſome Nations of *Saxony*, who had revolted, to their Duty.

A dangerous War with the Avarians *and* Hungarians, *and their Reduction.*

790.

791.

THE Year after, the *Avarians* and *Huns*, now the *Auſtrians* and *Hungarians*, commenced a War, which was one of the moſt dangerous and bloody that *Charles* had been ever engaged in. In order to oppoſe theſe Enemies, he took the Field with two more powerful Armies than he had ever yet rais'd. With the one

one he march'd along the *Danube*, ſending all neceſſary Ammunition and Proviſion down that River. The other was commanded by his Son *Pepin*, who was by his Order attended by Count *Theodorick de Minfred* his Chamberlain, and other Generals, to act on the Weſtern Side. This War laſted eight Years with abundance of Courage and Reſolution on both ſides; and many Engagements and Battles were fought, with ſo much Rage, that the Provinces were laid entirely deſolate, inſomuch that in ſeveral Places there were no Remains of Towns and Villages. All the Inhabitants, Men, Women, and Children, eſpecially the Heads, and Noblemen of the firſt Rank amongſt them, having been either kill'd, or driven from their Eſtates. Their principal Cities, *Comagene* and *Regino*, where their Kings and Tribunals of Juſtice took up their Reſidence, were ruin'd in ſuch a manner, that there remained only Heaps of Rubbiſh. The Riches, whereof they had pillag'd their Neighbours, and heap'd up by them into an immenſe Treaſure, were deliver'd up as Plunder to the *French*; ſo that Gold, Silver, Jewels, and rich Furniture, became ſo common as not to be valued; beſides which Riches, the victorious Army found there a prodigious Quantity of Corn, Wine, and all ſorts of other Proviſions. Theſe People, before this Misfortune, were the moſt happy and formidable of any Nation in the World. They had preſerved themſelves in Peace and Proſperity above two hundred Years; no one ever overcoming them, nor ſo much as daring to attack them, or approach their Frontiers. So well were they fortify'd, that it was not thought poſſible to force them.

CHARLEMAGNE. 792.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

THEIR Provinces were ſurrounded with an Intrenchment made after this manner: Nine Avenues, by which only there was an Entrance, were incloſed with a Barrier forty Foot high, and as much in Breadth, made of large Stakes fixed in the Earth, and not only ſtrengthen'd by great Beams of Oak interwoven in each other, but alſo ſupported by Stones of a prodigious Bigneſs, cover'd with Thorns and quick-ſet Hedges. Between theſe Avenues, which were diſtant from each other twenty *German* Leagues, was a large Ditch, with a Mole cover'd with a ſtrong Thicket, which was very deeply rooted. Behind this Intrenchment a conſiderable Body of Troops was placed as a Guard, in proper Diſtances, and diſpoſed in ſuch a manner that they might the one aſſiſt the other, and even be reinforced by the Inhabitants, by making them a Signal. The Towns and Villages were ſo well ſituated, that the People might have a ready and eaſy Communication with each other, and aſſemble together to make Sallies through private Paſſages, thro' which they enter'd in all the Safety imaginable, with the Booty they got of their Neighbours.

THE laſt Engagement which *Charlemagne* had with them near *Raab*, at the beginning whereof he loſt two brave Generals, *Henry*, Duke of *Friuli*, and *Gerald*, Governor of *Bavaria*, who were kill'd with ſome Soldiers. Above ſixty thouſand of the Enemy were ſlain upon the ſpot, without reckoning their Kings, Generals, and other Officers: After which Victory *Charlemagne* remained Maſter of all the Country, and diſpoſed of it at Pleaſure. Part of their Eſtates and Goods he diſtributed amongſt the Churches, Monaſteries, and Hoſpitals,

tals, and Part amongſt the Troops which he left in the Country. Some Furniture he carried away into *Germany*; amongſt the reſt, a Table of maſſy Gold, whereon a Globe, repreſenting the World, was very artfully engrav'd. Mention is made of this Diſtribution in the Will which *Charles* ſign'd a little before his Death, in the Preſence of ſeveral Biſhops, and of his Generals and Miniſters, the executing whereof he recommended very expreſsly to his Son *Lewis*. CHARLEMAGNE.

WHILST *Charlemagne* was thus taken up againſt the *Avarians*, *Godefrid*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, being incited by a vain Preſumption, thought he might eaſily make himſelf Maſter of *Germany*. He began by attacking *Friezland* and lower *Saxony*, and having laid them waſte by his continual Incurſions, he believ'd himſelf already in the Poſſeſſion of them. He alſo ſubdued the Towns and Villages in the Province of *Mecklembourg*, and bragg'd in his Diſcourſe, and Writings which he diſpers'd, that he would in a few Years eſtabliſh his Reſidence at *Aix la Chappelle*. This was the more eaſily believ'd by many, becauſe that ſome *Germans*, being jealous of *Charlemagne*'s Power and Glory, or perhaps being brib'd by *Godefrid*, favour'd the Enterprize, and flatter'd themſelves with Hopes of Succeſs. *The Deſign of the King of* Denmark, Sweden, *and* Norway, *proves abortive.*

THIS Rumour likewiſe reviv'd the *Saxons*: They wanted only an Opportunity to ſhake off the Yoke of *Charlemagne*, and they did not fail to ſollicit *Godefrid* ſecretly to purſue his Deſign. To this End *Witilkind* their chief Leader went to *Sigisfrid*, King of the *Normans*, to gain him over to their Intereſts. In ſhort, according to all Appearance their Project would

CHARLE-MAGNE.

have ſucceeded, had not a tragical Accident interven'd, *viz.* the Death of *Godefrid* by one of his own Domeſticks, who ſtrangled him, at the Inſtigation and Order of the Prince his Son, out of ſpite that he had divorced the Queen his Mother, to take another Wife. Some ſay that the young Prince himſelf committed that Parricide by the Advice of the Queen his Mother; but if 'tis doubtful who was the Author of that Action, 'tis at leaſt certain that this Prince's Death put an End to the War in *Saxony*, and the Neighbouring Provinces. As *Charles* had rais'd an Army to oppoſe him, that is, to maintain the Peace in *Germany*, and deliver *Friezland*, and lower *Saxony* from Oppreſſion, he eaſily retook the Provinces and Cities which *Godefrid* had uſurped, and reunited them to the Empire. This done, he made what Regulation and Laws he thought proper for the People of thoſe Countries to obſerve, to maintain and preſerve a good Underſtanding and Union amongſt themſelves.

Pepin's Conſpiracy againſt Charles *his Father diſcover'd and puniſh'd.*

DURING theſe Tranſactions, *Pepin*, *Charlemagne*'s natural Son, form'd a Conſpiracy in *Italy* with great Secrecy, together with ſome *French*, and *Germans*, in order to attempt his Father's Life, and make himſelf Maſter of ſome Provinces. *Charles* being appriz'd thereof by *Arnold* Prince of *Lombardy*, march'd immediately into *Italy*, ſuppreſs'd the Rebellion, oblig'd *Pepin* to implore his Mercy, and gave him his Life, but confin'd him in the Abbey of St. *Gal*, there to end his Days. As for his Accomplices, they were declared guilty of high Treaſon, and condemn'd ſome to Death, and others to perpetual Exile. As for *Arnold*, he was rewarded with the Abbey of St *Dennis*, as a Recompence for the Service done on this Occaſion.

THIS

THIS Conſpiracy was diſpers'd in leſs than a Year, and the *Italians* having promis'd to preſerve, for the future, an inviolable Fidelity, both to him and his Children, he ſet forwards for *France*, to oppoſe the *Saracens*, who had made an Irruption into *Provence*. He had hardly got thither, but he drove them before him; which done, he took his Way back to *Germany*, where his Preſence was the more neceſſary, as he deſign'd to put an End to the Council of *Frankfort*, where 300 Biſhops were aſſembled. During his ſtay in that City, he loſt his third Wife *Faſtrade*; and he had no ſooner celebrated her Funeral Rites, and ſeen the Council break up, but being inform'd that the *Saxons* made their utmoſt Attempts, to ſhake off their Allegiance, and the Chriſtian Religion, he march'd to their Territories with two Bodies of Forces, whereof he commanded the one, and his Son the other. Hereby he ſpread ſuch a Terrour over the Country, that inſtead of thinking on Reſiſtance, they had recourſe to his Clemency, and obtain'd Pardon for their Rebellion. This did not hinder them from taking up Arms again the Year following, and defeating the Troops of the *Abotrites*, whom *Charles* had ſent for to his Aſſiſtance, in an Expedition againſt the *Avarians*, which incens'd him ſo highly, that he reſolv'd to abandon all *Saxony* to the Sword, and extirpate the moſt mutinous of theſe Barbarians, whereof they were accordingly made ſenſible, by the loſs of above thirty thouſand of their Men who were able to bear Arms.

CHARLEMAGNE. 793. 794. 795.

ON his return from this Expedition, he paſſed his Winter in the Dutchy of *Juliers*, at a Place with which he was extreamly delighted, remarkable for excellent Waters, and hot Baths. It was call'd in *Latin*, *Aquis Granum*, and

CHARLE-MAGNE.

and in *French*, *les Eaux de Granus*; becauſe in the Time of the *Romans* one *Granus*, a Governor of this Province, had fitted up theſe Baths, and adorn'd them with divers handſome Buildings. *Charlemagne* added to it a large Palace, and a very handſome Church, in Honour of the Bleſſed Virgin, from whence it was ſince called *Aix la Chapelle*, and he from that Time made it his principal Reſidence.

795. POPE *Adrian* dying towards the End of the Year 795, the *Roman* Senate and Clergy elected *Leo* the IIId. in his room, who immediately ſent his Legates to *Charles* to give him Advice of his Election. They had at the ſame time in
796. Charge to preſent him with St. *Peter*'s Keys and the City Standard, with order to deſire him to ſend ſome Perſon to receive the Oath of Allegiance from the *Roman* People in his Name; which is a ſufficient Proof that *Charlemagne*, in Quality of *Patrician*, was Sovereign of the
798. City of *Rome*. Hereupon ſome time after he ſent his Ambaſſadors for this purpoſe, during whoſe Stay a violent Inſurrection was there rais'd againſt the Pope; they were even guilty of ſuch enormous Cruelties againſt his Perſon, that all honeſt Men were ſhock'd at them. The Nephews of the deceas'd Pope *Adrian*, with thoſe of their Faction, had incited the *Roman* People to reclaim the Imperial Authority, which they had yielded up to *Charlemagne*, in the Preſence of the late Pope, and with his Conſent; but *Leo* oppoſed this Deſign with a-
799. bundance of Reſolution. As the chief of theſe Mutineers were already his declared Enemies, they conceived ſuch a Hatred againſt him, that they attack'd him in the open Street, as he was aſſiſting at a ſolemn Proceſſion on St. *Mark*'s Day. They fell upon him, beat him

him outragiouſly, and even attempted to pull out his Eyes, and cut off his Tongue, and drew him to St. *Stephen*'s Monaſtery, with ſo much Inhumanity, that they left him half dead upon the ſpot. But, whether it was by Miracle or otherwiſe, it was found, when he came to himſelf, that he was not maim'd, as was thought; and his Friends being come to his Aſſiſtance, drew him from thence, and carry'd him for Refuge to St. *Peter*'s, at the *French* Ambaſſador's, who lodg'd there. From thence they found means to convey him to *Spoleto*, whence he flew for Refuge with a good Convoy to *Charlemagne* in *Saxony*, where he was magnificently receiv'd at *Paderborn*; and, upon hearing his Complaints, he promis'd him ſolemnly, that he would take a Progreſs to *Rome* on purpoſe to ſee Juſtice done him for the Outrages which had been offer'd. Upon this Aſſurance the Pope took again the Road to *Rome*, * whilſt *Charles* put a Period to the Affairs he had both in *Spain* and *Brittany*, and along the *French* Coaſts; all which he viſited, and afterwards went to a Diet he had call'd at *Mentz*, upon account of his *Italian* Expedition.

CHARLEMAGNE.

* *November*, 799.

800.

His Reſolution being approv'd of therein, he got his Army in Readineſs to march, and took his Way through *Suabia*, thence through *Friuli*, the Inhabitants whereof he puniſh'd for the Murther committed by them on the Perſon of their Duke. Thence he advanced as far as *Ancona*, where he left his Son with his Army, and Orders to chaſtize *Grimoald*, Duke of *Benevento*, who was diſaffected to his Intereſt. As for himſelf, he took the Road to *Rome*, where he was receiv'd the next Day very honourably. Some Days after *Charles* call'd an Aſſembly in

CHARLE-MAGNE.

St. *Peter*'s Church, whereat all the Biſhops and great Men who were then at *Rome* aſſiſted, as did the Pope alſo, to examine into the Crimes whereof the holy Father had been impeached by his Enemies; but no Accuſer appearing, and, on the other hand, there being no Proof of theſe pretended Offences, *Leo* reſolv'd to clear himſelf of them before the whole Aſſembly, by taking an Oath upon the Evangeliſts, which were in his Hand. *Charles*, that he might not ſuffer ſuch a Calumny to go unpuniſh'd, appointed Commiſſioners to try the Authors of theſe Aſperſions, ſo that the Criminals were condemn'd to die; but his Holineſs interceded for them, and got the Sentence of Death changed into Baniſhment.

BESIDES this, the Pope, in Acknowledgment of the Protection he had receiv'd from *Charles* on this Occaſion, and in Conſideration of ſo many Favours as this Prince and his Father *Pepin* had conferr'd upon the holy See, obliged the *Romans*, who, on the other hand, could hope no longer for any Aſſiſtance from the *Greek* Emperors, to demand him for their Sovereign. In ſhort, *Charles* going on *Chriſtmas* Day to St. *Peter*'s Church to Prayers, the Clergy, Nobility, and People, whilſt he was employ'd in his Devotions, ſollicited the Pope ſo ſtrenuouſly to crown him, that he was forced to comply that Inſtant. He had no ſooner ſet the Imperial Crown on his Head, than they all with one Accord cryd out thrice, *All Victory, with a long and happy Life to* Charles Auguſtus, *great and peaceable Emperor of the* Romans, *crowned by* GOD. Then the Pope, having anointed him with the ſacred Oils, adored him according to the ancient Cuſtom, that is, he ſaluted

ſaluted and acknowledged him as his Sovereign, and then expoſed his Picture in publick, that all the *Romans* might pay him the ſame Obedience. Thus the Weſt had from that Time an Emperor, with all the Power, and all the Marks of their Predeceſſors the *Roman* Emperors; for he was not only declared *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus*, Titles which derive their Riſe from the Names of the two firſt *Roman* Emperors, and which have been affected by all their Succeſſors, but he alſo took the ſame Ornaments which they uſed. Above all, he did not forget the *Roman* Eagle, which, as ſeveral Authors affirm, was firſt born, ſpread with two Heads in an Imperial Crown, by him, and not by *Conſtantine*, as has been ſaid before, as a Mark that *Rome* was ſubject to his Empire, or that the Dignity of Emperor and King of the *Romans* was united in his Perſon. This laſt Thought has the more Probability, as 'tis obſerv'd to this Day, that the King of the *Romans*, during the Life of the reigning Emperor, carries only a plain black Eagle in his Arms and Seal, and that he does not aſſume it ſpread, till he aſcends the Imperial Throne. But granting it was *Charlemagne*, who was the firſt Inventer of the Spread-Eagle, we do not find that all his Succeſſors religiouſly follow'd his Example in this Point; for if there were ſome before the Reign of *Henry* III, called the Black, who carry'd the Spread-Eagle with two Heads, ſeveral Medals ſince his Time prove that ſome after that bore it ſingle; ſo that one cannot very poſitively ſay by whom, or when the Uſe of the Eagle, as it is ſeen at preſent on the Imperial Seal, was introduced and continued without Interruption. CHARLEMAGNE.

THE

CHARLE-MAGNE.

THE ſame Hiſtorians aver, that *Charlemagne* did not deſire the Inauguration, and that the Pope ſurpriz'd him into a Compliance: They even add, that the Emperor ſaid, *If he had known the Pope's Deſign, he would not have gone to St.* Peter's *on that Day, although it was the Nativity of* JESUS CHRIST. In this, ſay they, *Charles* was in the right, becauſe, far from being any Advantage to him, 'twas making him in ſome meaſure derive that from the Election of the *Romans*, which he only deriv'd from his Sword.

IN effect, *Charles*, by the continual Wars he had undertaken, maintain'd, and happily finiſh'd, with abundance of Labour, Prudence, and Valour, for about forty ſeven Years, in divers Parts of *Europe*, had increas'd his paternal Inheritance above one half. For beſides the Crown left him by the King his Father, which was very conſiderable (comprehending not only the Provinces ſituated between the *Rhine*, the *Loire*, and the *German* Ocean, but alſo that Part of *Germany* lying between *Saxony*, the *Danube*, and the *Rhine*) he added thereunto *Aquitain*, *Gaſcony*, the *Pyrenees*, and *Catalonia*, to the Head of the River *Ebro*, which takes its Riſe in the Kingdom of *Navarre*, paſſes thro' the moſt fertile Provinces of *Spain*, and diſembogues it ſelf into the *Mediterranean*, near *Tortoſa*. Beſides all theſe, he likewiſe united to his Crown the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, with all *Italy*, to the lower *Calabria*, to the Frontiers of the *Grecians*. He had moreover conquer'd *Suabia*, *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, all *Saxony*, which is almoſt as long, and twice as broad as *Franconia*, together with all that Part of *Hungary*, *Tranſilvania*, lying beyond the *Danube* towards the Eaſt, and all *Iſtria*, *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*, except

cept the maritime Towns, which he was willing to leave the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, to preſerve the Friendſhip and Alliance he had enter'd into with him. He had alſo annex'd to his Conqueſt that Part of *Poland* which has the *Viſtula* for its Frontiers, with all the Countries along the *Baltick* Sea. CHARLEMAGNE.

THUS 'tis evident that not only whatever belong'd to the *Roman* Empire in the Weſt was under his Power, either by hereditary Right, or by Right of Conqueſt, but alſo that he had greatly enlarg'd it, having even brought under Subjection *Pagan* Nations, who had never acknowledg'd the foregoing Emperors, and forc'd them to renounce their Idols, and embrace the true Religion.

Charlemagne's inconteſtable Right to the Empire.

NEITHER is it the Fact it ſelf which has from that Time found Employment for the Pens of the Learned and the Lawyers, but the Right; ſome aſſerting that *Charlemagne* had a Right by Conqueſt, and others that he derived his Right from the *Roman* People, pretending it was in their Power to confer it.

The Opinion of thoſe who aſſert, that the Pope has no Right to confer the Empire.

THEY who will not allow that *Charlemagne* receiv'd the Empire at the Pope's Hands, ſay that, during *Charles*'s Life, before he was declared Emperor, the Eaſtern Emperors made diverſe Alliances within the midſt of his Conqueſts, whereby they tacitly acknowledged him as Emperour of the Weſt, far from regarding him as the Uſurper of their own Dominions. Beſides, Pope *Adrian*, and the *Roman* People, of their own Accord, begg'd earneſtly of *Charles* to paſs over into *Italy* to their Aſſiſtance againſt *Didier*, King of *Lombardy*; and they were ſo far from being in a Condition to confer the Empire on him, that they had themſelves a long Time groan'd under the Oppreſſion of the *Lombards*.

CHARLE-MAGNE.

bards. It was even purely out of the Senſe *Charlemagne* had of their miſerable State, that he enter'd *Italy*, drove out *Didier*, and deliver'd them from his Tyranny. Yet more, *Charlemagne* and his Subjects were at all the Charge of Conquering the Territories which *Didier* had uſurp'd from the Church, and therefore it could not be ſaid that the Pope could give him the Empire, ſince he had neither any Town, Village, nor Subject therein, and no one can give what he has not. On the contrary, the Biſhops of *Rome* had always been ſo barbarouſly treated by the Heathens, that probably, without the powerful Aſſiſtance of the *French*, they would have been intirely deſtroy'd. All the ancient Hiſtorians agree, that the Pope and People of *Rome* ſent to *Charles* as Suppliants; but this Matter is decided by *Eginardus*, who, amongſt others, writes in theſe Terms: " *Adrian* " the Pope, being no longer able to bear the " Inſolence, Pride, and violent Incurſions of " *Deſiderius* (or *Didier*) King of the *Lombards*, " ſent a remarkable Embaſſy to *Charles* King of " the *Franks*, and humbly implor'd him that " he would aſſiſt him and the *Romans* againſt " the *Lombards*. But as he could not travel " by Land, thro' *Italy*, he order'd the Legate, " *Peter* by Name, to take ſhipping at *Rome*, for " *Marſeilles*, and proceed thence by Land to " *France*, for the *Lombards* had block'd up all " the Roads, Paſſages, and Ways of the Pope " and *Romans*, then under Oppreſſion in *Italy*, ſo " that they promis'd themſelves a certain Victory over them. Beſides this, the *Lombards* " then ſtood in no dread of the *German* Power " and Bravery, as thinking they durſt not venture out of their lurking Places, nor could " help the Pope and *Romans*, then brought in-

" to

" to the utmoſt Danger, even if they were in- CHARLE-MAGNE.
" clin'd to it.

ACCORDINGLY, we find that when *Charles* went to *Rome*, in the Year 800, that Pope *Leo* the IIId, after having placed a golden Crown upon his Head, before the great Altar in St. *Peter*'s Church, with the united Acclamations of the People, who cry'd, *Charles the Great and Peaceable Emperor of the* Romans, *crowned by God*, bent his Knee before him, according to the antient Cuſtom, ſaluting him by the Name of *Auguſtus*. This is a Proof that he did not confer the Empire on him, but only perform'd the Ceremony of his Inauguration. Upon what Grounds then can they eſtabliſh the Right of creating Emperors in Favour of *Rome*? Seeing that beſides this, all Hiſtories agree that the *French* and *Germans* had acquired the Empire of the *Romans*, by their Courage, and the Effuſion of their Blood. Nor could the *Roman* People confer the Empire, becauſe having once transferr'd it upon the antient *Caſars*, whoſe Succeſſors the Emperors were, they had no longer any Right to it: For this Reaſon, it is no ways probable that the Pope conferr'd the Empire on *Charlemagne*, becauſe he crown'd him.

NEITHER this Pope, nor his Succeſſors, in that Quality, had ever any Right to give away Crowns; and, notwithſtanding certain Princes have made themſelves Maſters of ſome Kingdoms, under the Colour of Grants made by Virtue of this pretended Right, 'tis certain 'twas an Uſurpation not to have been defended, if ſubſequent Circumſtances had not render'd it lawful.

THE Pope is inveſted with two different Capacities, the one Spiritual, the other Temporal.

By

CHARLE-MAGNE.

By the one he is a Biſhop, and the firſt of Biſhops, Succeſſor to St *Peter*, Vicar of JESUS CHRIST, and all *Chriſtians* owe him Submiſſion, and Veneration. But in this Quality he has no Power over Crowns, nor Dominions: For as the Kingdom of JESUS CHRIST was never of this World, but entirely Spiritual, and only relating to Spiritual Things, the Authority of the Popes, who are his Vicars, is intirely the ſame. In this View, it gives them no Power over the Temporalities of Kingdoms. Temporalities, which conſiſt chiefly in the Property, Succeſſion, Poſſeſſion, and Government of their Dominions, which the Sovereigns enjoy abſolutely over their Subjects, and they are under an indiſpenſable Obligation to obey them, whatever Princes may be in their Perſons or Manners.

NEITHER have the Popes any manner of Power over Crowns and Kingdoms in Quality of temporal Princes; becauſe they have not any Dominions by their Inſtitution, and they enjoy the States whereof they are Maſters, by the Liberality of other Princes, particularly the Kings of *France*. Hence it is evident that theſe Kings, in giving them theſe Territories, never deſign'd to raiſe them above themſelves, nor to attribute to them any ſecular Power ſuperior to their own. Thus, having neither this pretended Right by their ſpiritual Power, nor by the Conceſſion of Kings, 'tis plain that their Pretentions are as weakly founded upon humane, as they are upon the divine Laws.

NEITHER is it more reaſonable to eſtabliſh this pretended Right upon the Deference ſome Sovereigns have paid the Popes, in even kiſſing their Feet, holding their Stirrups, and either

either leading their Horſes by the Bridle, or following them on Foot. Who does not ſee that theſe are the pure Effects of a Devotion, which is carry'd to an Exceſs in ſome Tempers, and is not to be blam'd in good Souls, touch'd with the Grandeur of the Dignity that is inherent in the perſon of the Pope, on Account of his Quality as Vicar of JESUS CHRIST, who is the King of Kings? But as that exceſſive Humility, neither gives nor deprives them of any Authority as temporal Princes, ſo when ever there has happen'd to be Princes of a leſs mild Diſpoſition, who have oblig'd the Popes to pay them almoſt the ſame Reſpect which ſome Popes had required of their Anceſtors, that has not in the leaſt leſſen'd their ſacred Character. CHARLE-MAGNE.

THESE are in a manner the Sentiments of ſuch as deny that either the *Roman Pontiff*, or People, had any Right to confer the Empire upon *Charlemagne*. They who maintain the contrary, alledge, That 'tis true, *Rome* had no Right to give away the Empire, after having once renounc'd it; but that this Renunciation ſubſiſted no longer then till the Time of the Empreſs *Irene*, to whom the *Greeks*, or Eaſtern *Romans*, ſubmitted; that this Submiſſion was unworthy of the *Roman* People, and contrary to the Laws and Conſtitution of the Empire; and that therefore this Contravention re-eſtabliſhing the *Roman* People in their priſtine Right, they might revoke the Conceſſion made by the *Greeks* to the Empreſs *Irene*, and give a worthy Prince to the Empire. The Reaſon, ſay they, is evident, inſomuch as Sovereigns derive their Riſe from the Choice of the People, in whom the ſovereign Authority is naturally veſted, and who deprive themſelves of it, to confer it on ſuch Princes as they choſe; and that as theſe *The Opinion of ſuch as maintain, that the Pope had a Right to confer the Empire.*

People

CHARLE-MAGNE.

People, when they elect Sovereigns at first, don't mean to grant, without their Consent, the Liberty to their Successors to introduce Women into the Government, especially when there are Laws expresly contrary to such a Disposal, 'tis Truth to affirm, that after such a manifest Infringing of these fundemental Laws, the Sovereign Power reverts whence it was derived.

AN Example hereof is seen in *France* it self, which, depending upon its Right by the *Salick* Law, will admit of no Women to the Succession of the Crown. This being the Case, as the *Greeks* were willing to set a Woman upon the Throne in prejudice of the Law, which in this Respect was the same as the *Salick*, in that it only admitted Males to the Imperial Crown; the *Romans*, as the undoubted People from whom the Sovereign Power was deriv'd, had a Right to elect another Sovereign.

BESIDES this, 'tis certain that there is, as it were, a tacit Contract between Sovereigns and their Subjects, whereby, if the latter are oblig'd to an inviolable Fidelity, the Prince, on his Part, is bound to protect and defend them.

HENCE, as the *Roman* People (after the Translation of the Imperial See from *Rome* to *Constantinople*) were left a Prey to the *Lombards*, without the Emperors, (who were then distant) offering to defend them, they had a Right to chuse themselves another Protector and Master.

AND 'twas, add they, by Virtue of this Right, that the Pope, with the Consent of the *Roman* People, appointed *Charlemagne* Emperor, and his Posterity, in his Person, declaring him Sovereign over the *Romans*, by a Decree so famous in the Canonical Laws, under the Name of *Adrian*'s Decree, whereof mention has already been made

BUT

BUT if one may have Liberty to draw any Conſequence from the Sentiments of all theſe different Authors, it may be maintain'd that, as 'tis held for certain, that *Charlemagne* deriv'd the Empire only from GOD and his Sword; that is, only by Right of ſo juſt and lawful a Conqueſt, that even the Eaſtern Emperors, far from diſputing it with him, had, as it were, approv'd it by the divers Treaties of Alliance which they made one after another with him. It is not leſs true, that what the *Roman* Pontiff and People contributed to his aſſuming the Title of Emperor, was properly but a Ceremony, to add to him the Name of the Thing whereof he was already in effect Maſter: And that, if *Leo* ſeem'd to intereſt himſelf ſo much in this Coronation, it could only proceed from a Senſe of Gratitude; or elſe becauſe, like his Succeſſors, he thought it was the Office of the firſt Biſhop, preferably to all others, to have the Advantage to crown and anoint the greateſt Monarch in Chriſtendom, to whom even the Church of *Rome* herſelf was indebted for all her temporal Grandeur. CHARLE-MAGNE.

THE ſame Judgment may be paſs'd on what is contained in *Adrian*'s Decree, relating to the Right aſcrib'd to *Charlemagne*, with regard to the Election of Popes, the Choice of other Biſhops in his Dominions, and giving the Inveſtitures of Biſhopricks and Abbies.

FOR it is plain that, with reſpect to Biſhopricks, and other Benefices depending on *Charlemagne*, as being Part of his Dominions, 'twas rather a Declaration than a Conceſſion, or, as it were, an Inference drawn by the Pope to ſhew, that it being a Thing highly reaſonable (and now ſettled in this Prince) that a Sovereign ſhould confer Biſhopricks throughout all

CHARLE-MAGNE.

his Dominions; it was a neceſſary Conſequence, that having the Sovereignty of *Rome*, he had alſo the Right to appoint, or inveſt the Biſhop, becauſe 'tis a Perogative inſeparable from the Sovereign Power.

The Riſe of the Emperor's right to appoint Biſhops.

IN Effect, when the *Germans* chang'd from the worſhip of Idols to that of the true God, thro' the Knowledge of the Goſpel, wherein the Princes caus'd them to be inſtructed by Sermons, after having made an Opening by Force of Arms into theſe *Pagan* Countries, the ſame Princes appointed Biſhops to maintain the Church Diſcipline, and cultivate and improve the Word of God among them. This was done without the Pope's intermedling, he being then poor, and even under Oppreſſion. And, in order to give theſe Biſhops a Mark to diſtinguiſh, and make them reſpected, theſe Princes deliver'd them a Croſier (as it were denoting a Staff of Command) and placed a Ring on their Finger, to give them to underſtand, that as the Marriage of Laymen, denoted by a Ring, is indiſoluble, a Biſhop ought, in the ſame manner, to remain inſeparably united to his Church.

MOREOVER, as theſe Biſhops could not ſubſiſt without ſome Revenues, the ſame Sovereigns aſſigned them Poſſeſſions for their Support; and 'twas likewiſe by Virtue of theſe Poſſeſſions, that they depended upon the Sovereign like his other Subjects. For indeed 'tis abſolutely neceſſary that they ſhould be dependent on him; there being (according to the Order of Civil Government) but one ſupream Authority which includes all the reſt. And unleſs one State could be ſuppos'd within another, which is incompatible in a civil Society, eſtabliſh'd by reaſonable Laws, the Biſhops, and others, who enjoy Benefices, muſt neceſſarily be

be under the ſame Subordination, as to their Temporalities, as the other Subjects of the State, of what Quality ſoever. CHARLE-MAGNE.

HENCE ariſes the Right which Sovereigns have had from Time immemorial, to elect Biſhops, and give them the Inveſtitures of the Eccleſiaſtical Lands and Revenues, and all other Prerogatives granted to them, unleſs theſe Sovereigns have diſpoſſeſs'd themſelves of this Right by ſome particular Conceſſion. For theſe Things naturally follow the Inveſtiture, as the Inveſtiture is the Conſequence of the Foundation, and the Foundation the Effect of the Liberality and Piety of Princes. All theſe Rights then, I mean the Right of Inveſtiture, and of the *Regalia*, are comprehended in the Rights of Sovereignty, or in what they call Rights of the Prerogative. And if one would diſpute theſe with a Sovereign, he might as well either diſpute with him, or deprive him of the Crown.

The Meaning of Regalia, and the Right of the Prerogative.

BUT in Order to give an exact Inſight into this Matter, it will perhaps not be amiſs to diſtinguiſh between the *Regalia*, and the Rights of Prerogative. For the *French* and *German* Authors don't uſe theſe Terms in the ſame Signification. They who uſe the Word *Regalia*, according to the *Germans*, ſay the ſame Thing as Rights of the Prerogative; but, according to the *French*, he that ſays *Regalia*, does not mean Rights of the Prerogative, but only ſpeaks of a *Species* of Right, whereof the Rights of the Prerogative are the *Genus*.

THUS the *French* only mean by the Word *Regalia*, the Right juſt explain'd, which is the Power belonging to the King of *France* (in caſe of a Vacancy in any Archbiſhopricks or Biſhopricks in his Dominions) to receive the Revenues, promote Dignitaries, and confer Prebends and

CHARLE-MAGNE.

Benefices, till the See is actually fill'd with a new Succeſſor; that is, till the new Incumbent has obtain'd his Bulls from *Rome*, upon the King's Nomination, when he has taken the Oath of Fidelity to him, and the Record of that Oath is regiſter'd in the Chamber of Accompts at *Paris*.

ON the contrary, all the *German* Authors confound the Word *Regalia*, with what they call Rights of the Prerogative, or the Enſigns of Royalty; whereby they not only underſtand all the Rights proceeding from the Sovereignty, that is to ſay, all that a Prince has Power to do in that Quality, but even the Effects of thoſe Rights, and the Marks of Honour that diſtinguiſh the ſupream Dignity. To give a more exact Account hereof, they underſtand, 1. The Power of making and abrogating Laws; the Right to proclaim War or Peace, and conſequently of making Leagues and Alliances, of ſending Ambaſſadors, and making Treaties. They likewiſe mean, the Power of creating Magiſtrates, of exerciſing, or cauſing Juſtice to be ſovereignly exerciſed, of condemning or pardoning Criminals, of having Homage paid them, and coining Money; the Right of Cuſtoms and Importation, or opening Ports; the Right of Forrage; the Right of Exportation, Markets, or Toll; the Right of poſſeſſing the Effects or Demeſnes of the Publick, which comprehends the Lordſhip of Rivers, Mills, Fiſhing, *&c.* The Right of laying Taxes; the Right over the Demeſnes of private Perſons, for the good of the Publick, which includes the Rights of Eſcheating, Diſheriſon, *&c.* Beſides all theſe, they underſtand by the ſame Word *Regalia*, theſe very Things with Regard to themſelves only; for the Right it ſelf is one Thing, and the Thing

Thing over which one has a Right, is another. CHARLEMAGNE.

2. THEY underſtand by the Rights of the Prerogative, the Right of conferring great Benefices; ſuch as Archbiſhopricks, Biſhopricks, and Abbies, for which the Incumbents ſwear Allegiance, and pay Homage to the Prince; as alſo the Right of detaining Part of the Revenues of theſe Benefices, according to the Neceſſities of the State.

3. THEY underſtand by the Rights of the Prerogative, the Power of creating Dignities, and Fees; as Duchies, Marquiſates, Earldoms, *&c.* of granting Inveſtitures of theſe Fees, and confiſcating them; of granting Privileges, and revoking them, when the Time expires; and ſometimes by the ſame Word they mean the ſame things themſelves.

4. THEY uſe the Words, Rights of Prerogative, to ſignify the Marks of Honour and Grandeur, or the Regal Ornaments which Princes uſe at their Coronation, and other Solemnities; as the Crown, the Sceptre, the Sword, the Belt, the Globe, the Royal Mantle, *&c.* Theſe are the various Significations wherein they uſe theſe Terms *Regalia*, and *Rights of the Prerogative*; and 'tis under all theſe Meanings they are to be underſtood, and are uſed in the Courſe of this Hiſtory, according to the Variety of the Subject, to prevent the Reader's making any Miſtake.

The Emperor confirms and augments the Gift made by Pepin *his Father to the Pope.*

To reaſſume the Thread of our Hiſtory; we ſhall only ſay, that before *Charlemagne*'s Departure from *Italy*, he was willing, as Emperor, to ratify the Confirmation of *Pepin*, his Father's Grant of the Exarchate and See of *Ancona* to the Pope, and even added to it other Dominions, always excluſive of the Sovereignty which

CHARLE-MAGNE.

he reſerv'd both to himſelf and his Succeſſors.

Charle-magne *makes his Son his Aſſociate in the Empire.*

WHEN this Prince returned to *France*, he there receiv'd the Ambaſſadors of the Kings of *Scotland*, *Perſia*, and *Fez*, who courted his Friendſhip; one would have thought that they had come on purpoſe to congratulate him upon his new Dignity. Some time after, *Nicephorus*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, ſent alſo an extraordinary Embaſſy to compliment him, and carry his Conſent to the Diviſion of the two Empires, which had been regulated with theſe Ambaſſadors at *Conſtantinople*, yielding him up the Weſtern Empire, whereof he was in Poſſeſſion, with the Titles of *Cæſar* and *Auguſtus*. This great Prince, being thus ſettled in his Throne, continued to ſet the Affairs of *Chriſtendom* in Order, to accommodate the Differences of neighbouring Princes and States, and to appeaſe all things with Prudence and Juſtice. But perceiving that both the Strength of his Body and Mind was impaired, and being ſenſibly touch'd, both with the News of the Death of his two Sons, *Pepin* who died at *Milan*, and *Charles* in *Bavaria*, about one and the ſame time, and alſo chagrin'd at his Daughter's diſorderly Behaviour, he bent his Thoughts wholly upon eaſing himſelf of the Burthen of Affairs; and finding hardly any Conſolation but in his only Son *Lewis*, he ſent for him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where, calling an Aſſembly of all the Nobles and Grandees, he inform'd them that, foreſeeing his Life would be but ſhort, he was obliged to acquaint them with his Will with reſpect to the Succeſſion. Then he declar'd his Son *Lewis* Heir and Succeſſor to the Empire; and at the ſame Time ſurrender'd up the Government to him, as his Colleague, cauſing

812. *The Death of* Pepin *and* Charles Charle-magne's *Sons.*

him

him to be proclaimed Emperor, and by this Means assuring the Succession to the Imperial Dignity in his House. CHARLEMAGNE.

LEWIS, being thus proclaim'd King and Emperor by his Father *Charles*, and the States of the Empire, immediately took upon him the Administration of Affairs, receiving Homage of his Subjects, and directing that Justice should be distributed every where with Integrity, and the publick Peace preserv'd; which done, he return'd to *Aquitain*; *Charles* having first given the Kingdom of *Arles* to a Son left by *Pepin*, nam'd *Bernard*. 813. Lewis, Charlemagne's Son declared Emperor before his Father's Death.

THOUGH *Charles* had thus laid aside temporal Affairs, he did not cease taking Care, as usual, to reform the Church Discipline, which was grown remiss. To this end he conven'd five Synods in the Months of *May* and *June*; one at *Mentz*, a second at *Rheims*, a third at *Tours*, the fourth at *Chalons*, and the fifth at *Arles*. Synods called for Church Discipline.

THUS he passed the rest of his Days in Peace, and Exercises of Devotion, till the Sharpness of the Winter brought upon him some Fits of an Ague. However, he was in Hopes of curing it by Abstinence; but it was attended with a Pain in the Side, which increas'd to such a degree, that he was confin'd to his Bed. His Illness growing still more violent on the seventh Day, he then thought himself in Danger, and sent immediately for his Confessor, to prepare himself for his Change: From him he receiv'd Absolution of his Sins, and the sacred *Viaticum*; a little after which he died, the twenty eighth of *January*, 814, aged seventy eight, having reign'd in *France* forty eight Years, four Months, and four Days; in *Italy* about forty Years; and fourteen in the Empire. His Body Charlemagne's Death. 814.

CHARLE-MAGNE. was interr'd with abundance of Ceremony at *Aix la Chapelle*, in the Church of *Noſtre Dame*, which was built and endow'd by him with great Revenues.

HE alſo built a Palace in the ſame City, and two fine Pleaſure-Houſes in its Neighbourhood, the one near *Ingelheim*, and the other at *Nimeguen* on the *Wael*.

An Encomium *upon* Charlemagne. HE was diſappointed, by his Death, in his Deſign of building a Stone-Bridge at *Mentz* over the *Rhine*, inſtead of the woodden one he had already caus'd to be laid a-croſs it in that Place, which had been carry'd away by the great Floods and Ice two Years before his Death. He had likewiſe made Harbours both in the Ocean and the *Mediterranean* Sea, where he maintain'd a great Number of Men of War, to preſerve *Germany* and *France*, on one hand, from the Irruptions of the *Normans*; and *Provence* and *Italy*, on the other, from the *Moors*. This prov'd ſo effectual a Reſtraint, that, during his Reign, the *Moors* could offer no Inſult only to the City of *Centumcellæ*, call'd now *Civita Vecchia*, which they ſack'd; nor could the *Normans*, whom he always kept very much under, have Opportunity to make any Incurſions, but only into ſome ſmall Iſlands near *Friezland*.

CHARLES, by his Mother's Perſuaſion, had taken for his firſt Wife the Daughter of *Didier*, King of *Lombardy*; but he was oblig'd to put her away, and at the ſame Time to diſcard ſome of his Council, for Reaſons of great Importance. The next he marry'd was *Hildegarde*, of the Houſe of *Suabia*, who was not only very rich, but had a polite Education: By her he had three Sons, *Charles*, *Pepin*, and *Lewis*; and three Daughters, *Rotrude*, *Bertha*, and *Giſleta*.

Giſleta. He had likewiſe two Daughters by *Faſtrade*, his third Wife, *viz. Tetrarde* and *Hiltrude.* After her Death he eſpous'd *Luitgarde*, who was alſo of *Suabia*; but ſhe had no Children. He had but one Siſter, nam'd *Hiſla*, who was train'd up from her Infancy in the Exerciſe of every Virtue, and even in Needle Work, *&c.* and *Ada*, his natural Siſter, who ended her Days with great Piety at *Treves*, after a very religious Life. He bred up his Sons, according to the *French* Cuſtom, in the Exerciſes of Arms and Hunting; and as for his Daughters, he made them to ſpin, ſew, *&c.* that they might have Employment at ſuch Times as were not ſpent in Devotion.

THIS Prince took the ſame Care of his natural Children, as of his legitimate Iſſue; both the one and the other were virtuouſly and piouſly educated; neither did he fail to provide for their Settlement.

AS to *Charlemagne*'s perſonal Qualities; he was a Prince of great Strength, well ſhap'd, ſeven Foot high, and a handſome Perſon; his Forehead was high, his Eyes large and piercing, his Noſe aquiline, his Countenance pleaſant, his Air majeſtick and grave, his Neck thick, and ſomething ſhort, and his Voice ſtrong, but yet agreeable. He was of a healthful Conſtitution, which he preſerv'd by his Sobriety, being naturally averſe to good Cheer and Feaſting.

HE talk'd well on any Subject, and with great Preſence of Mind; he underſtood the *French*, *German*, *Greek*, and *Latin* Tongues, and at Meals had always ſome Chapters of the Bible, or the Fathers read to him; in ſhort, he took a Pleaſure in Learning. *Peter Piſan* the Deacon taught him Logick, and *Alcuinus* Rhetorick, Aſtrology, and

CHARLE-MAGNE.

and other Sciences. His Exerciſes were riding the manag'd Horſe, and oftentimes he diverted himſelf in hunting: In his Youth he took great pleaſure in bathing, and accordingly he ſwam better than any Man in his Time.

HE was very Charitable to the Poor, and his Alms reach'd even to *Egypt*, *Africa*, *Jeruſalem*, *Alexandria*. *Conſtantinople*, and *Carthage*.

HE had a particular Veneration for Churches, eſpecially for that of St. *Peter*, deſiring nothing more ardently than to reſtore *Rome* to its priſtine Luſtre, of which he gave Proofs on a hundred Occaſions. He had founded Univerſities at *Paris*, *Pavia*, and *Boulogne*, and erected the Biſhopricks of *Bremen*, *Paderborn*, *Halberſtadt*, *Hildeſheim*, *Oſnabrug*, *Verden*, and *Munſter*.

HE never fail'd ſaying his Prayers Night and Morning, nor being at Church on Sundays and Feſtivals, attending the Divine Service with ſo much Fervour, that the Aſſiſtants and his Domeſticks became devout by his Example.

BUT what crowns the Praiſe of the great Prince is, that his Conduct was ſo unblamable, that he never undertook any of his Wars out of a Spirit of Ambition, Vain Glory, or Avarice. The Neceſſity of defending and protecting the Chriſtian Religion, his Kingdom, Subjects, Allies, and the Oppreſs'd who implor'd his Aſſiſtance, were always the ſole Motives of his Enterprizes. Nay, before he took up Arms, he even try'd all juſt and reaſonable Methods to adjuſt and terminate his Differences amicably; but when fair Means and Negotiations were in vain, he conſulted all poſſible ways to ſecure to himſelf Glory and Succeſs by Force of Arms: Which prudent Conduct crown'd all his Deſigns with Succeſs. He took great Care of his Troops, never hazarding them unſeaſonably; and tho'

he

he was not reſponſible for his Actions to any one, yet nevertheleſs he was above all things cautious of incurring the Cenſure of other Princes, (a Maxim of great Prudence, Importance, and uſe to a Sovereign) and was continually recommending to the Biſhops, Abbots, Curates, and other Eccleſiaſticks, the Care of inſtructing the people, repairing their Churches, religious Houſes, and Cloiſters of Nuns and Fryars. CHARLE-MAGNE.

HE was call'd *Charlemagne*, that is *Charles the Great*, on Account of his eminent Virtue, and illuſtrious Actions, by which alone he acquired the Name *Auguſtus*. The Church alſo was ſo much edify'd by the Piety, Juſtice, and Wiſdom that were conſpicuous in his ſacred Perſon, as well as by the great Zeal he ſhew'd, during his whole Life, to eſtabliſh the *Chriſtian* Faith in the Countries infected with Idolatry, that, in order to propoſe him as an Example to other Monarchs, ſhe canoniz'd him after his Deceaſe as a Saint.

CHAP. III.

LEWIS *the Debonnair.*

LEWIS, King of *Aquitain*, receiving advice of the Death of his Father *Charlemagne*, immediately call'd a Council, wherein 'twas reſolv'd to march a conſiderable Army into *Germany*, under the Command of his Generals *Baldener*, *Waldener*, *Landbrecht*, and *Jungbrecht*: they

814. Lewis *takes Poſſeſſion of the Empire.*

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

they immediately ſet out for *Aix la Chapelle*, in order to ſettle all things there, and prevent the Intriegues which he was aprehenſive *Bernard*, King of *Italy*, his Nephew, might concert to his Prejudice with the Ladies of his Father's Court, with intent to put Affairs into Confuſion.

No ſooner were theſe Generals arriv'd, but they ſummon'd *Hatwin*, Mayor of the Palace to the deceaſed Emperor, before them, when, reproaching him with his ill Conduct in the Exerciſe of his Office, they, in their Maſter's Name, prohibited him from meddling for the future with the Government; hereupon *Hatwin* withdrawing, bent his Thoughts wholly upon Revenge. With this View he, with the Aſſiſtance of his Friends, levy'd a Body of Forces, ſurpriz'd theſe Generals, and treated them with the utmoſt Cruelty; *Baldener* being kill'd on this Occaſion, and *Landbrecht*'s right Leg broken. *Hatwin* imagin'd that, having made the Miſchief wherewith theſe Generals threaten'd him fall upon their own Heads, he ſhould eaſily manage the others: But the Imperial Troops, ſeeing with what Inhumanity he had uſed their Commanders, fell upon him, kill'd him, and diſpers'd all his Men.

THIRTY Days after, *Lewis* arrived at *Aix*, where, all things being prepar'd for his Reception, he was again proclaim'd Emperor, with the univerſal Conſent of the *French*. He began his Adminiſtration with giving Audience to foreign Miniſters and Ambaſſadors. In particular, he entertain'd *Chriſtopher Spattairus*, and *Gregory* the Deacon, Ambaſſador from *Leo*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, very honourably. He took hold of the Opportunity of their Return to ſend *Norbert*, Biſhop of *Rhegio*, and *Richwin*, Count

Count of *Paſſau*, to their Maſter, to renew the Alliance with him; the Voyage was as ſucceſsful as he could have wiſh'd; for they brought him back a Treaty conformable to his own Deſires; which done, he call'd a Diet at *Aix*, where he regulated all Affairs relating to Juſtice and the publick Peace. Having cited *Bernard* his Nephew to appear before him, his Behaviour till then having been unblameable, he confirm'd to him the Grant of the Crown of *Italy*; and ratify'd the Peace with the Duke of *Benevento*, on Condition that the Subjects of that Duchy ſhould pay him yearly the Sum of ſeven thouſand Schillings in pure Gold. As for his Sons, he ſent them into his moſt diſtant Territories, *viz. Pepin* into *Aquitain*, and *Lothaire* into *Bavaria*, giving them Inſtructions for the well governing thoſe Provinces, during which he did not forget to bring the Principal Accomplices in the Murder of his Generals to their Tryals; where ſome had their Eyes pull'd out, others were baniſh'd, and ſome had their Eſtates confiſcated.

LEWIS *the* Debonnaiz.

Several Regulations made by Lewis.

UPON receiving Information that the *Roman* People had rais'd an Inſurrection againſt Pope *Leo* the IIId, and that his Holineſs had (of his own Authority) caus'd the principal Ringleaders to be executed, agreeable to the Sentence of Death which he got pronounced againſt them, he was oblig'd to ſend *Bernard* to *Rome*, to examine into the Affair. But he falling ſick, the Pope, knowing that the Emperor was offended at his Proceedings, ſent Ambaſſadors to appeaſe him, and juſtify himſelf, not only of what was laid to his Charge, but alſo with reſpect to his Conduct in the puniſhment of his Criminals.

SOME Months after, the Emperor call'd a ſecond Diet at *Aix*, where his principal Propoſal

was,

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

was deſign'd only to oblige all the States there aſſembled, as well Eccleſiaſticks as Seculars, to make a Law with reſpect to the Civil Government, conſiſting of ſeveral Articles, ſome of which not only reſtrain'd the Eccleſiaſticks from intermeddling with the Government of the State, and Secular Affairs, but likewiſe from wearing Gold, Silver, or Jewels upon their Cloaths. The *Italian* Biſhops, and ſome of the *Germans*, oppos'd this Regulation, and made ſecret and ſucceſsfull Leagues againſt the Emperor, deſigning even to depoſe him, and put in his Room another Prince, whom they thought would be more favourably inclin'd to them.

816. *Interview between* Lewis *and the Pope, who crowns him Emperor.*

In the mean while, Pope *Leo* died the twenty fourth of *June*, in the Year 816, the twenty firſt of his Pontificate, and *Stephen* V. a Deacon, was choſe in his room. This new Pontiff ſet out two Months after his Election to viſit the Emperor; and this Prince being appriz'd of it by the *Nuntio*, went to meet *Stephen*, whom he receiv'd and conducted into the City of *Rheims*. There they conferr'd together about all Things at Leiſure; and 'twas agreed, that his Holineſs ſhould perform the Ceremony of crowning the Emperor, which was done in the great Church with all imaginable Solemnity; after which they din'd together with great Marks of Friendſhip on both Sides; and in a few Days afterwards they left *Rheims*, whence the Emperor went to *Compeigne*, and the Pope to *Rome*, where he died the twenty ſixth of *February* following. *Paſchal* being elected Pope in his ſtead, ſent a Legate to the Emperor, to deſire him to confirm the Gifts and Privileges granted to the holy See by *Pepin* and *Charlemagne*, and obtain'd all manner of Satisfaction.

WHILST the Emperor made his Reſidence at *Compeigne*, he received there *Abdirach*, Son of *Abulas*, King of the *Saracens*, from *Spain*, together with the Ambaſſadors of the *Abotrites*; and, having entertain'd them twenty Days with abundance of Magnificence, he deſir'd them to accompany him to *Aix*, with an Intent to ſhew them the Splendour of a Diet of the Empire. To this end he conven'd the States, and, during the Aſſembly, he had his eldeſt Son, *Lothaire*, acknowledged for King, cauſing him to be crown'd, and declar'd his Colleague in the Empire: He gave alſo to his two other Sons, *Pepin* and *Lewis*, two titular Kingdoms, *viz.* *Aquitain*, or the Weſtern *France*, to the firſt, and *Bavaria* to the other.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

The Emperor treats the Saracen *Ambaſſadors.* 817.

WHILST the Emperor was thus buſied in ſettling his three Sons, *Bernard*, King of *Italy*, endeavour'd to render himſelf abſolute Maſter of his Kingdom, and independent of the Emperor. In effect, he manag'd things in that manner, that he made moſt Part of the States and Cities in his Dominions ſwear Fidelity and Allegiance anew to the Emperor's Prejudice. He had drawn over to his Side *Anſelm*, Biſhop of *Milan*, *Wolfold*, Biſhop of *Cremona*, *Theodolph*, Biſhop of *Orleans*, and *Atchard*, Duke of *Franconia*, with many other Noblemen, who brought all the *Italians* over to their Party; but the *Germans* and *French* remained ſtedfaſt in their Duty to the Emperor.

Revolt and Puniſhment of Bernard, *King of* Italy, *and his Accompliçes.*

LEWIS, being incens'd at his Nephew's Raſhneſs and Rebellion, rais'd a powerful Army, and ſent it into *Italy*, to ſtop the Career of this Revolt. *Bernard* no ſooner ſaw ſo many Forces ready to fall upon him, but he thought of imploring his Uncle's Clemency, by the Interpoſition of the Imperial Generals.

SOME

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

SOME Dukes and Counts, who were the principal Authors of the Sedition, did the ſame; but theſe Generals ſent them all to the Emperor, to give Account of their Actions; and they no ſooner arriv'd at *Aix*, but he caus'd them to be ſeiz'd and try'd.

BERNARD, and his Accomplices, were condemn'd to be beheaded; others to have their Eyes put out; and the Biſhops were depriv'd of their Dignities, and ſhut up in Convents. This Sentence was executed upon the Accomplices; but as to *Bernard*, he had only his Eyes put out, whereof nevertheleſs he dy'd ſoon after. His three Sons, *Bernard*, *Pepin*, and *Heribert*, were oblig'd to renounce their Patrimony for themſelves and their Heirs, and to retire into *Bavaria*, where *Lothaire*, who was return'd thither, taking Charge of their Education, treated them with a great deal of Rigour, having them bred up in a narrow Tract of Land, whence they had not the Liberty to ſtir without his Permiſſion.

818. DURING theſe Troubles in *Italy*, *Mortman*, who had been made Governor or Duke of *Brittany*, taking Advantage of the Juncture, had alſo attempted to make himſelf Maſter of that Province. But the Emperor, being appriz'd of it, went thither in Perſon with a conſiderable Army, defeated *Mortman*, diſpers'd his Troops in a ſmall Time, and caus'd the principal Fortreſſes of the Province to be demoliſh'd.

Death of Irmingarde *Wife to* Lewis.

ON his Return thence, with his Wife *Irmingarde*, that Princeſs fell ſick at *Anges*, where ſhe died the third of *October* 818, leaving three Sons, *Lothaire*, *Pepin* and *Lewis*.

THIS Death was ſoon follow'd by that of his Son *Pepin*, King of *Aquitain*, who left a Son nam'd alſo *Pepin*, who was deſirous to retain *Aquitain*;

Aquitain; but *Lewis* the *Debonnair* diſpos'd of it otherwiſe, as we ſhall ſee in the ſequel. LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

ABOUT this Time the Emperor received News, that Part of the Army ſent into *Italy* had been defeated in its March by the Treachery of *Lindevit* Duke of *Croatia* and *Boſnia*; and that the Deſigns of the other were thereby render'd abortive: This Duke, imagining he was not known to be the Author of the Outrage, had the Arrogance to ſend Ambaſſadors to the Emperor, with Preſents, and Propoſals of Peace. The Emperor, not being willing to liſten to theſe Propoſals, made other Offers, which *Lindevit* alſo rejected, as being unworthy to be communicated to his States, reſolving to defend himſelf in caſe he ſhould be attacked: To which end he ſent Ambaſſadors to all the neighbouring Princes to deſire their Aſſiſtance. By this means he drew over the *Thimotians* to his Party; but *Balderic* Duke of *Friuli*, and *Borna* Duke of *Dalmatia*, remaining firm to the Emperor's Service; the firſt, with the few Men he could raiſe, defeated *Lindevit*'s Army near the River *Drave*, and drove him out of the Country; the ſecond likewiſe, on his Part, diſpers'd and put to flight another Body of *Lindevit*'s Troops, only by the Rumour he had ſpread of his own Strength, making them believe that he was much ſuperior in Force to what he really was. 819. *The Treachery of the Duke of* Croatia, *and the firſt Defeat of his Troops.*

NEVERTHELESS the Emperor, in the ſame Year 119, took to his ſecond Wife *Judith*, Daughter to *Guelph*, Count of *Ravensbourg* and *Aldorff*. This Princeſs had two Brothers, *Radolphus* and *Conrad*; one whereof ſhe got made Governor of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, and the other of *Italy*. *Second Marriage of* Lewis *the* Debonnair.

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

THE Marriage being consummated at *Aix*, the Emperor there deliberated with the assembled States, upon Means to suppress entirely *Lindevit*'s Revolt; for which purpose it was therein resolved to attack *Croatia* and *Bosnia* at once, which was effectually done the following Year 820 in *May*, with three Armies, the one penetrating into *Carinthia*, the other into upper *Austria*, and the third into *Dalmatia*. They made themselves Masters of all these Provinces, and oblig'd *Lindevit* to save himself by flying with a small Body of Forces to a Castle, which he had caus'd to be fortify'd, on the top of a high Mountain in *Croatia*, wherein he dy'd soon after.

The Duke of Croatia *entirely defeated.*

820.

IN *October* the same Year, the Emperor summon'd a solemn Diet to meet at the Town of *Theodonis*, or *Thionville*; and accordingly all the *French* and *German* Nobility, who were conven'd thither, attended; after which he invited them to assist at the Marriage of his eldest Son *Lothaire*, which he celebrated next Year with *Irmingarde*, Daughter to Count *Hugh*.

Marriage of Lothaire *eldest Son of the Emperor, who grants a Pardon to Criminals in favour of the Nuptials.*

821.

IN favour of these Nuptials, the Emperor by an Effect of his natural Clemency, order'd all the remaining Accomplices of the Conspiracy form'd against him by his Nephew *Bernard* to be brought before him, when he pardon'd their Crimes, and granted the Restitution of all their Effects which had been confiscated. He even set at Liberty *Adelard* Abbot of *Corbey*, and *Bernaire* his Brother, who had both been banish'd to *Aquitain*, and restor'd them to their Possessions and Dignities.

822. AFTER the Marriage the Emperor return'd to *Aix*, where he resided some Time, during which he was inform'd of the Death of *Arne*, Arch-

Archbiſhop of *Saltzbourg*, to which Dignity he preferr'd *Adelram de Neumage* in *June* 822. This latter a little after choſe *Otho* Biſhop of the *Sclavonians*, and ſettled him at *Venden*, in the room of *Theodore*, who died with the Reputation of a Saint, on Account of his having very zealouſly inſtructed the *Sclavonians* in the Chriſtian Faith.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

Lewis nominates to the See of Saltzburg.

THE ſame Year *Mortag* King of *Bulgaria* ſent him an Ambaſſador under Pretence of regulating their Frontiers together. But *Lewis* having diſcovered, by a Captain he diſpatch'd into *Bulgaria*, that the deſign of the Embaſſy was only to ſound the Affairs of *Germany*, and diſturb its Tranquility, ſent the Ambaſſador back, as he came, without granting him Audience, cauſing him to be told that He had no Diſpute with his Maſter on Account of Limits, ſince his Country was very diſtant from the Boundaries of the Empire.

The Bulgarian *Ambaſſador ſuſpected, and ſent back.*

THE Eccleſiaſticks having often made Remonſtrances to the Emperor againſt the Severity wherewith he had treated his natural Brothers, forcing them one after another to embrace a Monaſtick Life againſt their Wills, this Prince, in the Preſence of ſeveral Biſhops and other Perſons of Diſtinction, made a publick Confeſſion, did Penance, and was reconcil'd to them, giving them leave to come out of the Cloiſter, and even recalling *Valac* and *Adelard* to Court, and employing them in his Councils.

The Emperor reconciled to his Brothers.

IN the mean Time his Son *Lothaire*, whom he had ſent into *Italy*, and who was Maſter there of all Affairs, whether Eccleſiaſtick or Secular, was ſollicited by Pope *Paſchal* to come to *Rome*. Accordingly he went there in the Year 823. Where he no ſooner arriv'd, but his

Lothaire, *the Emperor's Son, crowned Emperor by the Pope.* 823.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

Holineſs perſuaded him to be crown'd Emperor, ſince he was already deſign'd for that Dignity by his Father; whence it appear'd that he had invited him to *Rome* only to have the Advantage of crowning him, as ſome of his Predeceſſors had *Lewis*, and *Charlemagne*. The Ceremony was perform'd in St. *Peter*'s Church, the Imperial Crown being plac'd upon his Head, on *Eaſter* Day, after which Solemnity, *Lothaire* return'd into *Germany*.

Violence committed at Rome *againſt the Emperor's Partizans, with the Pope's Incroachment upon the Rights of the Empire.*

SOME Time after *Lothaire*'s departure from *Rome*, it is ſaid that the People, by the Pope's Advice, put out the Eyes, and cut off the Head of *Theodore*, Dean of the *Roman* Church, and *Leo* the Protocoliſt, out of ſpite for their having maintain'd the Rights of the Emperor againſt the Pretentions of the Pope, whoſe Deſign, tho' he diſſembled it, was to endeavour by all manner of means to render himſelf, by little and little, independent of the Empire

THE Emperor and his Son *Lothaire* were highly incenſed at this Action, and the more, in that they remember'd that the *Roman* Clergy and People had violated the Reſpect and Submiſſion due to his Imperial Majeſty, when, without his Knowledge, they had proceeded to the Election of the ſame Pope. Hereupon theſe Princes ſent Ambaſſadors to *Rome*, to enquire into the Truth of the Fact; and, upon their return with the Information they had received, his Holineſs ſent his Legates with them, to juſtify himſelf to the Emperor of what was laid to his Charge, proteſting that he had no hand therein, and even clearing himſelf by Oath. The Imperial Ambaſſadors, during their Stay at *Rome*, did not forget ſeverely to reprimand the People and Clergy, for having dar'd to intermeddle in the making of a Pope without his Majeſty's Appro-

Approbation; adding hereunto an expreſs Prohibition of ever committing the like Fault to the Prejudice of the Imperial Authority: And if Pope *Paſchal* had not dy'd in the Year 824, the Emperor had not been ſatisfy'd with only complaining thereof by his Ambaſſadors. *Lewis the Debonnair.* 825.

THESE Reprimands were not ineffectual; for, after *Paſchal*'s Death, *Eugene* II was not elected in his Place, but with the Emperor's Conſent, his Majeſty having afterwards ratify'd the Election.

SOME time before this, there had been a great Earthquake at *Aix*; twenty Villages in *Saxony* were reduced to Aſhes by Thunder and Lightning; beſides this, the Hail had ſpoil'd all the Corn and the Fruit there, and had done the ſame Damage in *Woitland*, *Thuringia*, *Franconia*, *Miſnia*, and *Suabia*; the Storm reach'd to *Compeigne*, and the Parts adjacent, where they found Stones that weighed half a Pound. In ſhort, in the Year 825 this Tempeſt was follow'd by ſo violent a Plague, in *France* and *Germany*, that almoſt all the Inhabitants died thereof; being ſick but thirty Hours, and almoſt all who were ſeiz'd, were carried off. *An Earthquake, prodigious hail and violent Plague.* 825.

THIS great Mortality did not prevent the Emperor's calling a Diet at *Nimeguen*, to remedy the Diſorders in the Province of *Brittany*, where ſeveral Noblemen had taken up Arms, on Account of the Outrages committed againſt them by their Duke *Wilhormachus*. Both the Duke and others were ſummon'd to this Diet, to give an Account of their Conduct; and, on their coming, the Duke reſolv'd to have recourſe to the Emperor's Clemency, which was not unprofitable to him: For having at firſt proſtrated himſelf at his Majeſty's Feet, he forgave him all the chief Articles of the Accuſa- *The tragical End of the Duke of* Brittany, *who tyranniz'd over his Subjects.*

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

tion wherewith he was charged; and ſent him back, by the Approbation of the States, with Preſents into the ſame Province. But, on his return, he again began his Tyranny, perſecuting the neighbouring People with Fire and Sword, till at laſt he was juſtly puniſh'd by the Subjects of Count *Lambert*, who, gathering together, attack'd, and kill'd him, with all his Incendiaries, in a Caſtle whither they had retired.

Lothaire, *the Emperor's eldeſt Son declared his Succeſſor, and* Lewis *the younger, King of* Bavaria.

ABOUT this Time *Lothaire*, having been ſent to *Rome* to appeaſe all the Differences that had ariſen on account of a pretended Election of another Pope made by the People only, to the Prejudice of *Eugene*; and being on his Return, went to meet the Emperor his Father, who was at *Aix*, where he paid him his Duty in Preſence of the States.

SOME Days after, the Emperor had him declar'd Succeſſor to the Empire, and ſent him back again to *Italy*. At the ſame Time he augmented the Kingdom of *Germany* (that is, of *Bavaria*, or the Weſtern *France*, which he had given to *Lewis*) with *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary*, and *Vindmarch*.

The Emperor makes ſure of ſome Princes his Feudataries

IN order to find Means to ſecure himſelf of the Fidelity of ſome Princes his Feudataries, whoſe Conduct had been render'd ſuſpicious to him, he conven'd a Diet to meet at *Ingelheim* in

826. *October* 826. where the Perſons ſummon'd appearing at the Time appointed, the Emperor came immediately. But having examin'd well into the Informations given him concerning theſe Princes, who were all preſent, he did not think it neceſſary to guard againſt any but *Ceadrague*, Duke of *Abotrites*, and Count *Tunglon*. Whereupon he reſolv'd to detain *Ceadrague* and *Tunglon*'s Son, and to ſend back

back *Tunglon*, with ſome Perſons in whom he cou'd confide, into the Country, with order to ſound the People, and inform themſelves underhand, whether or no *Ceadrague* was agreeable to them. Theſe Perſons having made ſome Stay there, found that the People expreſs'd an Indifference for the Duke, but that the States were deſirous of having him again for their Governor; upon this Report the Emperor ſent back the Duke, after taking ſome Hoſtages, for a greater Aſſurance of his Fidelity; a Precaution highly neceſſary on ſuch Occaſions. *Lewis the Debonnair.*

HE had no ſooner ſettled the Affairs of one Country, but he was oblig'd to apply a Remedy to the Diſorders of another. The Prieſt *Heliſacar*, whom he had ſent into *Spain*, with ſome Officers of the Army, had manag'd Matters ſo prudently, together with Count *Bernari* of *Barcelona*, that all the Attempts of *Aizon*, who had rebell'd, would have been render'd vain, if *Abdirachman* King of the *Saracens* had not ſent him a Reinforcement of a ſtrong body of Troops, under the Command of *Abumarman*. *The Emperor ſends his Son* Pepin *againſt the* Saracens.

THIS General, having incamp'd near the City of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, call'd now *Saragoſſa*, order'd his beſt Troops to march ſilently towards *Barcelona*, where they laid waſte all the Country, bringing away all the Men and Cattle into his Camp.

THIS Diſgrace, join'd to the Negligence of the Commanders in *Spain*, obliged the Emperor to ſend thither his Son *Pepin* King of *Aquitain*, with an Army ſufficient to guard and defend the Frontiers of his Country, and oppoſe the Progreſs of the *Saracens*.

IN the Year 827, Armies were ſeen in the Air fighting with each other, with Thunder and Lightning, whereby abundance of Men and 827.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair. Cattle were deſtroy'd. This was taken for a preſage of the Diſorders that enſued: In the mean Time Pope *Eugene* died in the Month of *Auguſt*.

Prodigies in the Air. Gregory *created Pope and confirm'd by the Emperor.*

IN his Room they elected the Deacon *Valentine*, who enjoy'd the See but two Months, being poiſoned by one of his *Valets de Chambre*; and as ſoon as he was buried, the *Romans* rais'd *Gregory* IV, Archprieſt of St. *Mary*, to the holy See; but he was not confirm'd Pope till the Arrival of the Emperor's Ambaſſadors at *Rome*, who approved and ratify'd his Election.

Ambaſſadors mutually ſent between Lewis *and* Michael.

THE ſame Year the Emperor keeping his Court at *Compeigne*, received the Ambaſſadors, ſent to make a Treaty with him by *Michael* Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and entertain'd them very magnificently. The Conditions being agreed on reciprocally, he alſo diſpatch'd on his Part, *Haldigaire* Biſhop of *Cambray*, and *Ausfrid* Abbot of *Noventule*, to *Conſtantinople*, to have the ſame ratifyed by *Michael*, who likewiſe treated them very honourably.

828. *Several Miſdemeanors puniſh'd.*

KING *Pepin*, on his Arrival in *Spain*, found that the principal Officers of the Frontiers in thoſe Countries were guilty of divers Crimes, and Authors of all the Diſorders. Of this he gave Information to the Emperor, who, having deliberated upon Means, to apply a Remedy in the Diet he call'd at *Aix* in *February* 328, depriv'd theſe Officers of their Poſts; and at the ſame time declar'd *Balderic*, Duke of *Friuli*, unworthy of his Dignity, for not having prevented the *Bulgarians* making Incurſions into upper *Auſtria*, and gave his Government to four Counts.

829. DURING his Reſidence at *Aix*, he was ſurprized with an Earthquake, and ſo furious a Hurricane, that ſome Houſes were thrown down

down, and the leaden Roof of *Notre Dame* Church was carried away. *Lewis the Debonnair.*

ABOUT the ſame Time he was preſented with grains of Corn which had fallen from the Heavens like a Shower of Rain, in *Gaſcony*; being like our ordinary Corn, only round and a little leſs. 829. *An extraordinary Shower of Rain.*

THE Year following, during his ſtay at *Aix*, he received the News of the Emperor *Michael's* Death, and the Advancement of *Theophilus* who ſucceeded. *The Death of the Emperor* Michael.

IN the mean while the Kingdom of *Bavaria* enjoy'd a profound Peace, and Queen *Emma*, Wife of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, originally a *Spaniard*, was building the Abbey of *Niedermunſter* at *Ratiſbon*, where there is yet to be ſeen a Book wherein are theſe Words: *Carolus primus Cæſar ſua Virtute Germanicum Imperium Sanguineque acquiſivit*; that is, "*Charles* I *Cæſar*, acquir'd the "*German* Empire by his Valour and Blood." This Queen was afterwards buried in this Abby. *Antiquity of an Abby.*

HOWEVER *Lewis* was not idle, for *Brinno* Duke of *Moravia*, from whom the City of *Brinn* derives its Name, comming to him with his Son *Hertzel*, were (by his Care) inſtructed in the Truth of the *Chriſtian* Faith, baptized by *Adelram* Archbiſhop of *Saltzburg*, and held at the Font by the King: This Prince alſo by his Addreſs accommodated the Difference between this Archbiſhop and *Regener* Biſhop of *Paſſau*, touching the Limits of their Dioceſſes.

IN the Year 832, *Germany* ſeem'd greatly diſpos'd to ſtrange Commotions; which the Emperor endeavoured (in ſome Meaſure) to prevent and moderate by his Prudence. But when 'twas known, that by the Advice of his ſecond Wife *Judith*, he had reſolv'd to give their Son *Charles* (who in the ſequel will be 832. *Cauſe of the Inſurrection of the Emperor's Sons, and its ill Effects.*

Lewis *the* Debonnair. be call'd the *Bald*) *Rhetia* and upper *Burgundy* for his ſhare, his three Sons by his firſt Marriage were ſo incens'd thereat, that whatever Care
833. he took by chaſtiſing the Mutineers who ſeduc'd and incited them to an Inſurrection, he could not prevent their making great Preparations for War, nor ſeveral States from taking hold of the Opportunity to form ſecret Intrigues againſt him and *Judith*. The Biſhop *Ebbort* of *Rheims*, *Hungebrecht* of *Lyons*, *Bernard* of *Vienna*, *Teſſe* of *Amiens*, *Helias* of *Troyes*, *Hildewin* Abbot of St. *Dennis*, and the Abbot of *Corbié*, were the Chief Authors of this Rebellion.

SEVERAL Dukes and Counts (together with the inferior Nobility) aſſociated themſelves to their Party, and were reciprocally engag'd by Oath to expoſe their Lives and Eſtates for the common Good. They were reſolv'd to render themſelves Maſters of the Government, and, that they might ſucceed the better, choſe *Pepin* of *Aquitain* their Leader, being return'd from *Spain*.

THIS Prince conſented thereto immediately, his natural Temper being inclinable to be raſh, reſtleſs, and prone to hearken to ſuch Perſons as ſuited themſelves to his Humour. To begin his Rebellion by Action, he drove out of *Orleans* the Governor who had been put there by his Father, placing in his ſtead one of his Councellors, named *Mansfred*, a Man equally proud and covetous; and taking off the new Taxes, to win the Affections of the People.

THEY ſeiz'd on the Empreſs *Judith*, and confin'd her in a Convent of Nuns in *Gaſcony*, but the Major of the Palace eſcap'd into *Spain*; and the Ringleaders of this Sedition, both *French* and *Italians*, complain'd to *Lothaire* of the Emperor his Father's ill Conduct, and begg'd that he would himſelf take upon him the Care of the

the Government, inſiſting very ſtrenuouſly, *That they could no longer ſuffer an old Emperor to be ſedue'd and impos'd on by a young haughty Woman.* LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

LOTHAIRE then aſſumed the Reins of Government, giving orders above all, that the Emperor his Father ſhould be in no ways ill treated; however he could not prevent ſome of the Rebels from pulling out the Eyes of his new Major, nor from baniſhing his Couſin, who was provincial Major of *Orleans*, even the Emperor himſelf being made Priſoner by the Biſhops and Dukes who held Intelligence with *Pepin*. Lothaire, *the Emperor's Son, declar'd Regent.* *The Emperor made Priſoner, and then releaſed.*

834. THE *Germans*, who heard with Diſpleaſure of the Emperor's Confinement, took up Arms, came to his Aſſiſtance, and ſet him at Liberty: Soon after which the Emperor call'd a Diet at *Nimeguen*, and the Biſhops and Dukes were condemn'd to Puniſhments ſuitable to their Rebellion, ſome being beheaded, others drowned, others baniſh'd, or confin'd to a perpetual Priſon. *The Puniſhment of the Seditious; but the Emperor's Sons pardon'd.*

PEPIN ask'd pardon, which was granted by the Emperor; *Lothaire* alſo was reconcil'd to his Father, and the Empreſs *Judith* was re-recall'd from *Gaſcony*, and reſtor'd to the Emperor, with her two Brothers, *Conrad* and *Radolphus*, both Dukes of *Suabia*: *Bernard* Major of the Palace was alſo delivered from Priſon, ſo that he came again to his Maſter.

ALL theſe Things being thus re-eſtabliſh'd, *Lothaire* return'd into *Italy*, and King *Lewis* to *Bavaria*, but *Pepin* (being the leaſt tractable) was oblig'd to ſtay at the Court of the Emperor his Father. However he made his eſcape ſome Time after, and retir'd to *Gaſcony*, leading the ſame libertine and diſorderly Life as before, and granting refuge and Protection (as uſual in his Court) to all ſeditious and diſorderly Perſons.

THIS

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

THIS Conduct oblig'd the Emperor to convene a Diet at *Orleans*, where *Pepin* and all his principal Officers and Councellors were commanded to attend; And as the Emperor came thither in Perſon, accompany'd with a ſtrong Body brought from *Germany*, *Pepin* dreading his Father's Reſentment, and not without Reaſon, could have wiſh'd not to have ventur'd into his Preſence, but nevertheleſs could not avoid complying. In ſhort, the Emperor reſolv'd upon governing the Kingdom of *Aquitain* himſelf, and depriv'd all Councellors, who were either diſloyal or ſuſpected, of their reſpective Poſts.

Pepin ſummon'd to a Diet, depoſed, and made Priſoner.

As to *Pepin*, he ſent him priſoner into *Germany* near *Treves*, whence he eſcap'd into *Gaſcony*, by bribing his Guards. There he levy'd a ſtrong Body of Forces, whither all his Seditious Partizans immediately reſorted, and incens'd him anew againſt his Father. An Accident befalling the Imperial Troops, that were upon full March againſt him, gave the principal Alarm for this ſecond Rebellion, for they were almoſt all cut off in their March, by continual Rains, and extream Cold.

Pepin again eſcapes and takes up Arms againſt his Father.

IT has been always ſeen by Experience, that when great Benefits are ill plac'd, they are generally repaid with extraordinary Ingratitude; ſeveral on whom *Lewis* the *Debonnair* had heaped Favours, will furniſh Us with a viſible Example hereof, for he was perſecuted to his Death, eſpecially by thoſe whom he had rais'd to the greateſt Honours aud Dignities. Certain Biſhops, ſeconded by ſome of his Councellors, who were Slaves to their own Intereſt, and his ſworn Enemies, making an artful Uſe of the Pretence of advancing *Germany* (as they ſaid) to the height of Proſperity, and eaſing the Poor, had by fallacious Perſuaſions inſinuated themſelves

ſelves into the good Graces of his Sons, and that ſo far, that they obtain'd a Commiſſion to regulate all Things, and a Power to diſmiſs ſuch Miniſters and Officers as would not ſubmit to their Authority. The firſt Perſon over whom they intended to exerciſe their Power, was the Empreſs *Judith*, as being the chief Perſon who fomented the Diviſion between the Father and the Sons. LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

IN the mean while the three Sons being again re-aſſembled, united together, and levied great Forces, with the view of cruſhing their Father at one Blow. But that Prince, having gather'd Strength by the Aſſiſtance of the principal Nobility of *Germany*, croſs'd the *Rhine* at *Worms* with his Army, in order to meet them, know the Reaſon of this Commotion, and endeavour, by all the Ways imaginable, to ſtop their Career. During this Juncture, Pope *Gregory* came to them, offering his Mediation to adjuſt their Difference; but this Viſit made by his Holineſs to the Sons, before the Father, contrary to all Decorum, having rendered him ſuſpicious; the Emperor, either to prevent the Pope's good Offices, or through an Exceſs of paternal Goodneſs, ſent, of his own Accord, his moſt conſiderable and faithful Miniſters, with Letters of Credence to his Sons, to exhort them to Peace, and induce them to return to their Duty.

NOTWITHSTANDING this, the Pope receiv'd divers Reproaches in his Name, for having (contrary to all Forms, without his Conſent, nay even without his Knowledge) offer'd himſelf firſt to his Sons, rather than to him: But nevertheleſs this Pontiff, with the Aſſiſtance of ſome Princes and Councellors of State, who were peaceably inclin'd, did not ceaſe trying

ing

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

ing all poſſible Means to put an End to the Troubles.

BUT the Accomplices of this rebellious Enterprize, not being willing to hearken to any Propoſals for an Accommodation, leaſt they ſhould themſelves incur the Puniſhment they deſerv'd, bent their Thoughts Night and Day, either upon engaging the two Armies in a Battle, or inciting the Emperor's Forces to deſert by Artifice, Money, or Preſents, making them believe underhand, he was excommunicated by the Pope. Perhaps this might be the Cauſe why that good Prince, ſeeing he could not any longer go Back, reſolv'd to leave his own Camp, go over to his Sons, and ſurrender himſelf at Diſcretion, to the End, ſaid he, that Blood might be ſpared on all ſides. It was on the laſt of *June*, the very Day appointed for the Battle, of which they being appriz'd, immediately ſet out to meet him, diſmounted, embrac'd him, and conducted him into their Camp; the Empreſs, who was the Cauſe of this War, being committed to the Cuſtody of *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, and guarded by him in his Tent.

LOTHAIRE kept the Emperor with his young Son *Charles* in his Pavilion, whilſt the Imperial Troops took an Oath of Allegiance to his Sons, who immediately divided all the Territories of the Empire into three Parts, and baniſh'd the Empreſs to *Verona* in *Italy*.

THEN Divine Juſtice, which is thought by the wicked to ſleep, but nevertheleſs is always watchful for the Vengeance of Crimes, ſuffer'd Jealouſies and Miſunderſtandings to grow between the three Brothers.

LEWIS and *Pepin*, ſeeing that the Nobility of *France* and *Italy* adher'd to *Lothaire*, and animated

animated him more and more againſt their Father, withdrew in Diſcontent, the firſt to *Bavaria*, and the other to *Gaſcony*; after which the principal Commanders dazzled the Eyes of *Lothaire* in ſuch a Manner, that, loſing all Reſpect for his Father, he led him as it were in Triumph thro' the whole Army, attended only by a few Horſemen, after which he confin'd him in the Monaſtery of St. *Medard* at *Soiſſons*, ſending at the ſame Time his Son *Charles* to the Abbey of *Prum* near *Treves*. Thus *Lothaire*, taking Poſſeſſion of the Government, diſpoſed of all Things in his Fathers Place. LEWIS the Debonnair.

BUT the People, eſpecially the *Germans*, were ſo mov'd with Compaſſion, at the Condition to which the Emperor was reduc'd, that they offer'd up Prayers in publick for his Re-eſtabliſhment; beſides which, by the Interpoſition of *Drenx* or *Trojo*, Biſhop of *Metz*, the Emperors natural Brother, and ſome other Princes and Men of Probity, they ſolicited *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to uſe his Intereſt for his Reſtoration. Theſe Entreaties had ſuch an Influence over him, that he immediately diſpatch'd a remarkable Embaſſy to his Brother *Pepin*, to incite him to take Meaſures with him for that Effect. *Pepin*, on this Occaſion, acted anſwerably to his Birth; he join'd his Forces to his Brother's, and theſe two Princes taking the Field together with a powerfull Army, march'd to give Battle to *Lothaire*.

BUT to prevent, as much as poſſible, the inevitable Loſs of ſo many Men, they ſent to him two of their moſt prudent and experienc'd Miniſters, *viz.* Biſhop *Radwol* and Count *Hanſon*. Theſe Ambaſſadors were order'd to ſignify their Intentions in few Words, and being admitted to *Lothaire*, ſpoke to him in theſe Terms: *Sir*, ſaid they, *your dear Brothers*, Lewis

King

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

King of Bavaria, *and* Pepin *King of* Gascony, *with all* Germany, *and the most faithful Princes, States, and Councellors of the two Crowns, have commanded us to beg your Majesty to deliver up the Emperor* Lewis *their Lord and Father; and to declare, that, if you refuse, we will endeavour (with God's Assistance) to set him at Liberty, as we are oblig'd: Nay, we will even have recourse to Arms, if you will not We offer You therefore Peace or War, chuse which you please, and give a positive Answer.*

Lothaire having heard these Ambassadors with sufficient Vexation, and maturely weigh'd the Importance and Consequence of the Message, as well as the Justice of their Demands, order'd all his Officers to withdraw, and went singly into a private Apartment with the Ambassadors. There He owned that he knew their Demand to be just, and said he had himself endeavoured to deliver his Father out of his Enemies Hands; but that the Bishops and other Ecclesiasticks, with some Persons of great Note, who were of that Number, had hinder'd his putting this good Design, to which they always seem'd very averse, in Execution; and that therefore he saw no speedier Remedy than to assemble the States, and cause his Liberty to be restor'd by those very People who had wrested it from him.

An Answer so favourable, gave the Ambassadors a great deal of Joy, and they bent their Thoughts wholly upon putting it in Practice; but *Lothaire*'s young Ministry being inform'd thereof, dissuaded him from it; wherefore, changing his Mind, he resolved to oppose Force to Force. To this End he march'd to *Burgundy* with his Army, and sent word to his Brothers, that he would expect them near the City

City of *Vienna*, to decide the Diſpute about his Father's Liberty by Arms. LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

DURING theſe Tranſactions, the Nobility who were moſt prudent, and attach'd to the Emperor *Lewis*, took alſo the Field with a Body of Troops, march'd ſtrait to St. *Dennis* near *Paris*, whither they had removed the Emperor, drew him out of his Monaſtery, and without finding any Reſiſtance, ſet him at Liberty, and conducted him into *Germany*. 835.

ON their arrival there, which was about Mid-lent, in the Year 835, they put on his Imperial Robes, crown'd him anew, and made thoſe who had robb'd him of them, reſtore him the Sceptre and Globe. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and *Pepin* of *Gaſcony*, aſſiſting with great Joy at the Ceremony, and even cauſing the Empreſs his Wife to be recall'd to him. *The prudent and brave Conduct of the Emperor's faithful Subjects, who deliver'd him, and reſtor'd the Imperial Ornaments.*

AFTER this Prince had been thus received in *Germany*, with the general Applauſe of the whole World, he apply'd himſelf to re-ſettle Affairs. Count *Otto*, Governor of *Orleans*, his Brother *William*, and the Abbot *Theodore* of St. *Martins* at *Tours*, took the Field by his Order to reduce the Rebels, force them to their Duty, and deprive their Leaders of the Poſts they abus'd. But they who had been ſupplyed by *Lothaire*, us'd all Mens to maintain themſelves therein; they brought their Forces into the Field, march'd to attack the Emperor's, and that with ſo much Vigour, that they defeated them: The veteran Officers of the Imperial Army were kill'd upon the Spot; but the Soldiers who eſcap'd from the Fight, being rally'd by other Imperial Officers, return'd to the Charge, and repuls'd the Enemy ſo briskly, that *Barein*, who commanded them, was made Priſoner, and carried to *Chalons* in *Burgundy*. *The Emperor reaſſumes the Government, and purſues the Rebels, who are routed.*

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

LOTHAIRE, hearing of the Defeat of his Troops, and of his Father's Victory at the ſame Time, march'd with what Forces he had left towards the City of *Chalons*, which he took, ſack'd, and burnt: The Governor was beheaded, and his Wife *Gebinge* drown'd for a Witch, after which *Lothaire* made haſte to *Orleans* to ſuccour his Armv.

Lothaire *ſurrenders himſelf to his Father, and asks Pardon publickly.*

ON the other hand, the Emperor being informed of the Death of his old Officers, and the miſerable State of the City of *Chalons*, gathered together what Men he could, and alſo caus'd *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to reinforce them with his Troops. They marched with all ſpeed to *Langres*, and advanced in order to join King *Pepin*, who was coming to their Aſſiſtance, which they accordingly did. The two Armies being arriv'd near the River *Loire*, and *Lothaire* conſidering that all *Germany* was againſt him, and that his Father's Army ſurpaſs'd his, both in Number, Courage, and Experience, reſolved to ſubmit himſelf, and laying aſide his Arms and his Cuiraſs, went and ſurrendred himſelf to the Emperor, asking him Pardon publickly for his Diſloyalty and Diſobedience.

836. THE Emperor, moved with *Lothaire*'s Repentance, forgave, and received him as his Son, and embraced him with Tears; at the ſame Time *Lothaire*, at the head of the Army, and in Preſence of a great Number of the Nobility and States of *Germany*, ſwore publickly to his Father, holding up two Fingers of his right Hand, that he would be faithful and obedient to him for the future, as a Son ought to be to his Father, and that he was infinitely troubled for having followed and hearkned to the Councel of thoſe impious and perfidious Wretches who had ſeduced him.

AFTER

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

AFTER this Reconciliation, the Emperor return'd to *Aix le Chapelle* with his Sons *Lewis* and *Pepin*: No ſooner had he arriv'd there, but he gave Orders for calling a general Diet to be held at *Thionville*. All the States of *Germany*, *France*, *Bavaria*, and *Italy*, being there according to his Commands, the Emperor, with his two Sons, *Lewis* and *Pepin*, directed the States in what Manner they ſhould proceed againſt the chief Accomplices in *Lothaire's* Conſpiracy.

A Famous Diet where the Rebels are tryed.

THEY began, by impriſoning *Ebbo* Archbiſhop of *Rheims*, at *Hildeſheim* in *Saxony*, and depoſing the Archbiſhop of *Lyons*. As for the Dukes, they were puniſh'd more ſeverely, as well as the Counts and Councellors, ſome being either drown'd, or having their Eyes pull'd out, others were beheaded, or had their Hands cut off, and the reſt dy'd of Hunger miſerably in Priſon. It ſeem'd as if GOD, to whom alone Vengeance belongs, and who diſpoſes of Crowns and Scepters as he pleaſes, reſolv'd to puniſh each particularly according as he deſerv'd, that he might leave an Example to Poſterity. For *Ebbo*, who had written ſeveral Letters to foment the Rebellion, had his right Hand withered, and the two firſt Fingers always bent towards the Earth, indiſputably as a Puniſhment for his having ſworn Fidelity to the Emperor, with thoſe ſame Fingers upon the Evangeliſts, 837.

HE howl'd like a Wolf, and ran about always with his Mouth open, as if he would devour the World: In ſhort, he died in Baniſhment of a Conſumption. To this Chaſtiſement the Emperor added Remonſtrances full of Fatherly Tenderneſs, recommending Peace, Union, and Concord to his Sons, as Things that contributed the moſt to the Grandeur and Proſperity of Princes and their People; after

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

which he resolved to divide his Kingdoms and States amongst them.

A Project of a Partition made by the Emperor, whereat Lothaire *and* Lewis *are dissatisfy'd.*

He would have given, at the Sollicitation of his Wife *Judith*, upper *Burgundy*, *Alsatia*, *Switzerland*, and all *Suabia*, to her Son *Charles*; whereof *Lothaire* and King *Lewis* of *Bavaria* being appriz'd, held a Diet at *Trent*; where they resolved to oppose this Gift, as extorted by the Empress.

The Death of Pepin *King of* Aquitain.

This Princess, in order to support herself in this Affair, and gain over King *Pepin* to her Interests, had engaged him to take upon him the Guardianship of her Son *Charles*; but this Prince died on his return to *Gascony*, in *September* 838, leaving two Sons, *Pepin* and *Charles*.

So considerable an Alteration induced the Emperor to send an Embassy to invite *Lothaire* into *Germany*, to receive the Part of the Empire design'd for him. The King of *Bavaria*, on his Part, call'd a Diet at *Frankfort*, and remonstrated to all the Dukes and States of *Franconia* there present, how unjust the Proceedings of his Mother-in-Law *Judith* were, she intending to rob him of all the best Provinces, to invest her own Son *Charles* therewith. Hereupon 'twas there resolved, to defend the Rights and Liberties of the Crown of *Germany*, at the Peril of their Lives and Fortunes, and to follow his Orders in whatever was just against all his Enemies. The Emperor having Advice hereof, advanced with his Army to *Mentz*, where he passed the *Rhine*, and incamp'd within four Leagues of *Frankfort*. But the King of *Bavaria*, not being willing to give the Emperor his Father any Trouble, altered his Mind, and begged the Princes and Nobility of *Germany* to persist in paying their Duty and service to the Emperor, and to go and assure him that he would continue all

838

Accommodation between the Emperor and his Son Lewis, *K. of* Bavaria.

all his Life ſtedfaſt in his Obedience; after which he return'd into *Bavaria*. However thoſe Nobility and States of *Germany*, who were deputed, meeting *Albrecht*, Captain General of the Imperial Troops, half-way between *Frankfort* and *Mentz*, as they were going to inform the Emperor of this Reſolution, and having a Conference with him, declar'd frankly that they could not ſuffer the unjuſt Procedure of the Empreſs; that their Kingdom having been conquer'd by an infinite Number of heroic Actions, at the Price of their Blood and Eſtates, from whence it was called the Kingdom of *Germany*, they had a Right, and were reſolved to keep it entire. In ſhort, they prevail'd ſo far by theſe Reaſons, and by divers other honeſt and prudent Remonſtrances, which were told to the Emperor, that he conſented to the Agreement propos'd between him and the King of *Bavaria*, who return'd to *Frankfort* for this Intent; where, after having paid his Reſpects to his Father, the Treaty was ſign'd on both ſides.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair.

THE Emperor, having ſtaid in this City the whole Winter, paſs'd his Lent at *Coblentz*, and his Eaſter at *Conſtance*, and return'd to *Worms* about *May*, whither *Lothaire* alſo went on his coming back from *Italy*, and was receiv'd very magnificently, at this Place the laſt Diviſion of the Emperor's Dominions was made. It was concluded by this Partition, that *Lothaire* ſhould be Maſter of all *Italy*, with all the Countries from the *Maeſe* to the *Alps*; that *Lewis* ſhould reſt contented with the Kingdom of *Bavaria*, that is, the Eaſtern *France*; and that young *Charles* ſhould hereditarily enjoy all the Territories from the *Maeſe* to *Spain*, and ſo ſhould be King of the Weſtern *France*. All

Accommodation between the Emperor and his Son Lothaire, *with the laſt Diviſion of* Lewis the Debonnair's *Dominions.*

Lewis *the* Debonnair.

which was artfully contrived, managed, and carried on by the Advice of the Empreſs *Judith*. Thus we ſee that the Imperial Crown was not yet appropriated to the *French* Monarchy, altho' the Emperors look'd upon *France* as their ancient Patrimony, and their other Territories as Conqueſts.

The Gaſcons *elect one of* Pepin's *Sons for their King; but the Emperor ſeiz'd him, and put his Son* Charles *in his ſtead.*

ABOUT this Time the Ambaſſadors of *Gaſcony* came to the Emperor, and declared that the *Gaſcons* had elected *Pepin*, Son to their King *Pepin*, in his ſtead, becauſe he had been educated amongſt them, and underſtood their Language, Manners, Rights, and Cuſtoms. The Ambaſſadors were ſent back very civilly, but without any Anſwer, becauſe the Emperor, with the Empreſs his Wife, and his Son *Charles*, went in Perſon to carry it, and arriv'd in *Gaſcony* almoſt as ſoon as them. On his Arrival there, he preſented his Son *Charles* to the States of that Kingdom for their Sovereign; and at the ſame Time caus'd young *Pepin* to be taken Priſoner, and ſent him to *Metz* to be guarded, and brought up by the Biſhop of that Place.

839. Lewis *of* Bavaria *proteſts againſt the Partition; but is ſatisfy'd by the Emperor.*

DURING theſe Tranſactions, the King of *Bavaria* aſſembled the Dukes, Counts, and States of *Suabia*, *Franconia*, *Saxony*, and other Countries, at *Frankfort*, where he complain'd of the Partition that had been made, as he ſaid, to his Prejudice, offering to make a League with them to annul this Diſtribution. The Emperor, being inform'd hereof, ſet out immediately from *Poitiers*, where he had ſpent Part of the Winter, and advanc'd as far as *Mentz*, altho' he was very much indiſpos'd with a Cough, and a Defluction upon the Lungs, which had been caus'd by the Sharpneſs of the Weather. His Sickneſs obliging him to keep his Bed, he

ſent

ſent for his Brother the Biſhop of *Metz*, *Ottacer*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and *Hatto*, Archbiſhop of *Treves*, in whoſe Preſence he adjuſted the Difference between his Son *Lewis* of *Bavaria* and himſelf. But finding his Diſtemper increaſe, he regulated other Affairs relating to the publick Good; and, having pardon'd all the Wrongs that had been done him, either by his Friends or Enemies, he entirely quitted the Care of worldly Affairs, in order to think only of ſuch as concerned the Salvation of his Soul; ſo that reſigning himſelf up to the Will of GOD, he expired the twenty firſt of *June*, 840, and was interred at *Metz*, in St. *Arnold*'s Chappel, near his Wife *Hildegarde*.

LEWIS *the* Debonnair. 840. Lewis *the* Debonair's *Death.*

CHAP. IV.

LOTHAIRE.

LOTHAIRE having received in *Italy* certain Intelligence of the Emperor his Father's Death, the Dukes, Officers, and Miniſters, who had been depriv'd of their Poſts, preſs'd him to ſet out immediately for *Aix*, there to take Poſſeſſion of the Imperial Throne, and make the *Germans* do him Homage. They had the more Reaſon to give him this Councel, becauſe they were in hopes to be again reinſtated in the Government, and to diſpoſe, as they had before done, of all things according to their Caprice. *Lothaire* arrived at *Aix*, when he was

Lothaire *comes from* Italy *to* Aix, *to make himſelf acknowledg'd; and at the ſame time ſeizes on all the deceas'd Emperor's Dominions.*

LOTHAIR. least expected, where he caus'd the principal States of *France* and *Germany*, whom he had ſummon'd, to pay him Obedience. *Lewis*, King of *Bavaria*, and *Charles*, King of *France*, being appriz'd hereof, ſent Ambaſſadors to deſire him not to precipitate Affairs in this manner, becauſe he well knew that they were Joint-Heirs with him to all their Father's Dominions.

BUT *Lothaire*, not giving Ear to prudent and wiſe Councel, but ſuffering himſelf to be governed by Perſons who had always been diſaffected to the deceaſed Emperor, ſent back the Ambaſſadors with this Anſwer; that he had been choſen, and acknowledged Emperor during his Father's Life; that ſince that Time his Father had cauſed the Imperial Crown to be placed on his Head, and declared him Emperor; that even in his laſt Sickneſs, and but few Days before his Death, he had deliver'd the Crown, Sword, and other Imperial Ornaments into his Hands; and that thus he neither could, nor ought to ſuffer any Competitor; that it was in no wiſe for the Advantage of his Subjects or States to have many Sovereigns; that being the eldeſt, he could not recede from any of his Rights; but nevertheleſs, to give them a Proof of his good Intentions, and to enable them to ſupport their Royal Dignity, he would conſent that his Brother *Lewis* ſhould poſſeſs *Bavaria* by Inheritance; and *Charles*, *France*, on Condition of holding theſe Fiefs of him, acknowledging him Emperor, and being oblig'd to aſſiſt him againſt his Enemies, in Caſe of need.

THE two Princes abſolutely rejected theſe Conditions, each of them reſolving to be ſovereign Maſters of the Dominions they enjoy'd

joy'd. And as they found they ſhould be oblig'd to maintain their Rights by Force, each rais'd conſiderable Armies, *Lewis* marching with his from *Bavaria*, and *Charles* with another from his Territories. *Lothaire* had already made himſelf Maſter of the City of *Metz*, and was advanc'd with a Deſign to incamp before *Mentz*. But *Lewis* prevented him by putting a Garriſon therein, whilſt he endeavour'd, as much as poſſible, to gain over the Emperor his Father's Troops. *Lothaire* alſo was not idle on his Part, and being inform'd by thoſe whom he employ'd, that they were diſpos'd to eſpouſe his Cauſe, he reſolved to paſs the *Rhine* at *Worms* the twenty ſecond of *April*, 841. that he might be near them, and favour their Deſign the better. In ſhort, he manag'd Matters ſo well, either by himſelf, or thoſe whom he deputed, that moſt Part of the Officers and Soldiers engaged in his Intereſt.

LOTHAIR. *The Brothers reſolve not to be dependent on the Emperor, and take up Arms to maintain their Sovereignty.*

LEWIS, finding himſelf thus depriv'd of the Aſſiſtance of thoſe Officers on whom he moſt rely'd, was oblig'd to fly with Part of his Cavalry, leaving his Infantry to the Mercy, or rather the Butchery of the Imperialiſts; for they were treated with ſuch Barbarity, that above twenty thouſand Men were kill'd on the ſpot, ſparing neither Fathers, Sons, Relations, nor Friends. *Lewis defeated.*

LEWIS was no ſooner return'd into *Bavaria*, but he ſummon'd the Nobility, inliſted all who were capable of bearing Arms; and having levied a conſiderable Body of Forces, march'd to meet *Albrecht*, *Lothaire*'s General, who was entring into *Bavaria* with the Troops under his Command. The two Armies met together in *Suabia* near the *Rhine*, and fought ſo obſtinately, that the Imperialiſts were at laſt defeated, and *Lewis revenged.*

LOTHAIR. and loſt eight thouſand Men, with their General *Albrecht*, upon the ſpot; after which Victory *Lewis* march'd towards the *Maeſe*, where he was join'd by his Brother *Charles*.

Lewis joins his Brother Charles, *and gains the famous Battle of* Fontenai *over* Lothaire.

THE two Brothers having review'd their Troops, immediately advanced towards upper *Burgundy*, where *Lothaire* was, and incamp'd within two Leagues of his Army; which done, they ſent Ambaſſadors to him, to demand their reſpective Portions, but could neither obtain Audience nor Juſtice: On the contrary, *Lothaire* having put his Army in Battle Array, oblig'd *Lewis* and *Charles* to do the ſame. The Onſet was given at *Fontenai* near *Auxerre*, on the twenty fifth of *June*, the Day after St. *John Baptiſt*, and laſted from ſeven in the Morning till Night, and the Slaughter was ſo great on both ſides, that above 100,000 Men were kill'd on the ſpot, and the two Brothers *Lewis* and *Charles* remain'd Maſters of the Field of Battle. The Emperor *Lothaire* made his Eſcape (the only Refuge left) after he had beheld with Grief the Death of his beſt Officers, and thoſe, who, through an inordinate Ambition and exceſſive Avarice, had animated him againſt his Brothers, imagining themſelves invincible, without conſidering that GOD fights in the Cauſe of Juſtice. The *Germans* in this Engagement loſt their beſt Officers, and ſo far were they, as they had flattered themſelves, from augmenting the Power and Dominions which were left them by their Anceſtors, who had conquered and preſerved them by their Valour, that, on the contrary, they were extreamly weakned. Some time after this Battle, *Lothaire* made an Agreement with his Brothers, yielding up to each of them what they demanded, and contenting himſelf with

with the Empire, and *Italy*: But this Agreement not lasting long, another Battle was fought, where Fortune again declaring against *Lothaire*, he thought it most adviseable to make a new Treaty, and kept it inviolably. LOTHAIR. *An Agreement between* Lothaire *and his Brothers.*

BESIDES, considering the Misfortunes he had undergone, (without Doubt as a Punishment for the Troubles he had unjustly caus'd the Emperor his Father) he resolv'd to live in Peace, and divided his Dominions among his Sons. His eldest Son *Lewis*, whom he had some time before declared his Successor to the Empire, and the Kingdom of *Italy*, he confirm'd Emperor, and delivered those Dominions up to him. To his second Son *Charles*, who died without Children in 862, he gave the Kingdom of *Provence*, with part of *Burgundy*; and the Kingdom of *Austratia*, to his third Son *Lothaire*, from whom it was call'd *Lotharingia*, or *Lorrain*, with the other part of *Burgundy*: This young Prince died also without Legitimate Issue in the year 869. *The last Disposition of* Lothaire's *Dominions in Favour of his Sons.*

THE Emperor having thus made this Partition, and being left a Widower by the Decease of his Wife *Irmingarde*, who died in 851, regulated the Affairs of State by degrees, and then retired to the Abbey of *Prum*, near *Treves*, intending to live a Monastick Life, and prepare himself for a future State: But his Death happening soon after, he was deprived of the Opportunity of long Repentance for his past ill Conduct. Lothaire *turns Monk, and dies.* 857.

CHAP.

CHAP. V.

LEWIS *the Second.*

Lewis II. *This Emperor reſides, and dies at* Rome.



LEWIS, the eldeſt Son of *Lothaire*, had been declared King of *Italy* by his Father, in the Year 844, after which he was proclaimed Emperor *Auguſtus*, and laſtly, crowned by Pope *Sergius* II. He contented himſelf with waging War againſt the *Saracens* in *Italy*, whilſt his two Uncles, *Lewis* the *Germanick* King of *Bavaria*, and *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, were contriving how to aggrandize themſelves both at his and their own Expence.

IF the Dominions which were allotted him with the Title of Emperor, had been equal to his Merit and Capacity, he would have adorn'd the Imperial Dignity as much as his Predeceſſors; but he did not poſſeſs above the ninth Part of *Charlemagne*'s Territories; He was devout, honeſt, couragious, and prudent. The War he made againſt the *Saracens* of *Africa*, to drive them from the Coaſts of *Italy*, which they infeſted, did not coſt him ſo much Trouble as
865. that he carry'd on againſt *Adalgiſes*, Duke of *Benevento*; which, however, at laſt ended gloriouſly. He forced this Duke to conclude a Peace with him, whereby he oblig'd himſelf not to enter again into *Benevento* during Life; whereat the *Roman* Senate were ſo enraged, he having done it without their Knowledge, that they

they declared him guilty of High-Treaſon, and condemned him to Baniſhment; and he, to avoid the Evils that threaten'd him, retired to *Corſica*, where he died. At the ſame time the Pope declared the Marriage of *Lothaire*, the Emperor's Brother, with his Concubine *Waldrade*, unlawful, ſeeing that he contracted it in ſpite of the Prohibitions of the holy See; and ſuſpended the Archbiſhops of *Treves* and *Cologn*, and excommunicated the Synod, who had pronounced it lawful. LEWIS II.

NEVERTHELESS *Lothaire* perſiſted in living with *Waldrade* as uſual, treating her as his Wife, till ſuch Time as he was call'd into *Italy* by the Emperor, who demanded his Aſſiſtance againſt the *Saracens*; and, being there, was oblig'd to go to *Rome*, and to make Satisfaction to Pope *Adrian* II. in whoſe Preſence he ſwore, and even made ſome of his Nobility confirm it upon Oath, that he had no Communication with *Waldrade* ſince the Prohibition of Pope *Nicholas*: And as he receiv'd the Communion hereupon, 'twas obſerv'd that the Death which ſurpriz'd him at *Piacenza*, was a Puniſhment from Heaven for his Perjury: 'Twas alſo remark'd, that not one of thoſe who ſwore, and were Communicants with him, ſurviv'd this Impiety above ſix Months. 867. 868.

THE Emperor continued always in *Italy*, and reſided chiefly at *Rome*, maintaining there generouſly his Authority, and the Dignity of the Empire, againſt the Uſurpations of the Popes, and died at *Milan* in *Auguſt* 875. after reigning twenty Years. He was buried there in the Church of St. *Ambroſe*, leaving behind him no Male Heir, but ſo glorious a Reputation for his Virtue, Courage, and Zeal in curbing 875.

the

the Enemies of Chriſtianity, that he alone of all *Charlemagne*'s Deſcendants, ſeem'd to inherit the Blood of that great Emperor.

CHAP. VI.

CHARLES II. *ſirnam'd the* Bald.

CHARLES II.

LEWIS, King of *Germany*, ſirnam'd the *Germanick*, pretended that, after the Death of the Emperor *Lewis*, his Nephew, he had a right to ſucceed him, both by Law, and the Will of the late Emperor, his Brother. But *Charles the Bald*, his younger Brother, King of *France*, a cunning and politick Prince, paſs'd the *Alps*, and made ſuch ſtrong Intereſt with Pope *John* VIII. that his Holineſs, and the other *Roman* Prelates, judging there was more to be got by *Charles*, than *Lewis*, gave him the Preference, and crowned him Emperor on *Chriſtmas* Day, 875.

Charles, tho' youngeſt, preferr'd to Lewis, the elder Brother, in the Succeſſion to the Empire.

THUS *Charles the Bald* uſurp'd the Empire of his elder Brother, to whom it belong'd by the *Salique* Law; which, by a continual unalterable Decree, preſerves the Succeſſion for the Male Heir, who is neareſt in Blood to the deceaſed.

He gains over the Pope, at the Expence of the Rights of the Crown.

IF *Charles* had no Right to the Imperial Crown in Prejudice of his Brother, the Pope had yet leſs to place it on his Head, and acknowledge him Emperor. The one infring'd the *Salique* Law, a Law that was ever held ſacred and inviolable among the Princes of *France*; and the other gave what was not in his Power

Power, a Vaſſal not being impowered at Pleaſure to make himſelf a Sovereign, but obliged indiſpenſibly to receive him that is appointed by Law. CHARLES II.

ACCORDINGLY *Charles*, being dubious perhaps of the Validity of this Attempt, had gained the Pope over to his Intereſt at the Expence even of the Rights of the Imperial Crown, and the ſovereign Authority which his Predeceſſors had always over the Popes till that Time; inſomuch that, from being his ſuperior, as he was, he made himſelf his Vaſſal. Beſides this, he yielded up yet many more of the Rights of the *Gallican* Church, and promis'd him upon Oath to protect him againſt any one. But ſuch illegal Conceſſions, made by Perſons having no Power of diſpoſal, cannot in any wiſe be binding; the Truth and Juſtice of which Aſſertion is proved by this eternal, unerring Maxim in Politicks, That a bad Title cannot be eſtabliſhed, or made legal and juſt, thro' length of Time.

AS ſoon as *Lewis*, King of *Germany*, the lawful, and even the deſigned Succeſſor of the Emperor, his Nephew, by his laſt Will, had heard of the Step taken by his Brother *Charles*, he reſolved to march into *Italy*, and procure himſelf likewiſe to be acknowledged Emperor; but before he was in a Condition to undertake that Expedition, he died at *Frankfort* the twenty eighth of *Auguſt*, 876. leaving three Sons by his Wife *Emma*, *Carloman*, *Lewis*, and *Charles*, who divided the Dominions left them by their Father. 876.

CARLOMAN, for his Part, had *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*. *Lewis* enjoy'd *Saxony*, *Thuringia*, *Friezland*, *Franconia*, and that Part of *Lorrain* which his Father had, in Conſequence

CHARLES II. sequence of the Partition made with *Charles the Bald*, after the Death of *Lothaire*; and *Charles*, firnam'd the *Groſs*, had only *Suabia* for his Share.

877. *His Death.* THE Emperor *Charles the Bald*, did not long enjoy the Fruits of his Uſurpation, for he only reign'd about two Years and two Months, and died at *Mantua* the ſixth of *October*, 877. of Poyſon given him by his Phyſician, who was a *Jew*, nam'd *Zedechias*: This was the firſt Emperor to whom the Pope gave the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian*.

HE had two Sons by his Wife *Richilda*, Daughter to *Etico* Count of *Altorf* in *Suabia*, who both died young; and by his ſecond Wife *Hermantrade*, Siſter to *Boſon*, King of *Provence*; he left four Sons, *Lewis*, firnam'd the *Stammerer*, King of *France*, *Lothaire*, *Charles*, and *Carloman*, and a Daughter whoſe Name was *Judith*.

CHAP. VII.

LEWIS III. *firnamed the* Stammerer, *and* CARLOMAN.

His Coronation. 878. LEWIS, firnamed the *Stammerer*, becauſe of a Heſitation in his Speech, being the eldeſt Son of *Charles the Bald*, was crowned King of *France* at *Rheims*, by the Arch-Biſhop *Hincmar*, in the Year 877. and on the ſeventh of *September*, 878, he was crowned Emperor at *Troyes* by Pope *John* VIII, in the Preſence of all the

the Councel which was then held there, and had been call'd by the ſame Pope after his withdrawing into *France*. LEWIS III.

CARLOMAN, eldeſt Son to *Lewis* the *Germanick*, always diſputed with him the Title of Emperor, having been declared ſo by a great many Princes of *Germany*, and *Italy*. They eſpous'd his ſide by Reaſon of the Juſtice of his Cauſe, and upon this Foundation they ſeiz'd on the City of *Rome*, and the Pope himſelf, who was returned thither. They blam'd him highly for his Raſhneſs, and proclaim'd King *Carloman* Emperor, re-eſtabliſhing in his Perſon the *Salique* Law. But *Carloman*, being at laſt afflicted with the Palſy, conſented that *Charles* the *Groſs*, his younger Brother, ſhould aſſume the Imperial Title in his ſtead, and a little after retired to *Oetingen*, where he died in the Year 880, leaving behind him no Male Heirs but *Arnold* his natural Son, who in the ſequel was choſen Emperor. *Carloman diſputes the Empire with him.*

LEWIS, having taken a Journey into *Germany*, where he adjuſted his Difference with the King of *Bavaria*, about the Partition of *Lorrain*, returned into *France*, where he no ſooner arriv'd, but, finding the Indiſpoſition that had ſeiz'd him increaſe, he ſent for his eldeſt Son, and recommending him to the Count of *Bourges* and *Auvergne*, together with the Marquis of *Nevers*, and *Thierri* Count of *Macon*, he died at *Compeigne*, not without Suſpicion of being poyſoned, on the ſixth of *April*, 872. 879. *The Death of* Lewis.

CHAP. VIII.

CHARLES III. *called the* Groſs, *or the* Fat.

CHARLES III.

His Expedition into Italy, *and Coronation.* 880.

CHARLES III. called the *Groſs*, or the *Fat*, youngeſt Brother to *Carloman*, and *Lewis the Stammerer*, immediately after the Death of the latter, being ſollicited by Pope *John* VIII to ſend his Ambaſſadors to *Rome*, and to follow himſelf as ſoon as poſſible, went for *Italy*, and having firſt made ſure of *Lombardy*, was crowned King at *Milan*. From thence he ſet out for *Rome*, where the Pope placed the Imperial Diadem on his Head in the Year 880, on *Chriſtmas* Day. Thus the ſame Pope, who firſt violated the *Salique* Law, having better conſider'd of it, maintain'd it in the Perſon of this Prince; ſo that *Charles* ſucceeded not only to the Kingdom of the Weſtern *France*, but alſo to ſo many other States, that he might have boaſted of poſſeſſing almoſt all the Territories which were before ſubject to his great Grandfather *Charlemagne*. And as the Imperial Crown was re-united in his Perſon to the *French* Monarchy, 'tis evident that, according to Law, this Crown could no more be ſeparated from that Monarchy; but both the one and the other meeting with weak Supports in this Prince, and his Succeſſors, who ought always to have kept them united, the whole Structure was demoliſh'd in a ſhort Time.

His Greatneſs, but of ſhort Continuance.

FROM

CHARLES III.

FROM the Ruins of that, an infinite Number of new States were form'd; the *French* being reduced by their Bloody War with the *Normans*, to the utmoſt Neceſſity, which hearkens to no Law, invited *Eudes* Count of *Paris*, to govern them: Thus he who was before only the Ruler of a Province, began to make himſelf a Sovereign, and he who was but a Subject, to be independent; and in fine the *Roman* Eagle, no longer agreeing with the *French* Race of *Charlemagne*, took flight from this Prince to the *German* Stem, as being more capable of maintaining its Glory.

885. TO return to *Charles* the *Groſs*; this Prince, as powerful as he was, having managed Affairs unfortunately, and being likewiſe defective in his Senſes, thro' a Cut he had receiv'd in his Head, became the Sport and Scorn of the World. He ſaw himſelf at once without Empire, Kingdom, or Subjects, and reduced to ſuch extream Miſery, that he had died of Hunger, if *Luitpert* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, (ſhock'd at ſuch a Change) had not in Charity allow'd him a Maintainance, till a Penſion was aſſign'd him upon the Village of *Nidingen* in *Suabia*.

888. *A Puniſhment for his Undutifulneſs to his Father.*

THIS ſtrange Misfortune was aſcrib'd to his undutiful Behaviour to *Lewis* the *Germanick* his Father, when he, with *Lewis*, one of his Brothers, rebell'd againſt him. *Charles* ſuffer'd however this extream Poverty with great Patience, and an intire Reſignation to the Divine Will, till the twelfth of *January* 888, when Death, taking him out of the World, delivered him alſo from the Miſeries under which he groaned. He left but one natural Son, named *Bernard*, having put away his Wife *Richarde*, Daughter to the King

of *Scotland*, and a very diſcreet Princeſs, who retired to the Convent of *Andelau*: He was the firſt who added the Date of the Common *Æra*, or the Year of our LORD, to his Acts, or other Diſpatches.

CHAP. IX.

ARNOLD.

ARNOLD. *Declared Emperor, on account of his Merit.*

ARNOLD, natural Son to *Carloman* King of *Bavaria*, had, by his Father's Will, inherited the Provinces of *Carinthia* and *Stiria*, and perceiving the Decline of the Empire, had ſeiz'd upon Eaſtern *France*; and as, on one Hand, he had render'd himſelf agreeable to his Uncle *Charles the Groſs*, by his Services in the War againſt the *Normans*; ſo, on the other, the States of *Germany* being already uſed to ſee the Imperial Crown on the Head of *German* Princes, in the Perſons of the former Emperors, aſſembled at *Frankfort* two Months before the Death of *Charles*, who was grown incapable of the Government, and judging *Arnold* worthy to ſupply his Place, proclaim'd him Emperor, to the Excluſion of King *Charles the Simple*, youngeſt Son to *Lewis the Stammerer*. This King, to ſay the Truth, was lawful Heir to the Imperial Crown; but he was not of an Age fit to act in Perſon, and command the Armies againſt the *Danes* and *Normans*, who ravag'd *France*, as has been already ſaid, and even made Incurſions into *Germany*, which was the Reaſon they preferr'd *Arnold*

nold to him. In effect, *Arnold* repuls'd them twice vigorouſly, and at laſt utterly routed them near *Louvain*, where they left an hundred thouſand Men dead upon the ſpot, beſides their Kings *Godfrey* and *Sigefrid*. ARNOLD.

THIS Emperor gained alſo divers Victories over the *Sclavonians*, who made continual Incurſions into the Empire; but the Progreſs of *Suintebold* Duke of *Moravia*, to aggrandize himſelf, croſs'd his good Fortune. This Duke had render'd himſelf ſo formidable, that *Arnold*, to obtain his Friendſhip, was oblig'd to yield him *Bohemia*, and chuſe him Godfather to one of his Sons; accordingly he made him hold his natural Son at the Baptiſmal Font, that he might be named *Suintebold*. But this Demonſtration of Confidence did not hinder his providing againſt this *Barbarian*, and preventing him in his Deſign of rendring himſelf abſolute. To this end, he had recourſe to *Caſula* Duke of *Hungary*, and *Uratiſlaus* Duke of *Poland*, who furniſh'd him with ſufficient Aſſiſtance to force *Suintebold* in his Turn, to deliver up his Son as a Security for his Fidelity. Having thus quieted all Things in *Germany*, he went into *Italy* to appeaſe the Troubles caus'd there by the Schiſm of two Popes, as well as the Factions of *Guy* Duke of *Spoleto*, and *Lambert* his Son, Rivals for the Empire one after another; the firſt of whom dying, and the other being too weak to reſiſt *Arnold*, this Prince made himſelf Maſter of *Bergamo*, and great Part of *Italy*. This done, he return'd into *Germany*, to eſtabliſh his Son *Suintebold* King of *Lorrain*; and having ſettled Affairs there, he again went into *Italy*, where, partly by Force, partly otherwiſe, he managed Matters ſo as to make his entry into *Rome*, and 893.

get himſelf crown'd Emperor by Pope *Formoſus* I. in the Year 896.

896.

IN ſhort, this illuſtrious Prince, after ſo many glorious Actions, died in a Chriſtian-like manner at *Oetingen*, tho' of Poyſon, or, as ſome others ſay, of the *Morbus pedicularis*, in the Year 899, and his Body was buried at St. *Emmeran*'s of *Ratisbon*, near that of *Carloman* his Father.

899.

CHAP. X.

LEWIS *the Fourth.*

LEWIS IV. 900. *Choſen Emperor, tho' an Infant.*

THOUGH *Lewis*, the Emperor *Arnold*'s Son, was but ſeven Years old, yet he was declared Emperor, after his Father's Death, by the Princes and Nobility of *Germany* aſſembled at *Forcheim*, who appointed *Hatto* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, his Governors and Councellors.

900.

THIS Prince, during his Reign, met with various Fortune; the beginniug thereof was diſturb'd by the War he waged with *Suintebold* his Brother, occaſion'd by the Inhabitants of *Lorrain*'s complaining againſt his Government: To whom he giving Ear, march'd to their Aſſiſtance with a powerful Army, wherewith *Suintebold* was defeated in a pitch'd Battle, and kill'd on the Spot; but the *Hungarians* in the End caus'd him more Trouble.

HIS Father *Arnold* had yielded up *Tranſilvania* to them (in Conſideration of the Services they rendered him againſt *Suintebold* Duke

of

of *Moravia*) but theſe *Barbarians*, not content therewith, being deſirous of taking Advantage of the Emperor's Minority, had made Incurſions into *Bavaria*, and exercis'd all manner of Cruelties. This obliged *Leopold* Duke of *Bavaria* to raiſe what Troops he could to repel them; accordingly he defeated them, and gain'd ſuch a conſiderable Victory, that, had he purſued the Blow, they would never more have thought of returning; but, failing in this, he gave them Time to recover. LEWIS IV 902.

ABOUT five Years after they again invaded *Bavaria*, ravaging the whole Country with the ſame Barbarity as before; the Emperor being informed hereof, immediately marched againſt them, and gave them Battle at *Augsburg*, but ſo much to his Diſadvantage, that he there loſt moſt of his beſt Officers, and, amongſt the reſt, the brave Duke *Leopold*, being, as it were, a Puniſhment for his former Neglect, in not cutting them entirely off in their Retreat; this Misfortune reduced the Emperor to the Neceſſity of making Peace with them, on Promiſe of paying them a yearly Tribute. 907. 908.

BESIDES, the Empire was extreamly harraſs'd with Civil Wars; *Albert*, *Adelard*, and *Henry*, all three Counts of *Bamberg*, having united againſt *Conrad* of *Franconia*, *Ebelhard*, and *Gebehard* of *Heſſe*, and the Biſhop of *Wirtzbourg*, whoſe Animoſity was ſo great on both ſides, that their frequent Battles with the loſs of divers Generals and great Numbers of Officers and Soldiers, could not induce them to agree. The Emperor did all that was poſſible to prevent the ill Conſequences of this inteſtine War, till, finding his Authority too weak to prevail upon *Albert* of *Bamberg*, he was forc'd to make uſe of extraordinary Means againſt

LEWIS IV him, who, ſuſpecting as much, took all manner of Methods to avoid falling into his Hands; but the Emperor, reſolving to arraign him, bethought himſelf of employing *Hatto*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, to trepan him. Accordingly this Prelate went to viſit *Albert*, and perſuaded him to go to the Emperor, upon giving his Word to ſee him ſafe back to his Caſtle; the Count was prevail'd upon through Complaiſance, and deſir'd the Archbiſhop to dine at the Caſtle; but *Hatto* excuſed himſelf, and preſs'd the Count to be going. Hereupon they both ſet out from thence, but had not gone above a
909. Mile when *Hatto*, feigning to be faint, ſeem'd to repent having refus'd *Albert*'s Civility, which was enough to induce the Count to deſire his Return to the Caſtle, whereto *Hatto* agreeing, he, by this Trick, pretended to be diſengag'd from his Promiſe. Dinner being over, they ſet forward on their Journey, and *Albert* was deliver'd up by the Archbiſhop into the Hands of the Emperor, who caus'd him to be
910. beheaded for his Rebellion.

911. THE Emperor, who, as may be imagin'd, had great Share in this Deceit, was ſufficiently puniſh'd at the Age of twenty, by being oblig'd to make an ignominious Treaty, and accept of Peace with the *Normans*, after loſing the beſt Part of his Nobility in two Battles. This Diſgrace made ſo great an Impreſſion on him, that he was ſeiz'd with a violent Head-Ach, attended with a malignant Fever, which continually increaſing, he died thereof on the
912. twenty firſt of *January*, 912, without any legitimate Male Heirs.

The Empire transferr'd to the Germans. 'TWAS then the Empire was transferr'd from the *French* Race, or the Male Heirs of the Kings of *France*, whoſe Right it was: At which Time

Time it comprehended *Franconia*, the Province of *Bamberg*, *Suabia*, *Conſtance*, *Baſil*, *Berne*, *Lauſanne*, *Burgundy*, *Beſancon*, *Lorrain*, *Metz*, *Liege*, *Cambray*, *Arras*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Utrecht*, *Cologn*, *Treves*, *Mentz*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Strasbourg*, *Friezland*, *Saxony*, *Heſſe*, *Weſtphalia*, *Thuringia*, *Wetteravia*, *Miſnia*, the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*, *Pomerania*, *Rugen*, *Stetin*, *Holſtein*, *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Poland*, *Bohemia*, *Auſtria*, *Carinthia*, *Stiria*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, the *Griſons*, and, in general, all the Countries lying between theſe Provinces, or dependent on them. LEWIS IV

THEY likewiſe included therein the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, with *Rome*, *Italy*, *Lombardy*, and all the Fiefs thereunto belonging; this was the Body of the Empire, and this will ſhew the Reaſon why the Imperial Crown was transferr'd from the Houſe of *France*.

IF the Title of EMPEROR had remain'd annex'd to the *French* Monarchy, without introducing any Partitions, which have always prov'd fatal to all States, the Empire would have been perpetuated in the Race of the Kings of *France*; and whatever Changes had happen'd, they would have reſpected the Imperial Dignity as belonging to the King, and the one would have been included in the other. But the Diviſion made by *Lewis* the *Debonnaire* having alienated the Affections of his Sons, and created a mutual Hatred and Averſion between them, and conſequently between the Subjects of each of theſe Partitions, they became in a very ſmall Time Strangers to each other. Beſides, the Weakneſs and Incapacity of the Kings of *France*, who were Heirs to *Lewis the Stammerer*, gave an Opportunity to the Governors of moſt Part of the Provinces to uſurp the ſovereign Authority, with the Demeſnes

Lewis IV meſnes of the Crown; all which together was partly the Cauſe why the Kings of *France*, who were deſcended from *Charles the Bald*, and who might lawfully have diſputed the Empire with *Arnold*, *Carloman*'s natural Son, and his Succeſſor *Lewis*, gave over their Claim.

The Empire hereditary in Charlemagne's *Family, and why.*

NEVERTHELESS it may be remark'd, that the Empire was hereditary in the Family of *Charlemagne*, and his Deſcendants; nor could it be otherwiſe, ſince the ſeveral Parts whereof it conſiſted were the Conqueſts and Price of the great and heroick Exploits of that magnanimous Prince.

'TWAS for this Reaſon that, when he declar'd his Son *Lewis the Debonnair* Emperor, he crown'd him himſelf, or, as others ſay, put the Imperial Diadem upon the Altar, in Preſence of all the great Men, and order'd his Son to take and place it upon his own Head, to ſhew he only held it of GOD and his Father, to whom he was lawful Succeſſor.

WHEREFORE, on the other hand, if the Emperors have often appointed their Succeſſors by their Wills, and even have deſired to have theſe their Wills ratify'd by the Grandees of the Empire, this Ceremony was only to avoid the Inconveniences and Diviſions that might ariſe amongſt ſo many Nations, whoſe Humours, Inclinations, and even Languages, were entirely different from each other.

IN the ſame manner we ſee that the Kings of *France* ſend their Edicts to be regiſter'd in the Parliaments; for this Regiſtring is only to notify the Will of the Prince, that other Subjects may pay Obedience to it, being thus communicated by the Means of theſe Tribunals.

'TIS

LEWIS IV

'TIS farther ſeen, that theſe Wills were only uſed to prevent the fatal Diviſions which might happen amongſt the Sons, after the Father's Death, on account of the Diſtribution of the Dominions; and even theſe have often proved but a weak Barrier againſt Violence and Ambition.

YET, theſe Wills are convincing Proofs of the Right theſe Fathers had to diſpoſe of the Empire, it being in their Power to give it to either of their Sons; and 'twas by Virtue of this Right, that theſe Children always inherited, although there was no Will, (conforming in this to the Law of Nature, or the *Salique* Law, which is the ſame in this reſpect) and that in Default of Sons, the next, who was capable of ſucceeding, inherited the Crown, according to this fundamental Law. This is ſtill more evident from the Ceremony of the Inauguration of the Kings of *France*; for altho' the Peers, who are there aſſembled, crown them, and place the Diadem on their Heads, they do not nevertheleſs elect them, but only obey this Law; ſubmitting thereto in the Name of all the People, whoſe Deputies they are, and receiving the Perſon whom the Law appoints. This is ſo true, that if they ſhould preſume to crown any one whom the Law excludes, the Coronation, not having any Foundation in Juſtice, would of it ſelf be void, and of no effect; and this is the Power of the *Salique* Law, which is inſeparable from the *French* Empire.

CHAP.

CHAP. XI.

The Genealogy of the French *Emperors.*

Pepin. PEPIN, King of *France*, Son of *Charles Martel*, and *Suanichild*, born in the Year 714, and dying at St. *Dennis* in the Year 768, had four Sons by his Wife *Bertha*, *Charles*, *Carloman*, *Pepin*, and *Giles*; and three Daughters, *Rothaide*, *Adelaida*, or *Alix*, and *Giletta*; which Daughters dy'd without Children, as well as the three younger Sons.

912. CHALES, ſirnam'd the *Great*, or *Charlemagne*, born the twenty eighth of *January*, 747, having put away his firſt Wife *Theodore*, Daughter to *Didier*, King of *Lombardy*, without having any Children by her, had, by his ſecond Marriage with *Hildegarde*, Daughter to *Immon*, or *Hildebrand*, four Sons and ſix Daughters: 1. *Charles*, King of *Germany*, who dy'd without Children the fourth of *December*, 811. 2. *Pepin*, King of *Italy*, who was call'd *Carloman* before his Baptiſm, and died in 810, leaving one Son named *Bernard*, King of *Italy*. *Bernard* dying in the Year 889, left three Sons, *Bernard*, *Pepin*, and *Heribert*, from whom the Counts of *Vermandois* were deſcended. 3. *Lewis*, ſtiled the *Debonnaire*, who was afterwards Emperor. 4. *Lothaire*, who was a Twin with *Lewis*, and died immediately after his Birth. 5. *Rotrude*, who was betrothed to *Conſtantine*, the Empreſs *Irene*'s Son, and died in the Year 810. 6. *Bertha*, Wife to Count *Engelbert*, Mother to *Harnid*

Charlemagne *Emperor.*

Harnid and *Nitard*. 7. *Giſele*, who was baptis'd by *Thomas* Archbiſhop of *Milan*. 8. *Hildegard*. 9. *Gertrude*. 10. *Adelaida*, or *Alix*, which three laſt died very young. By *Faſtrade* his third Wife, who died in 794, he had two Daughters, *Theodrade*, Abbeſs of *Argenteuil*, and *Hiltrude*, who likewiſe died without Marrying. By *Luitgarde* his fourth Wife, who died the fourth of *June* 800, he had no Children. His natural Sons were *Pepin* the *Hump-back'd*, a Monk at *Prum*. 2. *Drogo*, or *Dreux*, Biſhop of *Metz*, who died in 855, in great Reputation for his Learning, and Virtue. 3. *Hugh* the Great, call'd the *Abbot*, who was kill'd in a Battle in the Year 844, leaving two Daughters, the youngeſt of which was married to *Tertula*, Count of *Gaſtinois*, by whom ſhe had *Indilger*, Father to *Fulk* the Red Count of *Anjou*; the eldeſt was married to *Robert* the *Saxon*, who liv'd in 830, and had by her *Robert* the ſtrong, Duke and Marquis of *France*, who died in the Year 867, leaving two Sons, the firſt named *Eudes*, afterwards King of *France*, who left one Son, *Arnold* King of *Guienne*; and a ſecond, *Robert* the third, alſo King of *France*, whoſe Son was *Hugh* the Great, Count of *Paris*, Father to *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*.

Lewis *the* Debonnair *Emperor.*

LEWIS the *Debonnaire*, born in 778, died in the Year 840, at *Ingelheim*, leaving by his firſt Marriage with *Hermengarde*, or *Irmengarde*, Daugther to *Engelram*, who died the third of *October*, 818, 1. *Lothaire*, afterwards Emperor. 2. *Pepin*, King of *Aquitain*, who died at *Poitiers* in the year 838, leaving two Sons, *Pepin* and *Charles*, who died a few Years after without Children. 3. *Lewis*, King of *Bavaria*, *Germany*, or Eaſtern *France*, call'd the *Germanick*, who died at *Frankfort*, the twenty eight of *Auguſt*, 876,

876, having by his Marriage with *Emma* three Sons, *Carloman*, *Lewis*, who died in 882, and *Charles*, ſirnamed the *Groſs*. *Carloman* being willing that his youngeſt Brother ſhould ſucceed in his ſtead to the Emperors *Charles* the *Bald*, and *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, died in the Year 885, leaving by his Concubine *Litoninda*, one Son *Arnold*, who was afterwards Emperor. *Lewis* the *Debonnair* by his ſecond Marriage with *Judith*, Daughter to *Guelph* Count of *Altorf*, had one Son, *Charles* the *Bald*, who likewiſe was Emperor and King of *France*.

Lothaire *Emperor.*

THE Emperor *Lothaire* died in the Year 855, leaving by his Wife *Hermengarde*, 1. *Lewis* II; 2. *Charles*; 3. *Lothaire*; and one Daughter, named alſo *Hermengarde*, who was forced away, and married by Count *Giſlebert*, Vaſſal to *Charles* the *Bald*.

Lewis II. *Emperor.*

After his Father's Deceaſe, *Lewis* II. King of *Italy* was Emperor, and died in the Year 875, without Male Heirs by his Wife *Engelberge*, or *Hildegarde*, who turn'd Nun after the Death of her Husband, and died Abbeſs at *Pavia*.

CHARLES King of *Provence*, died in the Year 862, without Male Heirs; as did alſo *Lothaire* King of *Provence*, in 869, without legitimate Iſſue.

Charles *the* Bald, *Emperor.*

THE Emperor *Charles* the *Bald*, born in 822, died in 877, leaving by his Marriage with his Conſort *Hermentrude*, 1. *Lewis* the third, call'd the *Stammerer*, afterwards Emperor. 2. *Lothaire*, who died Abbot in 886. 3. *Charles*, who died in 870, by wreſtling with a Man of extraordinary Strength. 4. *Carloman*, who was forced to turn Abbot, and died in 874. 5. *Judith*, who married *Ethelred* King of *England*; after whoſe Death ſhe eſpous'd *Baldwin*, ſirnamed *Iron-Arm*, firſt Count of *Flanders*. 6. *Bathilda*, who held the Abbey

Abbey of *Chelles* in *Commendam*, but was nevertheleſs Mother to one of the Wives of *Hugh* the Great, Duke of *France*, and Father to King *Hugh Capet*. 7. *Charles* the *Bald* had by his ſecond Marriage, *Richilda*, who was born before her Time, and died immediately after being baptized, in the Year 875. and 8. *Charles*, his youngeſt Child, who died in 878, a Year after his Birth.

LEWIS the third, call'd the *Stammerer*, Emperor and King of *France*, died in 879, leaving by his firſt Marriage with *Anſgarde*, 1. *Lewis* King of *France*, who died Childleſs in 882. 2. *Carloman*, who died in 884, both of whom were buried at St. *Dennis*, and by his ſecond Wife *Adelaida*, 3. *Charles*, call'd the *Simple*, who, after the Death of his Brothers, ſucceeded to the Kingdoms of *France* and *Burgundy*. Lewis *the* Stammerer *Emperor.*

THE Emperor *Charles* the third, call'd the *Groſs*, youngeſt Son to *Lewis* the *Germanick*, died in the Year 888, without lawful Iſſue. Charles *the* Groſs, *Emperor.*

ARNOLD, the Emperor, natural Son to *Carloman* King of *Bavaria*, died in the Year 899, leaving by his Marriage with *Luitgarde*. 1. *Lewis*; and, by another Wife, 2. a natural Son, call'd *Suintebold*, King of *Lorrain*.

THE Emperor *Lewis* the Fourth, Son of *Arnold*, died without Male Iſſue, 912. Arnold *Emperor.*

CHARLES the *Simple*, King of *France*, poſthumous Son to *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, born in the Year 879, died in 929, without being able to attain the Empire. He left by his ſecond Marriage with *Odgina* of *England*, *Lewis* the Fourth, call'd the *Outlandiſh*, King of *France* and *Burgundy*, Father to *Lothaire*, King of *France*, and *Charles*, Duke of *Lorrain*. But as the Lewis IV. *Emperor.*

the Succeſſion of theſe Princes has no longer any Relation to our Subject, we ſhall return to the Hiſtory of the Empire, which paſs'd over to the *Germans*, and continues to this Day amongſt the Princes of that Nation.

THE

THE HISTORY OF THE EMPIRE.

BOOK II.

Emperors of different Houſes, who poſſeſs'd the Imperial Throne by Election, till the Advancement of the *Auſtrian* Family.

CHAP. I.

CONRAD *the Firſt.*

THE Emperors, who were Succeſſors to *Charlemagne*, had without Diſpute poſſeſſed the Empire by hereditary Right from Father to Son; but theſe prudent Princes (as has been before obſerv'd) us'd nevertheleſs generally to have their laſt Wills confirm'd, with relation to their Succeſſors, by the States of the Empire. This Conſent, which in all Appearance ſeem'd like an Election, was, as it were, the Riſe of the following Elections, and, CONRAD.

CONRAD. and, if I may uſe that Expreſſion, the Title whereby the *German* Princes have pretended to a Right of chuſing their own Emperors.

THE Empire being poſſeſs'd by the *French*, ſomething more than a hundred Years, deſcended after *Lewis* the fourth's Death to the *Germans*, altho' the Imperial Crown belong'd to *Charles* the *Simple*, as being of the Blood of *Charlemagne*. In ſhort, the Right of Succeſſion to the Empire was inconteſtably devolv'd upon him; but this Prince, upon his Acceſſion to the Crown of *France*, found his Dominions ſo much reduc'd, the Dukes and Counts having uſurp'd moſt of his Provinces, that 'twas not poſſible for him to aſſert his Right to the Imperial Throne. Thus the Nobility of *Germany*, who were already accuſtomed to elect Emperors of their own Nation, or at leaſt of *German* Blood, aſſembling at *Worms*, would have choſen *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* Emperor; but that Prince refus'd this Dignity, on account of his great Age, preferring the Glory of doing a generous Action, (as uncommon as noble) to the Imperial Crown, which was to adviſe the Aſſembly to elect *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia* and *Heſſe*.

THIS Councel was given in Favour of his Enemy; ſo that, in this wiſe Prince, Reſentment gave place to Merit, and, on his Refuſal, *Conrad* was choſen, whom ſome pretend to have been Son-in-Law to *Lewis* IV, but without grounds; for *Lewis* dying very young, 'tis moſt probable that he had only promis'd and contracted his Daughter to him whilſt ſhe was a Child; it being Cuſtomary in *Germany* for Fathers to promiſe their Children, even from their Cradle, and educate them mutually as deſign'd for theſe Marriages: Nay, 'tis ſeldom found but theſe Engagements have been performed

formed, especially amongst Persons of Quality. CONRAD.

GERMANY had then several considerable Princes, amongst the rest, *Arnold* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Bouchard* Duke of *Suabia*, *Everard* the Emperor's Brother, *Conrad* Count of *Franconia*, *Gisilbert* Duke of *Lorrain* and *Saxony*, and Duke *Henry*, the real Duke of *Saxony*, the most powerful of any that could pretend to the Empire; however the Majority of Votes fell on *Conrad*.

THIS brave and prudent Emperor endeavoured immediately to establish his Authority; but was oppos'd by other Princes, especially by *Arnold* Duke of *Bavaria*, who invaded *Suabia* with a forimdable Army; whereof the Emperor no sooner received Advice, but he march'd against him with the greatest Force he could raise, fought *Arnold*, and routed him; in which Battle *Arnold* lost his Life by the Wounds he there received. *Conrad opposed.*

CONRAD, having reign'd about seven Years, and finding by a natural Decay he had not long to live, declared to the Princes and States of the Empire, and even to his Brother *Everard* Count of *Franconia*, that he knew no Prince of more Merit, or better able to support the Imperial Dignity, than *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, Son to *Otho*, and recommended him to them very particularly, as the Person he thought most worthy of succeeding him, tho' he had not been well affected to his Person. The Princes approving of this Choice, *Conrad*, before his Death sent the Crown, Scepter, Spear, Sword, and other Imperial Ornaments, to *Henry* by his Brother *Everard*; sacrificing thus, like a wise Prince, his private Resentment to the Good and Advantage of the Empire, and returning to the Son an equal Generosity, to that which he had seen in the Father. *Conrad's Generosity before his Death.* 918. 919.

CHAP. II.

HENRY *the First*.

The Election of Henry. 920.

THE Emperor *Conrad* being dead in 919, the Dukes of *Bavaria*, *Franconia*, and *Suabia*, with the other States of *Germany*, met the Year following at *Fritzlar*, where *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* coming alſo, was elected and confirm'd in the Imperial Dignity with univerſal Applauſe: He was ſirnam'd the *Birdcatcher*, becauſe he lov'd Fowling. The Pope being at that Time very much oppreſs'd by ſeveral Factions of divers petty Princes, who aſſum'd the Title of Emperor at *Rome*, offer'd to declare *Henry* Emperor of the *Romans*; but the new Emperor told him that he was contented with the Title receiv'd from the States of *Germany*. Perhaps his Reaſon might be to ſpare himſelf the Trouble of going into *Italy* to decide the Conteſt with the Competitors, or he thought it prudent to defer that Expedition till he had ſettled Affairs in *Germany*.

921. Henry's prudent Conduct, and Victory over the Hungarians.

AT the beginning of his Reign, he bent his Thoughts upon reconciling the Differences between the Princes and States of *Germany*, to eſtabliſh a perfect Union amongſt them all, as being the only Foundation of their mutual Glory and Proſperity. Herein he ſucceeded ſo well, and gain'd their Friendſhip in ſuch a manner, that, by their Aſſiſtance, he obtain'd a ſignal Victory over the *Hungarians*, who, according to Cuſtom, had made an Incurſion into *Germany*,

many with a powerful Army, whence they were driven with the loſs of 80,000 Men left upon the Field of Battle near the City of *Mersbourg*, after which he defeated the *Vandals* and *Abotrites*, who had alſo rebell'd.

His Advantages over Charles *the* Simple, *who diſputed the Empire with him.*

THE ſame Succeſs attended him againſt all the Enemies of the Empire, amongſt the reſt he gain'd ſuch an Advantage over King *Charles* the *Simple*, that he drove him back into *France* from the Banks of the *Rhine*, whither he had march'd to ravage *Lorrain*, and the Cities of *Spires*, *Worms*, and *Mentz*.

THESE two Princes met afterwards at *Bonn*, where they concluded a Peace, after having twice conferr'd together thereon, which was call'd *Pactum Bonnenſe*, or the Treaty of *Bonn*, an *Epocha* famous in Hiſtory: it was ſign'd in the Year 921. This was all the Effort that Prince or his Succeſſors made to reclaim the Empire, the Juncture of Affairs not permitting them to do any more.

Henry's Order for the Subſiſtance of his Troops. 922.

THIS done, *Henry*, to clear the Empire of *Banditti*, and Highwaymen, publiſh'd a general Pardon in their Favour, on Condition of their enliſting themſelves in his Service, whereby he rais'd a Regiment of them, which was ſent thither. For the Security of the Cities, he order'd that Garriſons ſhould be plac'd therein, which ſhould conſiſt of the ninth Part of the Peaſants of every Town and Village, and that the other eight Parts ſhould remain in the Country to till the Ground, on Condition of contributing to the Subſiſtance of the ninth Part, and bringing yearly both in Time of War and Peace the one third of their Corn to the Magazins in the Towns, to the end that neither Soldiers nor Proviſions ſhould be at any Time wanting.

HENRY I. 934. So great was his Zeal for the Propagation of the Faith, that he perſuaded the King of the *Abotrites* to turn *Chriſtian*; and, having ſubdued the *Vandals*, inſtituted the firſt Biſhop in *Holſtein*, to teach there the true Religion. In the City of *Brandenbourg* he appointed a Marquis to defend the Frontiers of the Empire againſt the *Abotrites*, as he did likewiſe in *Miſnia* and *Luſatia*, to oppoſe the *Bohemians*; hereby imitating *Charlemagne*, who had alſo done the ſame in *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*, againſt the *Sarmatians*, *Poles* and *Hungarians*. At laſt having ſecured the Peace of *Germany*, he order'd the Cities to be wall'd in, and fortify'd with Baſtions and Ditches, both for the Defence of the Towns, and Commerce: And to the end that the Nobility might be inur'd to the Exerciſe of Arms in Time of Peace, he inſtituted Tournaments, where every one glory'd in ſhewing his Addreſs. But none were admitted hereat, who did not profeſs the true Religion, were perjur'd, Traitors, or Rebels to their Prince, had violated any Man's Wife or Daughter, or committed any Sacrilege or Murther.

Fortifies the Cities, and exerciſes the Nobility. 938.

Henry gets his Son nominated to the Empire, his Death, and Praiſe. 936.

AFTER this, *Henry* falling ſick, and judging by his Condition that he had not long to live, made ſo good uſe of that ſmall ſpace, that he prevail'd on the Princes of the Empire, in a general Diet, to conſent to the Nomination of his Son *Otho* to the Succeſſion of the Empire. After which he died in the Year 936, at the Age of ſixty, having reign'd ſeventeen Years; leaving this Character behind him, *That the moſt conſummate Maſter in the Art of Government, and the greateſt King in* Europe *was dead.* In Effect, none ſurpaſs'd him in Virtue, or good Qualities both of Body and Mind; and he had this Satisfaction, that he left his Son, who

who was at Age, a more powerful and better eſtabliſh'd Empire than had been poſſeſs'd by his Predeceſſors.

CHAP. III.

OTHO *the Firſt, call'd the* Great.

THE Kings of *France*, Deſcendants of *Charlemagne*, had always with Juſtice claimed the Empire as their Due, and hereditary in their Houſe; but their Affairs declining, or, to ſpeak the Truth, their want of Merit having depriv'd them thereof, ſeveral Princes and great Men, who were ſubject thereunto, had endeavour'd to take Advantage of their Supineneſs, and to ſave from this Wreck the beſt Remains they could. OTHO I. 936.

WITH this View, not only the Kings of *Italy*, whoſe Seat was at *Pavia*, had attempted to ſet the Imperial Crown on their Heads, but even they who were moſt powerful at *Rome*, had endeavour'd to exclude them, either to aſſume it themſelves, or to make it devolve upon others, and all theſe had ſupplanted each other as much as poſſible. In ſhort, after the Death of *Lewis* IV, *Arnold*'s Son, *Italy* had been but one continued Scene of Wars, Troubles, and Diviſions, thro' the great number of Competitors. *Lambert*, Son to *Guy* Duke of *Spoleto*, being ſtronger than his Rival *Beranger*, entred *Rome*, and was crown'd by Pope *Stephen* the VIIth, Succeſſor to *Formoſus*. *Emperors of* Italy.

Otho I.

AFTER his Death, *Beranger* was declared Emperor, and maintain'd himſelf ſome Time in that Dignity; but was at length driven thence by *Lewis* King of *Provence*, who procur'd the Imperial Crown for himſelf; but being betray'd by the Marquis of *Tuſcany*, who before had even help'd to raiſe him, he was ſurpriz'd at *Verona* by *Beranger*, who was ſecretly recall'd by the Marquis, and had his Eyes put out. *Beranger* being re-inſtated in the Throne, and crown'd by Pope *John* X, reigned peaceably ſeventeen or eighteen Years, but being aſſaſſinated by ſome Mutineers at *Verona*, they call'd in *Raoul* King of *Burgundy*, and crown'd him Emperor.

THE ſame Factions being incens'd at *Raoul*'s retiring into his Kingdom, ſet up *Hugh* Count of *Provence*, crown'd him, and he reign'd near twenty Years; but being alſo dethron'd in the end, the *Romans* created themſeves Conſuls and Tribunes of the People, to the Prejudice of *Lothaire*, *Hugh*'s Son, who had been crown'd by his Father fifteen Years before, but had a meer Crown without Authority.

THIS Conſular Government not pleaſing the *Italians*, they call'd in *Beranger* nam'd the young, Son to the Marquis of *Ivry*, and *Gilletta* Daughter to *Beranger*, heretofore Emperor, proclaiming him and his Son *Albert* Kings at *Verona*. On his Advancement to the Throne, he deſign'd to have married his Son to Queen *Adelaida*, or *Alix*, Widow to *Lothaire*, crowned King of *Italy*, and Daughter to *Raoul* King of *Burgundy*, ſhe being Miſtreſs of *Pavia*; but ſhe rejected this Alliance with Scorn, and *Beranger* reſolving to force her to it, the Cries of this Princeſs drew *Otho* into *Italy*; but before we

enter

enter into that Part of the Hiſtory, 'tis proper to ſhew how *Otho* was rais'd to the Empire. OTHO I.

BY Inheritance from his Father he had the Duchy of *Saxony*, *Weſtphalia*, *Angria*, *Thuringia*, *Heſſe*, *Wetteravia*, and the Countries ſituated on the *Weſer* adjacent to *Minden*, and on the *Elbe* towards the Confines of *Lunenbourg*, and the Cities of *Wirtemberg*, *Miſnia*, and *Luſatia*, the Eaſtern Country towards the *Pleſſe* and the *Eſter*, the Country of *Northeim*, the Duchy of *Brunſwick*, and all the Country about the City of *Magdebourg*. His Power, great Qualities, join'd to his Father's appointing him Succeſſor, oblig'd the Princes of *Germany* to elect him Emperor, finding themſelves conſtrain'd to it, not being able any longer to bear the Pretenſions of the *French* and *Italians*. I ſay, they choſe him Emperor, and herein I agree with all the Lawyers, and moſt Part of the Hiſtorians, altho' ſome have only given him the Title of King of *Germany*, no more than to ſome of his Succeſſors, whom I ſhall alſo call Emperors, becauſe being all of them lawfully elected by the Princes of *Germany*, the proper Electors of *German* Emperors, their Right was eſtabliſh'd by their Predeceſſors, and confirm'd by their Succeſſors, who have maintain'd it with Honour.

HIS Election was made at *Aix la Chapelle*, with the general Conſent of all the Princes preſent, in which Number were the Archbiſhops of *Mentz*, *Magdebourg*, *Treves*, and *Beſancon*; the Biſhops of *Ratisbon*, *Friſingen*, *Augsbourg*, *Conſtance*, *Eichſtet*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Brixen*, and *Hildeſheim*, which laſt was Chancellor of the Empire; the Abbots of *Fulda*, *Hirchfelt*, and *Erbach*, the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria*, *Moravia* and *Lorrain*; who placing him upon the Throne prepar'd for him Otho's Election.

in

OTHO I. in the Palace, took an Oath of Allegiance, and ſwore to pay him Homage, promiſing to aſſiſt him againſt all his Enemies; after which they attended him to the great Church.

Ceremonies at his Coronation.

HILDEBERT, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and the Dioceſan Biſhops, cloathed in their Pontifical Habits, aſſiſted by other Biſhops, and all the Clergy, came to meet him at the Church Door, where, having proclaim'd him with the uſual Ceremonies, the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* conducted him on his Right to a Place rais'd for that purpoſe upon Steps, whence he might be ſeen by all the People, to whom this Prelate ſpoke in this Manner: *I here preſent you* Otho, *choſen by* GOD, *appointed Emperor by* Henry *his Father, and juſtly Elected to that Dignity by all the Princes; if you approve of this Election, give a Sign of it, by lifting up your Hands.*

ACCORDINGLY the People immediately did ſo, and wiſh'd him all manner of Proſperity, with a thouſand Acclamations; then the Clergy conducting him to the high Altar, whereon the Sword, the Belt, the Mantle, the Hand of Juſtice, the Scepter, the Crown, and all the Imperial Ornaments were plac'd, the Archbiſhop girt the Sword by his Side, ſaying, *Receive this Sword, and uſe it to drive away the Enemies of* JESUS CHRIST, *and employ the Authority and Power of the Empire, conferr'd on you by* GOD, *to ſecure the Peace of the Church.* This Prelate alſo put on the Mantle, the Sleeves whereof hung down to the Ground, ſaying, *Remember with what Reſolution and Fidelity you are oblig'd to maintain Peace to the End of your Life;* And laſtly, giving him the Scepter, and the Hand of Juſtice, he added, *Theſe Marks of Power are yours, and engage you to keep your Subjects in their Duty; to repreſs and puniſh Vice*

Vice and Diſorders ſeverely, but yet with Humanity; to become the Protector of the Church, its Miniſters, Widows, and Orphans; and to uſe all with the Tenderneſs and Goodneſs of a Father, that you may (in Eternity) receive the Reward you will deſerve by ſo prudent and Chriſtian a Conduct.

THE Archbiſhop of *Mentz* having finiſh'd theſe Words, the Biſhops anointed the Emperor's Head with conſecrated Oyl, which done, the former crown'd him. Theſe Ceremonies being over, the Emperor aſcended a Throne, where he remain'd whilſt they were ſinging Pſalms and other Prayers, after which Office they reconducted him to the Palace, where the Emperor din'd in publick, the Biſhops ſitting at his Table, the Dukes, and other great Lords, ſerving him. His Reign was pretty peaceable, and, from the very beginning, he ſhew'd a great deal of Integrity and Juſtice, not being able to bear any unworthy Action or Barbarity. 937. On receiving News that *Wenceſlaus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, (who was inveſted with that Dignity by the Emperor *Henry* his Father) had been kill'd by his own Brother *Boleſlaus*, and diſpoſſeſs'd of that Duchy by Force, *Otho* was oblig'd by this Inhumanity to ſend thither a conſiderable Army, commanded by *Eſico* Count of *Aſcania*, who, having met the Troops of 938. *Boleſlaus* in the Field, beat them, and thought to have ended the War by this Victory. But *Boleſlaus* rallying and re-inforcing his Men in a few Days, attack'd the Imperial Army by Surprize, and routed it, which very much chagrin'd *Otho*. This however did not entirely daunt him; on the contrary, he immediately re-inforc'd his Army, and continued this War for fourteen Years with ſo much Courage and Conſtancy, that he at laſt gain'd a compleat Victory over *Bo-*

OTHO I. *Boleſlaus*, oblig'd him to ſubmit, and acknowledge the Emperor for his Sovereign.

DURING this Time, *Otho* had likewiſe another conſiderable War to maintain, ſome having perſuaded his Brother *Henry*, that, being born after their Father's Advancement to the Empire, he had more Right to it than *Otho*, who was born before, and ought to aſſert his Pretenſions by Force of Arms. The Chief of thoſe who put this Thought into his Head, were *Everard* Brother to the deceas'd Emperor *Conrad*, and *Sigebert* Duke of *Auſtraſia*, both of whom pretended as much to the Empire as young *Henry*. All three then prepar'd to wage War with *Otho*, and levy'd Men on all ſides, wherewith they form'd a conſiderable Army; but it was entirely diſpers'd near the *Rhine* 940. by the Emperor's Forces, Duke *Everard* the General being kill'd, and *Sigebert* drown'd as he was making his Eſcape. After this fortunate Succeſs, nothing remain'd for *Otho*, but to reduce his Brother to Reaſon, who had retir'd to *Mersbourg* to defend himſelf; whereupon he march'd directly to beſiege that Place, and brought *Henry* to ſurrender upon Articles, wherein 'twas agreed that he ſhould have Liberty to go where he would. Accordingly, after the taking of the Town, he took Sanctuary with *Lewis* King of *France*, who had aſſiſted him, and made War againſt the Emperor with that Intent; but *Otho*, ſome Time after making Peace with the King of *France*, was reconcil'd to his Brother *Henry*, and gave him the Dukedom of *Bavaria*, where he continued 945. afterwards faithful and obedient.

IN the midſt of all this good Succeſs, and all theſe Lawrels, he was oblig'd to march into *Italy*, at the preſſing Intreaties of Queen *Alix*, Widow

Widow to *Lothaire* King of *Italy*, who was perſecuted and depriv'd of her Dominions by *Beranger* the young; and as *Otho* was then a Widower, having loſt *Ethica*, a Princeſs of *England*, by whom he had one Son, nam'd *Luitolf*; he look'd on her as already his Wife; beſides which, her Prayers were ſtrongly ſeconded by Pope *Agapetus*, who was afraid of being oppreſſed by the ſame *Beranger*. The Emperor undertook this Expedition very fortunately with a powerful Army, takes *Alix* under his Protection, marries her, and makes himſelf Maſter of *Pavia*, which *Beranger* had reduc'd, and where he had kept *Alix* Priſoner. Then purſuing *Beranger*, he forc'd him to yield himſelf; but *Otho* was ſo generous, that he reſtor'd him Part of his Territories, and gave the Marquiſate of *Friuli*, with *Verona*, and ſome other Places in *Bavaria*, to his Brothers; reſerving for himſelf only the Glory of having conquer'd; and truſting to *Beranger's* Promiſe of continuing his Friend, which he did not keep. OTHO I. 950. 951. 958.

LUITOLF, the Emperor's Son, and deſign'd his Succeſſor, being jealous, and incens'd at his Father's ſecond Marriage with *Alix*, revolts againſt him, enters into a Confederacy with *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, the Emperor's Son-in-Law, and ſeveral other *German* Lords, takes ſeveral Towns, and, amongſt the reſt, *Mentz*, where he fortifies himſelf.

THE Emperor being appriz'd hereof, march'd immediately that Way with his Army, laid ſiege to the City, and hearing that *Luitolf* was fled to *Ratisbon*, purſu'd him thither, and beſieg'd it ſo cloſe, that *Luitolf*, finding himſelf preſs'd upon, ſent ſome Prelates to ask Pardon for his Diſobedience, which they could not obtain; but whilſt they were parlying, he made his

OTHO I. 961. his Escape and fled. In short, to extricate himself from the Difficulties wherein he was entangled, he resolv'd to go and meet his Father a hunting; and having fortunately found an Opportunity, fell at his Feet with his Head bare, without being able to speak for Tears and Groans. Then recovering himself a little, he rose and said, sighing: *Have pity on your Child, who, like the prodigal Son, comes to ask you Pardon for his Fault; if you will grant Life to him who has deserved Death a thousand Times, he will be loyal and obedient, and have Time to repent of his Crime.* Then throwing himself immediately upon the Ground, he lay there with the utmost Submission, expecting the Sentence of Life or Death. But the Father, extraordinarily surpriz'd at such a Change, and struck with Compassion, rais'd his Son with Tears in his Eyes, and forgave him, granting also Pardon to those who had follow'd him. *Luitolf* died soon after in *Italy*, as well as his Brother-in-Law *Conrad*, having both serv'd the Emperor faithfully ever after their Reconciliation.

962. OTHO, who was not sirnamed the Great, without reason, having regulated all Things in *Germany*, and reduc'd all that oppos'd his Arms, undertook a second Expedition into *Italy*, at the Sollicitation of Pope *John* XII, to appease the Factions that reign'd there, and quell *Beranger*, who had again revolted; going first to *Rome*, where he was crown'd, and acknowledg'd Emperor of the *Romans* by the Pope, with the Title of *Augustus*. After this the Senate and People took the Oath of Allegiance, with a Promise to continue stedfast in rendring him the same Obdience as is due from faithful Subjects to their Sovereign. He there made immense Presents to every one in Jewels, Gold, and Silver, besides

beſides which, he reſtor'd to the *Roman* Church all that belong'd to her, I mean what *Pepin* and *Charlemagne* had formerly given, and the petty Tyrants of *Italy* had taken from her by force. Hereupon *Otho* caus'd Letters Patent to be drawn up, which were ſign'd by himſelf, the Biſhops, and ſeveral other great Lords, importing, amongſt other Conditions, that, according to the Agreement made heretofore with Pope *Eugene*, and his Succeſſors, the *Roman* Clergy and Nobility ſhould oblige themſelves by Oath, that the Election of the Pope ſhould not be canonical, nor the Perſon choſen conſecrated, before he had, in the Preſence of the Ambaſſadors of the Emperor, or the King his Son, and all the People, made the ſame Promiſe as did *Leo* III. voluntarily on the like Occaſion. OTHO I. 963.

As *Beranger* and his Wife were retired to Mount *Leon*, *Otho*, on leaving *Rome*, march'd thither, ſecur'd him and his Spouſe, and caus'd them a little after to be try'd, when they were condemn'd to perpetual Impriſonment at *Bamberg*, where they ended their Days. No ſooner had *Otho* quitted *Rome* with his Army, but *Albert*, *Beranger*'s Son, re-enter'd ſecretly, at the Sollicitation of the ſame Pope; of which *Otho* being inform'd, return'd, which ſo terrify'd *Albert* and the Pontif, that they both fled. Hereupon the Emperor firſt obliged the Senate and People to renew and confirm by Oath the Promiſe already made, of not pretending for the future any Right to the Election of a Pope, nor chuſing any one without the Emperor's Conſent. Then, taking advantage of this Pope's ill Conduct, and being reſolv'd to be reveng'd of him, he ſummon'd a Council at *Rome* to bring him to Tryal.

JOHN

Otho I.

JOHN XII had, at the Age of eighteen, advanced himſelf to the Papacy, by Factions, and the Money of *Alberic* his Father, then very powerful at *Rome*, and had liv'd very ſcandalouſly during his whole Pontificate. Accordingly the Council was no ſooner met, but the *Italian* Archbiſhops and Biſhops, and even all the People, made, for three Days, great Complaints to the Emperor againſt him. *Otho*, aſſiſting in Perſon at this Council, ſummon'd *John* to appear, and anſwer the Accuſations brought againſt him; but he not obeying, was declar'd unworthy of the Pontificate, and depos'd. Divers Authors have maintain'd, that this Council was neither right nor lawful, and that the depoſing *John* was neither canonical nor valid; however, they put *Leo* VIII in his Place, who was elected by the joint Suffrages of all the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and other Prelates in the Aſſembly, the Number whereof was very great, and after his Exaltation he preſided at the ſame Council.

'TWAS at this Time that *Leo*, with the Conſent of the Clergy and People, made the famous Decree, acknowledging *Otho* for Emperor of the *Romans*, Sovereign, and King of *Italy*, with all the ſame Rights, both for himſelf and Succeſſors, as Pope *Adrian* I. had granted *Charlemagne*; among the reſt, the Right of Inveſtiture of Biſhopricks, and particularly that of electing and confirming Popes, which all the Clergy and People ratify'd by Oath. Hence one may ſay, that *Otho* was really Emperor of the *Romans*, becauſe the ſame Reaſons that plead for *Charlemagne*, may be urg'd for *Otho* the Great.

THE *Roman* People had groan'd ever ſince the Death of *Lewis* IV, *Charlemagne*'s laſt Succeſſor,

ceſſor, (that is to ſay, for above ſixty Years) under the Oppreſſion of theſe petty Kings and Emperors already mentioned, *Rome* was torn in pieces by the moſt powerful Factions, and the Kings of *France*, having long been involv'd in Troubles themſelves, gave no Ear to the Complaints of the *Romans*, wherefore they had a Right to put themſelves, as they did, under the Dominion of *Otho*. Otho I.

THE Emperor having finiſh'd his Affairs at *Rome*, ſet out for *Spoleto* and *Camerino*, to appeaſe ſome Diſorders there; after which he erected them both into Principalities; during this Expedition ſeveral *Roman* Prelates and Nobles, at the Inſtigation of *Albert*, *Beranger*'s Son, favour'd Pope *John*'s Return to *Rome*, where he immediately depos'd *Leo*, and condemn'd the Council that had elected him, as unlawful. But ſome Days after, *John*, being found out of *Rome* in Bed with a Courtezan, was inhumanly murther'd by a Rival. Hereupon the Prelates and Nobles, perſiſting in their Reſolution of not acknowledging *Leo* for Pope, of their own particular Authority, contrary to their Oath, proceeded to the Election of a Deacon, *Bennet* V by Name, whom they ſet in St. *Peter*'s Chair.

THE Emperor having Advice hereof, returned to *Rome*, beſieg'd it, and compell'd them by Famine to Terms, pardoning the Diſloyalty of the Inhabitants, and ſummon'd a Council, to call *Bennet* to an Account for this Outrage. Accordingly he appear'd in the Pontifical Habit before Pope *Leo*, the Emperor, and all the Council, conſiſting of the Archbiſhops and Biſhops of *Italy*, *Lorrain*, and *Saxony*. Hereupon Cardinal *Benedict* thus addreſs'd him: "By 965.
"what Authority have you aſſum'd that Habit

Otho I. " during the Life of Pope *Leo*, whom you your " ſelf, jointly with us, rais'd to the firſt Apo- " ſtolical Dignity, after depoſing *John* XII? " Can you deny, in the Emperor's Preſence, " that you, as well as the other *Romans*, pro- " mis'd upon Oath, that you would never elect " a Pope, without the Conſent of the Emperor, " and King *Otho* his Son?" *Bennet*, pauſing on theſe Words, ſaid, *If I have err'd, have Mercy on me.* Then the Emperor, mov'd with Compaſſion, deſir'd the Aſſembly to uſe no Violence, begging that Humanity might ſpeak in his Favour, and procure his Pardon. *Bennet*, on hearing theſe Words, falling proſtrate at *Leo*'s, and the Emperor's Feet, own'd that he was a Criminal, and Uſurper of the holy See; with which Submiſſion the Pope being touch'd, anſwer'd: *In Conſideration of our Lord* Otho *the Emperor, by whoſe Aſſiſtance we have been eſtabliſhed in St.* Peter's *Chair, we permit you to retain the Deacon's Order, and live at* Hamburgh.

This done, *Otho* oblig'd the *Romans* to promiſe upon Oath, That, for the future, they would elect none but a Prince of the *German* Nation Emperor; and having thus ſettled the Affairs of *Italy*, return'd towards *Germany*, whither *Bennet* went alſo to his Place of Baniſhment, where he died, being acknowledged by the Eccleſiaſtical Writers for lawful Pope.

Leo VIII dying in the Year 965, the Emperor caus'd *John* XIII to be choſen in his ſtead; but the *Romans* immediately impriſoned him, whereof *Otho* having Advice, return'd
966. to *Rome*, *A. D.* 966. deliver'd him from Confinement, and re-eſtabliſh'd him in his See.
967. The Year following, *Otho* ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Conſtantinople* to the Emperor *Nicephorus*,

phorus, to demand his Daughter-in-Law *Theophania*, or, as others ſay, *Anne*, in Marriage for his Son *Otho*. *Nicephorus* granted their Requeſt, and appointed the Place to receive the Princeſs; accordingly, the Imperialiſts going thither with a great Retinue, were either maſſacred, or carried Priſoners to *Conſtantinople*, few of them eſcaping to give an Account of this horrid Treachery. *Otho*, extraordinarily ſurpriz'd and incens'd thereat, order'd the Counts *Gonther* and *Sigefrid*, two Brothers, to march into *Calabria*, with his beſt Troops, where they routed the *Greeks*, and ſent back all the Priſoners, firſt cutting off their Noſes; this done, they laid *Calabria* and *Apulia* waſte, and then return'd victorious to the Emperor. However, neither Deceit nor Violence can hinder the Decrees of Providence. OTHO I. 968.

NICEPHORUS being kill'd by the *Greeks*, his Succeſſor *John Zemiſces* immediately return'd all the *German* Priſoners; ſending alſo *Theophania* with a magnificent Train, and very rich Preſents, to conſummate her Marriage with young *Otho*, who waited her coming in *Italy*, where the Nuptials were celebrated with abundance of Joy, in the Year 972. 972

HIS Son being married, and capable of governing the Empire, *Otho* order'd a general Thankſgiving for the happy State of his domeſtick and publick Affairs; which done, he reſolv'd to apply himſelf wholly to the Care of finiſhing his Race glorioufly. His Piety 973.
cannot be too much commended; whenever he was ſucceſsful, as he generally was in all his Undertakings, he us'd to praiſe and thank GOD, giving him the Glory in this Verſe of *David*: *Non nobis, Domine, non nobis; ſed nomini tuo da Gloriam.* "Not unto us, O LORD, not unto "us;

" us; but to thy own Name give the Glo-
" ry.

HIS Zeal appeared yet more, in founding the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdebourg*, the Biſhopricks of *Mersbourg*, *Zell*, *Havelberg*, and *Miſnia*, and in making the Biſhops equal to ſecular Princes, by the great Privileges he conferred on them. He died of an Apoplexy at *Magdebourg* in *Saxony* in the Year 974, after reigning thirty Years; and on his Death the Empreſs *Alix* his Wife devoted her ſelf entirely to GOD, and turn'd Nun.

974.

CHAP. IV.

OTHO *the Second.*

OTHO II.

OTHO II, ſirnam'd the *Bloody*, being elected, and crowned King during the Life of his Father, was his Succeſſor in the Empire, no Body pretending to diſpute it with him, but his Couſin-German, *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, who, being ſupported by ſome Biſhops of his Party, got himſelf proclaim'd Emperor at *Ratiſbon*; but *Otho* ſoon reduc'd him to Reaſon, not only forcing him to quit this Title, but even driving him out of his Dukedom, which he gave to *Otho* Duke of *Suabia*. From thence he march'd with his Army towards the *Elbe*, to oppoſe *Harold* King of *Denmark*, who had eſpous'd *Henry*'s Intereſt, and was advancing with a great Number of Troops. Him he harraſs'd ſo much, and preſs'd upon ſo cloſe, that he forc'd him to ſue for Peace, offer great Preſents,

ſents, agree to pay an annual Tribute, and deliver up his Son as an Hoſtage for the Aſſurance of his Fidelity. Thence he went to *Bohemia*, the King whereof had been one of *Henry*'s Confederates, and, having ravag'd the Country, turn'd back to make head againſt *Henry* and the Duke of *Carinthia*, who, with the Biſhop of *Freſingen*, had rais'd Forces againſt him; theſe he defeated, taking them Priſoners, and retaking the City of *Paſſau*, whilſt the King of *Bohemia* made Peace with him. OTHO II. 975.

DURING theſe Tranſactions, a great Difference happen'd with the *French* in *Lorrain*, to appeaſe which he reſolv'd to give that Duchy in Fief to *Charles*, Brother to *Lothaire*, King of *France*. *Lothaire*, not being ſatisfy'd herewith, and having beſides a Claim to divers Territories in this Dukedom, in which he pretended the Emperor had not done him Juſtice, enter'd on a ſudden with an Army, march'd ſtrait to *Aix la Chapelle*, and had almoſt ſurpriz'd it. *Otho* narrowly eſcaping this Inſult, bent all his Thoughts upon revenging it; whereupon, immediately getting together all his Forces, he made an Incurſion into *France* at the Head of ſixty thouſand Men, and laying all *Champagne* and the Iſle of *France* waſte, forc'd the *French* to ſue for Peace, which he granted; but his Troops, returning the ſame Way they came, ſuffer'd great Hardſhips, having before ruin'd all the Country in their March. 976.

AFTER this having ſettled the Affairs of *Germany*, he was oblig'd to turn his Arms towards *Italy*, to recover *Calabria*, and *Apulia*, whereof the *Greeks*, by the Aſſiſtance of the *Saracens*, had made themſelves Maſters, in ſpite of his Pretenſion to thoſe two Provinces, in 977.

OTHO II. Right of his Wife *Theophania*, to whom they were given for a Portion.

978. THE Emperor being arriv'd in *Calabria*, hazarded the Battle without Heſitation, and at firſt put them into Diſorder; but they taking Courage again, the *Romans* and *Beneventines* giving Way, he was entirely defeated. And finding himſelf without Hopes, he fled to the Sea ſide, where meeting with a Bark, he took Refuge there, but aferwards was taken by Pyrates, who carried him into *Sicily*, and not knowing him, becauſe he ſpoke good *Greek*, gave him Liberty, on Condition of his paying a good Ranſom.

ON getting back to his Men, he re-inforc'd his Troops with what Recruits he could get; and renewing the War, utterly extirpated the
980. whole Race of *Saracens* in *Italy*; this done, he chaſtis'd the *Beneventines* who fled and deſerted, and on coming to *Rome*, reſolv'd to do the ſame to the *Romans*, who were alſo Fugitives. To effect this, he invited all their Chiefs to a
981. Feaſt, under Colour of Friendſhip, and chuſing out the Authors of this ſhameful Flight and Deſertion, in the midſt of their Mirth caus'd all their Throats to be cut, that he might (as he ſaid) root out all the Seeds of the Revolt.

THIS Puniſhment might perhaps in the main be juſt; but the Manner was barbarous and unworthy of a Chriſtian Prince, and of a dangerous Conſequence in Politicks: It was this Action chiefly which made him ſirnamed the
982. *Bloody*, as his great Victories over the *Saracens* acquired him the Title of Terrour to the *Saracens*. On hearing that the *Sclavonians*, taking Advantage of his Abſence, had made an Incurſion into *Saxony*, where they had deſtroy'd and ravaged the Biſhopricks of *Brandenbourg*, *Havelberg*,

berg, and *Mersbourg*, he ſent Orders to the *Saxons* and *Thuringians* to make head againſt them; which they obey'd, and charg'd their Enemies with ſo much Bravery and Succeſs, that they kill'd above 37,000 of them in ſeveral Engagements. Soon after this, he died at *Rome*, in the Year 987, of a Looſneſs, caus'd by a Wound receiv'd of a poyſon'd *Javalin*, in the Battle with the *Greeks*, being beſides overwhelm'd with a ſecret Grief, on account of his Wife *Theophania*'s having expreſs'd her Joy at the Victory of the *Greeks*, and the Defeat of the *Italians*. OTHO II. 983.

CHAP. V.

OTHO *the Third.*

OTHO III ſucceeded his Father *Otho* II, being at moſt but eleven or twelve Years old, and was at firſt ſirnamed the *Infant*, on account of his Childhood, and laſtly, the *Wonder of the World*. Great were the Diſputes amongſt the *German* Princes, that came to *Rome* with him, and the *Italians*, about his Election; ſome even amongſt the *Germans* declared in Favour of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, Nephew to *Otho* the firſt, who was alſo come to *Rome*, and pretended to the Empire, for which Reaſon he ſeiz'd on the Perſon of his Nephew *Otho* III immediately after the Emperor's Death, to prevent his being elected. The *Italians*, whoſe Thoughts were bent upon delivering themſelves from the *German* Yoke, reſolv'd to have an Emperor OTHO III. 983.

Otho III. peror of their own Nation, and propos'd a *Roman* Nobleman nam'd *Creſcentius*, who (according to ſome Authors) was then Conſul and Governor of *Rome*. But moſt of the *German* Princes eſpous'd *Otho*'s Cauſe, who, tho' very young, gave already great Hopes that he would one Day make an excellent Prince; hereupon they delivered him out of *Henry*'s Hands, carried him into *Germany*, and being arriv'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, proclaim'd and crown'd him Emperor with the uſual Solemnity.

He was without Diſpute acknowledg'd by all *Germany*, *Lombardy*, and the other Dominions of the Empire, except the City of *Rome*, which was deterr'd from ſubmitting to him by this *Creſcentius*, who intended to make himſelf Maſter thereof. In the firſt Years of his Reign, the *Sclavonians*, ſupported by the *Danes*, revolted againſt him, after the Example of the *Romans*, deſigning to take Advantage of his Youth; but as ſoon as he had attain'd his fourteenth Year, he began to act with ſo much Spirit and Vigour, that he reduced all the Rebels to Reaſon, with the Aſſiſtance of thoſe Princes, who remain'd ſtedfaſt to him; which Expeditions, and ſettling the Affairs of *Germany*, were his Employment for ten Years.

Whilst he was thus buſy'd in thoſe Parts, *Creſcentius* play'd his Cards ſo well at *Rome*, that he uſurp'd the Sovereign Power, inſomuch that he ſeiz'd and impriſon'd Pope *John* the XIVth, who was then in Poſſeſſion of the holy See, becauſe he eſpous'd *Otho*'s Intereſt. This Pope, dying in Confinement, was ſucceeded by *John* XV, a Prieſt of much Merit and Virtue, whoſe good Qualities rendering him odious to *Creſcentius*, he preſs'd upon him to ſuch a Degree, and put him in ſuch Terrour, that he thought

thought himſelf oblig'd to fly to *Tuſcany*, whence he ſent his Legates to the Emperor, to implore his Protection. OTHO III.

THIS coming to the Ears of the *Romans*, they being terrify'd at the Thoughts of *Otho*, and remembring what they had ſuffer'd under the *Otho's* I, and II, on account of their ill Treatment of former Popes, reſolved in this Danger to ſend the chief Magiſtrates of the City to the new Pontif with an earneſt Invitation, addreſſing him to return, promiſing and proteſting that they would pay him due Reſpect and Obedience: Upon theſe Aſſurances *John* return'd to *Rome*, where he was honourably receiv'd. Nevertheleſs, ſome Time after, *Otho* march'd into *Italy* at the Head of a conſiderable Army, and, drawing near *Rome*, the Pope and *Creſcentius*, after divers Negotiations, came out to meet him, attended by the Prelates, Cardinals, Nobility, and People, receiving him with a magnificent Retinue. *Otho* having ſettled all things there, march'd out with his Army towards *Capua* and *Benevento*, they having revolted, and declar'd War againſt each other. In the mean while Pope *John* dies, and *Otho*, returning to *Rome*, caus'd *Bruno*, his Relation of the Houſe of *Saxony*, to be choſen in his ſtead, who was nam'd *Gregory* V, and afterwards crown'd *Otho* with the ſame Solemnity and Pomp as had been us'd to his Father and Grandfather. Aſſoon as the Ceremony was over, the Emperor having no farther Buſineſs at *Rome*, prepared for his Return to *Germany*; and accordingly took his Rout by *Lombardy*, where, viſiting the principal Towns, and, ſtopping ſome Time at *Modena*, he gave an exemplary Proof of his Juſtice on the Perſon of the Empreſs his Conſort, call'd *Mary*, Daughter to the King of *Arragon*. This Princeſs

Otho III. 998. ceſs falling in Love with a young beautiful *Italian* Count, uſed all her Art to invite him to her lewd Embraces; but, beautiful as he was, his Chaſtity withſtood the Temptation. The Empreſs being enrag'd to ſee her ſelf ſo ſlighted, was reſolv'd on Revenge: To effect which, ſhe accuſes the Count before the Emperor, of an Attempt upon her Honour; and he too eaſily giving Credit to the Accuſation, condemn'd the ſuppos'd Criminal to die, who, purſuant to his Order, was accordingly beheaded.

The Count, before his Death, diſcovered the Truth to the Counteſs his Spouſe; and a few Days afterwards this Lady preſents her ſelf before the Emperor when adminiſtring Juſtice in his Tribunal, informing him of the real Matter of Fact, with her Husband's Innocence, and the deteſtable Impiety of the Princeſs; and, that ſhe might the better be believ'd, to give an undeniable Proof of what ſhe advanc'd, took a red-hot Iron Plate in her Hands without being in the leaſt hurt by it. The Emperor, ſtung to the Soul with what the Counteſs had ſaid, and ſurpriz'd at the miraculous Event, order'd the Empreſs to be burnt alive, to expiate by Fire the impious Flame of that diſloyal Princeſs; and, as an Atonement for his own raſh Sentence, ſettled a large Penſion on the Widow. This being executed, he purſued his Rout towards *Germany*; but could not long continue there, being inform'd that *Creſcentius*, taking Advantage of his Abſence, procur'd himſelf to be choſen Conſul of *Rome*, depos'd Pope *Gregory*, and elected another in his Place, under the Name of *John* XVI. Accordingly he march'd ſoon after into *Italy* with a powerful Army, beſieg'd *Rome*, took it, order'd the Anti-pope's Noſe to be cut off, his Eyes to be put out,

out, and afterwards to be thrown headlong from the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*. *Creſcentius* was likewiſe taken, and carried through the Town, by the Emperor's Order, upon a ſorry Horſe, with his Face to the Tail, and, after putting him, with twelve of his Accomplices, to the Rack, they were all hang'd upon the higheſt Tree that could be found; a Spectacle that ſerv'd for an Example to thoſe who had rais'd *Creſcentius* to a Dignity which was not his Right. OTHO III. 999.

THESE two Tyrants having been puniſh'd as they deſerv'd, *Gregory* was re-eſtabliſh'd in his See, and the Emperor, taking Advantage of theſe frequent Revolts and Seditions, made a Decree, importing, 1. That the *Romans* alone ſhould have the Right and Power of chuſing the *Roman* Emperors from amongſt the *German* Princes, excluſive of all other Nations. 2. That they ſhould never be impowered to proclaim any Prince Emperor, but the Perſon elected by theſe Princes to that Dignity. 3. That the Popes ſhould not intermeddle in the Election any farther than in the Time of *Charlemagne*, which was, to make a ſolemn Proclamation of the lawful Election of the Emperor, and perform the Ceremony of his Coronation when he ſhould come to *Rome*. Hence moſt Authors conclude, that the Pope, far from giving the Empire by this Declaration to the Perſon elected, only teſtifies that the Emperor has received the Empire and Government of *Chriſtendom* of thoſe who have the Power of Election; adding, that he does not make this Declaration as *Jure Divino*, but with Submiſſion to the Emperor's Pleaſure; and that the Imperial Power and Authority does not proceed from this Declaration, but only from the Votes and Choice of thoſe who have advanced him to that Dignity.

THIS

Otho III. THIS Decree, being conſented to and confirm'd by *Gregory*, was publiſh'd, that no Perſon might pretend Ignorance; and ſeveral Hiſtorians affirm, that the Pope and Emperor, to ſecure the Empire better to the *German* Nation, reduced the Electors afterwards to the Number of Seven; but whether that be true, or not, this at leaſt is certain, that when the Imperial Crown devolv'd from the *French* upon the *German* Princes, they had a Right from the firſt of electing the Emperors, and of chuſing one out of themſelves; and this is properly what *Otho* confirm'd, the Execution whereof he order'd ſhould be obſerv'd for the future.

AFTER the Death of *Gregory* V, and the Election of *Sylveſter* his Succeſſor, *Otho* return'd into *Germany*; but was not long gone before the Pope entreated his Return to *Rome*, on account of new Diſorders; and, to his Misfortune,
1000. he went thither but too ſoon; I ſay, to his Misfortune; for (beſides the *Romans* riſing againſt him in ſo tumultuous a Manner, that, not having Forces ſufficient to ſuppreſs the Rebellion, he was oblig'd to quit the City, and gather his Troops together, before he could put himſelf in a Capacity to chaſtiſe the guilty) he was poyſon'd ſoon after by a Preſent of a Pair of Gloves ſent by the Widow of *Creſcentius*. 'Tis pretended that he fell in Love with this Lady, on account of her great Beauty, before his laſt
1001. Expedition into *Germany*, and had received ſome Favours of her, on Promiſe of making her his Conſort; but not keeping his Word afterwards, ſhe was ſo enrag'd, that ſhe reſolv'd to make him this fatal Preſent, in Revenge for his Contempt of her Perſon, and the Indignity wherewith he had treated her Husband *Creſcentius*.

How-

OTHO III.

HOWEVER, the Empire ſuffer'd a great Loſs in the Perſon of *Otho*, who was a brave, reſolute, and juſt Prince, and having conferr'd great Gifts on the Church after the Example of his Anceſtors, gave no leſs Proofs of his Liberality, than his Juſtice. 'Tis even obſerv'd, that his Grandfather, Father, and himſelf, had given to the Church two thirds of their Eſtates in *Germany*. His Body was entomb'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, and his Intrails buried at *Augsbourg*. 1002.

This Emperor's Elogy.

CHAP. VI.

HENRY *the Second.*

HENRY II.

THE Princes being inform'd of *Otho's* Death, immediately prepar'd to chuſe a new Emperor; but were divided upon the Choice of three Princes who were Competitors, and equally deſerving of the Imperial Dignity, *viz. Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Herman* Duke of *Suabia* and *Alſatia*, and *Eckart* Marquis of *Saxony*, each of which aſpir'd to the Empire. However, *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, Grandſon to *Otho* II by his Daughter, being the moſt powerful, won the Throne by Force of Arms. He was after this confirm'd and crown'd at *Mentz* by the Archbiſhop *Villigiſes*, on the ſixth of *June*, 1002, by the Name of *Henry* II. This, according to ſome Authors, was the firſt Emperor elected by the ſolemn Votes of the Electors, who, as is pretended, were made by *Otho* III, and Pope *Gregory* V. He was called, the *Delight of the* Hun-

Election of Henry II, preferably to his Competitors.

HENRY II. Hungarians, *the Saint*, and *the Cripple*. He began his Reign by calling a Council of the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and other Prelates, at *Dortmond*, for the Regulation of the Morals, and Diſcipline of the Church, the Canons whereof were publiſh'd throughout the Empire; for which he alſo order'd particular Synods in divers Places. He likewiſe aſſiſted in Perſon at another Council at *Frankfort*; and, having ſuppreſs'd certain Inſurrections that diſturb'd the Peace of *Germany*, with much Courage and Prudence, he ſet out the ſame Year, 1005, for *Italy*, where he reduc'd *Ardwin* Marquis of *Tury*, who had rebell'd againſt him; which being done, he was crown'd at *Milan* by the Archbiſhop. Two Years after, by the Conſent of the Princes and States, he erected the County of *Bamberg* into a Biſhoprick, conferring great Privileges thereon, and making his Chancellor the firſt Biſhop thereof.

Councils and Synods for the Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline. 1003.

His Expedition into Italy. 1005.

1007. Bamberg *erected into a Biſhoprick*

1012. *His Marriage.* BEING preſs'd to marry by the Princes of the Empire, to pleaſe them he eſpous'd *Cunigonda*, Daughter to the *Count Palatine*, a very virtuous Princeſs; and at the ſame Time gave *Giſella*, his Siſter, or, as others ſay, Niece, to *Stephen* Duke of *Hungary*, who had demanded her in Marriage. But as ſhe would by no means conſent, before *Stephen*, who was a Pagan, had turned Chriſtian, *Henry* went expreſsly into *Hungary* to convert him. Herein he ſucceeded ſo well, that *Stephen* abjur'd his Errors, and was baptized; which done, he eſpous'd the Princeſs; and was afterwards ſo zealous for the Chriſtian Religion, that he was canoniz'd by the Church for a Saint; and the Emperor, in favour of this Marriage, made *Hungary* a Kingdom.

1013. Hungary *made a Kingdom.*

ARDWIN

ARDWIN revolting again, the Emperor was forc'd to undertake a ſecond Expedition into *Italy*, where he depriv'd him of his Territories; and marching in Triumph to *Rome*, was there crown'd with his Wife *Cunigonda*. Beſides this, he wag'd a ſharp War with the *Greeks* in *Italy*, and drove them out: This was undertaken on the Account of the *Norman* Princes, whoſe Deſign was to expel them; and whoſe Succeſs has ſince acquir'd them the Crowns of *Naples* and *Sicily*. On his Return to *Germany*, he had a bloody War with *Boleſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia*, who had call'd the *Poles*, *Sclavonians*, and *Moravians* to his Aſſiſtance; however, he finiſh'd it gloriouſly, forcing him to ſue for Peace, which he granted. HENRY II. 1015. 1022.

THEN, being willing to cultivate a good Underſtanding with all his Neighbours, he had an Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, where they enter'd into a ſtrict Friendſhip, and treated together about Means to reform the Diſorders in their Dominions. 'Twas then ſaid, that two Saints were come to viſit each other; and this was the laſt Action wherewith *Henry* crowned his exemplary Life; for he died in the Year 1024, after his Return into *Germany*, and his Body was depoſited in the Cathedral built by him at *Bamberg*. He had liv'd in a continual Continency with his Conſort *Cunigonda*; which Action, join'd to his other Virtues, induc'd the Church to enrol him amongſt the Number of Saints, as well as his Wife *Cunigonda*, who turned Nun after *Henry*'s Death. However, as much a Saint as ſhe was, during her Marriage ſhe was ſuſpected by the Emperor; to clear her ſelf whereof, ſhe walk'd barefoot over a burning Plough-ſhare unhurt; which *Interview of the Emperor with the King of France.* 1024. *His Death;*

which caus'd the Emperor great Confuſion, and made him repent putting her to ſuch Extremities.

CHAP. VII.

CONRAD *the Second.*

CONRAD II.

AFTER *Henry* of *Bavaria*'s Death, great Diſputes aroſe again about the Election of his Succeſſor; but the Princes and States meeting at laſt in the Year 1024, in open Field, between *Mentz* and *Worms*, choſe *Conrad* of *Franconia* Emperor, who was nam'd the *Salique*, as being deſcended of the *Frank* Princes called *Salians*. Not only a great Number of Eccleſiaſtical Princes aſſiſted at this Election, but the Dukes *Benno* of *Saxony*, *Albert* of *Auſtria*, *Hetzel* of *Bavaria*, *Erneſt* of *Suabia*, *Frederick* of *Lorrain*, *Goſilo* of *Holland* and *Zealand*, *Enno* of *Franconia*, *Ulric* of *Bohemia*, with other ſecular Princes, were alſo at this Ceremony with great Retinues.

A Lover of Juſtice. 1025.

CONRAD, during his Reign, particularly apply'd himſelf to the re-eſtabliſhing of Juſtice, as well as chaſtiſing Men of debauch'd Lives, and rewarding the Virtuous; and he gave Proof, on ſeveral Occaſions, how much he laid it at Heart. Being at *Worms* to viſit the Biſhop St. *Burchard*, who educated him, and was on his Death-bed, he had Advice of an Inſurrection of the *Lombards*, and hereupon immediately made Preparations againſt them, and that with ſuch Expedition, that he was at *Vercelles* before *Eaſter-*

Eaſter-Day, in the Year 1026, where he paſs'd that Feſtival. The reſt of that Year, and the beginning of the next, were ſpent in reducing the Rebels by Force of Arms; which done, he march'd to *Rome*, where he was anointed and crown'd Emperor on *Eaſter-Day*, with all Solemnity imaginable by Pope *John* XX. *Conrad*, being accompany'd at the Ceremony by *Canutus* King of *Denmark*, and *Rodolph* III, King of *Burgundy*, who were come to *Rome* out of a Principle of Devotion. CONRAD II. 1027.

SOME Days after he was oblig'd to return to *Germany*, where ſeveral Princes were raiſing new Troubles; and, being arriv'd, got his Son *Henry*, then between eleven and twelve Years old, declared his Succeſſor, and crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle* by the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*. Then he prepared to oppoſe the Enterprizes of the Dukes *Erneſt* of *Suabia*, *Albert* of *Carinthia*, with *Conradin* of *Worms*, his Couſin, and others who arm'd againſt him from the Time of his going to *Italy*, thinking to take Advantage of his Abſence. *Conrad* marching to meet them, diſpers'd their Troops in ſeveral Engagements, in one whereof *Erneſt* was kill'd, and the other Princes taken Priſoners, and, being tryed at a general Aſſembly of all the Princes and Members of the Empire, were depriv'd of their Dominions by a ſolemn Decree. A Gentleman having ſerved in this War, and loſt a Leg therein, was rewarded by him with as many Pieces of Gold as could be held in the Boot belonging to the wounded Limb, making him this Preſent only to pay for his Cure.

BOLESLAUS, Duke of *Poland*, a Tributary to the Empire, who had aſſumed the Title of King without the Emperor's Allowance, being dead, *Miſco* his eldeſt Son ſucceeded him in

CONRAD II. this Uſurpation, as well as his Dominions; Beſides which, he had ſo miſus'd his Brother *Otho*, that he was oblig'd to take refuge in *Germany*, and the Emperor, willingly granting him the Protection he deſired, immediately ordered his Forces to march, giving *Otho* the Command againſt his Brother. *Conrad* did not ſtop there, but rais'd another Army, wherewith he marched to join *Otho*, after which he preſs'd ſo hard upon *Miſico*, that he forc'd him to fly for Protection to *Valderick* Duke of *Bohemia*. The Emperor purſued him to the Frontiers of *Bohemia*, where he receiv'd a Letter from *Valderick*, offering to deliver him up; but he, abhoring ſuch Treachery, ſent the Letter to *Miſico*, adviſing him to take another Sanctuary. *Miſico*, ſenſibly touch'd at this Generoſity, went to the Emperor's Camp, where, being ſtripp'd of his Enſigns of Royalty, he threw himſelf at his Feet, and ſurrendered entirely to his Diſcretion, not being able, ſaid he, to find a more ſecure Retreat than in the Arms of his own Enemy. Upon this *Conrad* forgave him, and reſtored him his Dominions, without changing any of the Conditions, whereon his Father *Boleſlaus* held them under the former Emperor: So great are the Charms and Power of Generoſity in Souls ſenſible of Glory. This ſingular Action was not without its Conſequences, it induced *Valderick* to lay down his Arms, and have recourſe to the ſame Means to make his Peace.

NEXT to this came on the *Hungarian* War; *Stephen*, King thereof, ſent to demand the Dukedom of *Bavaria* of *Conrad*, as being his in Right of his Wife, Siſter and Heireſs to *Henry* II, Duke of *Bavaria*, and, on his Refuſal, declared War againſt him. The Emperor finding

ing himſelf thus defy'd by the *Hungarians*, did not wait till he was attack'd, but reſolv'd to march againſt them, and whilſt he was preparing for this Expedition, *Babo*, Count of *Abemberg* brought Thirty two Sons, all born of one Wife, and capable of bearing Arms, into his Service. He entered *Hungary* then with a powerful Army, putting all to Fire and Sword, inſomuch, that *Stephen*, finding himſelf ſo vigorouſly attack'd, ſued for Peace; which the Emperor granted. He alſo put a very fortunate End to the great Difference he had with *Eudes* Count of *Champagne*, and others, on the Account of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which that Prince had inherited by the Death of *Raoul*, whoſe Siſter he marry'd. CONRAD II. [1036.

HAVING thus ſecured Affairs on all ſides there, he rais'd a powerful Army in order to march again into *Italy*, where ſeveral Cities and Noblemen had rebell'd againſt him; this he did with ſuch Diſpatch, that, ſurprizing all the diſaffected, he made himſelf Maſter of *Milan*, where he puniſh'd the Rebels, as well as in the other Towns that would not receive him. This Rebellion was not the ſole Motive of his March; he had alſo a View to fulfilling the Decree of the Electors, which was, that the Emperor elected ſhould be obliged to go into *Italy*, there to receive two Crowns, beſides the Imperial Diadem, one at *Milan*, the other at *Modena*, to diſtinguiſh the Kingdoms of *Lombardy* and *Italy*.

AFTER theſe Expeditions he went to *Rome*, received the Bleſſing of Pope *Bennet* IX, who had ſucceeded to *John* XX. then having nothing more to do in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*, propoſing to apply himſelf wholly to maintain Peace within the Empire, and with his Neighbours; but Death ſpoiled this good De- *His Death.*

CONRAD II. 1039. ſign, for he ended his Life at *Utrecht* in the Year 1039, on *Whitſunday*. His Body was carried to *Spires*, and depoſited in the Cathedral Church which he had built, as he did likewiſe a magnificent Palace for his uſual Reſidence, which he left with the Empire to his Son *Henry* III.

CHAP. VIII.

HENRY *the Third.*

HENRY III. *His Election* HENRY III, ſirnamed the *Black*, Son of *Conrad* and *Giſella* of *Suabia*, was choſen Emperor by the Princes and States of the Empire on his Father's Recommendation, and accordingly received the Imperial Crown, in the Year 1040, at *Aix la Chapelle*, of *Philigrino* Archbiſhop of *Cologn*. At the Beginning of his Reign he had two troubleſome Wars; but was the firſt Year unſucceſsful againſt the *Bohemians*, for the Tribute which *Uladiſlaus* their Duke refus'd to pay; which obliged him ro return the next with a freſh Army, where he forced him to pay the uſual Tribute, and being puffed up with this Victory, undertook the ſecond War in the Year 1042, againſt *Ovon* or *Won* Uſurper of the Crown of *Hungary*, driving him out of the Kingdom, and delivering up the Throne to King *Peter*, whom the other had depoſed.

1040.

War with the Bohemians. 1041.

1042. *Depoſes the Uſurper of* Hungary.

THE Court of *Rome* had, for ſome Time, been divided by divers Factions, and particularly by thoſe of the Counts of *Tuſculum*, and the *Ptolemy's*. Pope *Bennet* IX had been choſen Succeſ-

ſor

for to St. *Peter* by the *Tuſculans*, and after enjoying the Pontificate about nine or ten Years, was depoſed by the *Ptolemeans*, join'd with the People, who put *Sylveſter* III in his Place: He was alſo depoſed three Months after by the *Tuſculans*, and *Bennet* re-eſtabliſhed; but finding himſelf hated by all the World, he reſign'd the Papacy into the Hands of *John*, Archprieſt of the *Roman* Church, which however he would ſometime after have re-aſſumed. Theſe three Popes, ſupported each by their Partiſans, were nevertheleſs each of them maintain'd with Part of St. *Peter*'s Patrimony; one at St. *Peter*'s, another at St. *Mary Major*, the third at the *Lateran*, and all, as Authors ſay, leading diſſolute Lives. HENRY III.

During theſe Tranſactions, a Prieſt, named *Gratian*, interpoſed, and managed Matters ſo well, that he brought each of them to renounce all Pretenſions to the Papal Dignity, in Conſideration of a Sum of Money given them; for which Reaſon the *Romans*, thinking themſelves oblig'd to *Gratian*, as having delivered the holy See from theſe Schiſmaticks, and reſtored Peace to the Church, elected him Pope, under the Name of *Gregory* VI. But the Emperor, without whoſe Allowance all theſe Things had been tranſacted, conſidering that his Authority had received a publick Wound, reſolved in the Year 1046 to march ſpeedily into *Italy* with an Army, to ſuppreſs theſe Diſorders; and no ſooner came there, but ordered a Council to be called at *Sutry*, where the Cauſe of theſe three Popes, being carefully examined, and their Depoſitions confirmed, he alſo depoſed *Gregory* VI, and cauſed *Hudiger* Biſhop of *Bamberg* to be choſen ſovereign Pontif, by the Conſent both of the *Romans* and *Germans*, under the Name of *Clement* II: He alſo received the Imperial

1046. *The Emperor goes into* Italy.

HENRY III

Crown from the Hands of this new Pope, who proclaim'd him *Auguſtus*, and crown'd *Agnes* his Conſort after him. Having thus recover'd the Rights of the Empire, and taken an Oath of the Senate and *Roman* People, never to acknowledge any Pope till he was confirmed by the Emperors, he return'd to *Germany*.

HE was hardly got back before he received News of the Death of *Clement* II, who had held the Papacy but nine Months, and alſo that a certain *Bavarian* Biſhop, nam'd *Stephen*, had forc'd himſelf into the Chair, under the Name of *Damaſus* II. He alſo heard almoſt at the ſame Time, that he died twenty three Days after his Advancement; and that the *Romans*, imagining the Emperor would refer the Choice of a Pope to them, had diſpatched Ambaſſadors to him. But *Henry*, reſolving to preſerve his Right, prevented them, and, without waiting the Arrival of the Ambaſſadors, conſtituted *Bruno*, a *German* Biſhop, ſovereign Pontif, making him immediately thereupon aſſume the Pontifical Robes: He was a good Man, not fond of Grandeur, and did not accept the Dignity but with Regret.

The Emperor names a Pope of his own Authority.

The Monk Hildebrand *begins to intermeddle with the Affairs of the Papacy.*

ACCORDINGLY, as he paſs'd by the Abby of *Clugny*, a certain Monk, call'd *Hildebrand*, perſuaded him that he could not wear that Habit, not being yet elected, or being only ſo by the Emperor, who had not ſingly the Power of chooſing and naming a Pope. *Bruno*, on this, quitted the Pontifical Habit without Pain, and went like a private Man to *Rome*, accompany'd by *Hildebrand*; where the latter play'd his Cards ſo well, firſt croſſing *Bruno*'s Election underhand, and then diſpoſing the *Romans* to conſent to it, that he made a Merit thereof to himſelf. *Bruno* took the Name of *Leo* IX, and be-

believing himſelf obliged to *Hildebrand* for his Exaltation, gave him the greateſt Share in his Favour, and the Management of Affairs, which was the Beginning of this Monk's Intrigues, and of the high Fortune to which in proceſs of Time he arriv'd. HENRY III 1049.

THE ſame Perſon, after *Leo* IXth's Death, gave yet farther Proofs of his Addreſs; for having managed the *Romans* as he pleaſed, and always with a View of depriving the Emperor of the Right of electing a Pope, he induc'd them to chooſe one of their own Accord, which was *Gerard* Biſhop of *Bavaria*, who took the Name of *Victor* II. and *Hildebrand* knowing well that the Emperor would not be ſatisfy'd therewith, got himſelf deputed to procure his Approbation thereof; and in effect he manag'd *Henry* ſo artfully, that he confirmed it. *The* Romans *chooſe a Pope of themſelves after the Death of* Leo IX. 1054. *The Emperor confirms the Election.*

'TIS true, the Emperor had not approv'd of it ſo eaſily, had not he bent his Thoughts ſo entirely upon the Affairs of *Hungary*, that he could not fix his Mind upon any thing elſe; the *Hungarians* being again in Rebellion againſt their King *Peter*, whom the Emperor had reeſtabliſhed. One *Andrew*, his Couſin, had put himſelf at their Head, and ſeiz'd upon the Crown, after defeating *Peter* in divers Engagements, taking him Priſoner, pulling out his Eyes, and killing him in Priſon. Hereupon the Emperor march'd againſt them with conſiderable Forces, but 'twas to no effect; for the firſt Army he ſent down the *Danube* with his Ammunition was almoſt all loſt; the *Hungarians* having, by the Means of ſome excellent Swimmers, bor'd Holes in his Boats, ſo that they ſunk to the bottom: Nor was he more fortunate the next Year, and at laſt he was forced

HENRY III

to grant Peace to his Enemies, and yield up the Crown to the Uſurper *Andrew*.

THE Chagrin this ill Succeſs gave him, was much increas'd by ſeveral publick Calamities that fell out upon the Neck of one anorher, as Earthquakes, Plagues, and Famines; inſomuch, that, to alleviate his Misfortunes in ſome meaſure, and, as it were, by a Foreſight of his End, he ſummon'd a Diet at *Goſlar* in the Year 1056, at which Pope *Victor* II, who was come into *Germany* at his Deſire, with a great Number of Eccleſiaſtical and ſecular Princes, aſſiſted with the other States: And the Emperor having, amongſt other things, recommended to them his Son *Henry*, then about five Years old, they received him as King of the *Romans*, and his future Succeſſor to the Empire.

1056. *He calls a Diet, where he cauſes his Son to be declared King of the* Romans.

THIS was the Beginning of the Cuſtom, ſince introduced, of giving the Title of King of the *Romans* to that Prince whom the States of the Empire appoint Succeſſor to the Imperial Crown, either at the Emperor's Deſire, or in Caſe of his Weakneſs or Incapacity.

His Death. SOME Days after, the Emperor, on his Return from hunting, where he uſually endeavoured to divert his Chagrin, fell ſick, and died at *Burfelt* in *Saxony*, in *October*, *Anno*, 1056. at the Age of thirty nine. His Body was carry'd to *Spires* with abundance of Magnificence, attended by a great Number of Perſons of Quality, and depoſited in the Cathedral.

CHAP.

CHAP. IX.

HENRY *the Fourth.*

HENRY IV. HENRY IV. 1061.

HENRY IV, ſirnam'd the Great, was educated with much Care after the Death of *Henry* III his Father, by the Empreſs *Agnes* his Mother; but at laſt, whether the Regency of this Princeſs, who was govern'd by the Advice of *Guibert* of *Parma* her Chancellor and firſt Miniſter, gave Umbrage to the Princes of the Empire, or whether ſhe maintain'd the Rights of the Emperor her Son too reſolutely, her Conduct alienated the Minds of moſt of the Princes, making them murmur againſt her Government; and the Affairs of *Rome* gave them an Opportunity of declaring openly againſt her. The Emperors had long an inconteſtable Title to chooſe and confirm the Popes; contrary to this Right *Alexander* II had been choſen after Pope *Nicholas* II, as the latter was after *Stephen* IX, Succeſſor to *Victor* II; for he had got himſelf elected without the Emperor's Conſent, by Virtue of a Decree of Council call'd by his Predeceſſor *Nicholas* of his own particular Authority, to render himſelf independent of the Emperor's. By this Decree of Council 'twas ordain'd, That the Curates of *Rome*, now called Cardinals, ſhould ſolely elect the Popes. The Regent, thinking herſelf oblig'd to maintain the Rights of the Imperial Crown, ſummon'd a Diet of the States, wherein ſhe cauſed

HENRY IV.

caused *Alexander* II. to be depos'd, and another Pope elected under the Name of *Honorius* II. This Schism not only embroil'd all *Germany*, but *Italy* also, where *Godfrey* of *Tuscany* maintain'd *Alexander* by Force in the holy See, and drove out *Honorius*. This *Godfrey* was a Prince of *Lorrain*, who had marry'd *Matilda*, the Heiress of *Tuscany*, and by these Nuptials was one of the most powerful Princes in *Italy*. On the other hand, the Ecclesiastical Princes of *Germany*, who only sought an Opportunity to rid their Hands of the Regent, made a secret Confederacy with the other States, and resolv'd to take the Government of the Emperor, and the Administration of Affairs, out of her Hands. In order to this, *Hanno*, Archbishop of *Cologn*, a Prelate of great Merit and Authority, on Pretence of making an Entertainment for the young Prince, in an Island in the middle of the *Rhine*, carry'd him off in a Boat as far as *Cologn*; and the States being themselves Masters of the Emperor's Person, who was then ten Years old, entrusted the Care of his Education to the Archbishops of *Cologn* and *Bremen*. They apply'd themselves carefully thereunto, but after a very different manner; *Hanno*, Archbishop of *Cologn*, to whom the young Prince paid great Deference, endeavour'd to make him apply himself to Learning, and virtuous Actions; but was not seconded by *Albert* Archbishop of *Bremen*; for he, to gain the Emperor's Favour, for his own private Interest, and to render himself Master of the Affairs of the Empire, which he already govern'd with Authority enough, allow'd the Prince all manner of Liberty, leaving him entirely to himself; and, in short, was the Occasion of carrying him to such an Excess of Debauchery, (so below his Dignity) that he

1062.

was

was paſt reclaiming, which, when too late, he wiſh'd for and attempted. HENRY IV.

HE began his Government at the Age of twenty two Years, by re-eſtabliſhing the publick Security in his own Dukedom of *Saxony*, and putting a Stop to the Robberies, Plunders, and Extortions, which the Princes and States of that Country had committed upon each other, and eſpecially upon Travellers, in Derogation of the Imperial Authority, ever ſince the Time of *Otho* I. To this end he thought proper to take up his Reſidence at *Goſlar*, that he might reſtrain all theſe Diſorders by his Preſence; this done, he built and fortify'd Caſtles near all Paſſes and Avenues throughout the Dukedom of *Saxony*, putting Garriſons therein, to retain the States and People in their Duty. But as theſe things could not be effected without raiſing ſome Taxes, the Eccleſiaſtical and Secular Princes took occaſion from thence to thwart the Emperor, and oppoſe his Deſign, under pretence of defending their Liberties.

1072. Henry *ſets the Peace in his own Dominions.*

The Reaſon of the Saxons taking Arms againſt him.

IN the End they were yet more animated to riſe againſt him by his Debauchery, being beſides ſpurr'd on by the Council ſent them from *Rome*, where they deſir'd no better than to find Work for him; and, in order to ſecond them effectually, Pope *Alexander* II, being puſh'd on by the Advice of Cardinal *Hildebrand*, an enterprizing ambitious Man, his chief Confident, and who ſucceeded him, went ſo far as to cite the Emperor to appear before him, and give an Account of his libertine Life; and of the Sale they pretended he made of the Inveſtitures of Benefices; but the Emperor laugh'd at this Citation.

1073.

IN ſhort, the States of *Saxony* met at *Neckmeſlow*, and, entering into a Confederacy on pretence

HENRY IV.

Confederacy against the Emperor, and the Propoſals made him by the States

tence of preſerving their Liberties, ſent Deputies to the Emperor, to preſent him a Memorial containing theſe eight Heads: 1. They demanded the Demolition of the Forts and Caſtles built by him in *Saxony* and *Thuringia*. 2. His reſtoring the Money and Lands that had been taken from the Princes and States, *&c.* contrary to all Juſtice. 3. That *Otho*, Duke of *Saxony*, ſhould be re-eſtabliſh'd in his Duchy of *Bavaria*, whereof *Henry* had diſpoſſeſſed him, becauſe on having been accus'd by one *Egino*, of a Deſign upon the Emperor's Life, and being ſummon'd by a Reſolution of a Diet, to appear at *Goſlar*, and clear himſelf of this Accuſation by a Duel with his Accuſer; he would not appear, refuſing to engage with a Perſon who was his Inferior. 4. That he would maintain the Privileges and ancient Statutes of the *Saxons*. 5. That the Emperor would not always reſide at *Goſlar*, but viſit the reſt of his Dominions, that he might do Juſtice to all his Subjects, and provide againſt the Neceſſities of the Church, Widows, Orphans, *&c.* 6. That he would baniſh from Court thoſe Councellors and Domeſticks, by whoſe ill Conduct the Empire was come to Ruin, and that he would make uſe of the Princes and States of the Empire, whoſe Intereſt was concern'd for its Preſervation equally with himſelf. 7. That he would put away his Concubine, and be contented with the Empreſs his Conſort. 8. And laſtly, they begg'd him to acquieſce with theſe Demands; in which Caſe they promis'd him all Obedience according to their Oath, and to give him ſuch Aſſiſtance as free States were obliged to; adding that, on the contrary, if he had any Deſign to oppreſs them, they were

pre-

prepared to defend themſelves againſt any Violence and Tyranny. HENRY IV.

THIS Deputation was received and ſent back by the Emperor with great Coldneſs; all the Anſwer he gave them was, that he would as ſoon as poſſible call a Diet to have the Advice of the other Princes and States of the Empire thereupon; and as this did not at all pleaſe the States of *Saxony*, who were reſolv'd to deliver themſelves from the Impoſitions they paid, without referring it to other States, who were not involved in the ſame Troubles, they ſent to inform the Emperor, that if he did not immediately give Orders for their Relief, they were reſolv'd to procure it themſelves at the Expence of their Lives. The Emperor found very well by this that they would be Judges of, and Parties in their own Cauſe, but was yet better convinc'd when he knew they had rais'd a conſiderable Body of Troops, and were on March to inveſt *Goſlar*, where he reſided. This made him reſolve to quit that Place ſecretly by Night, and without loſs of Time ſummon the other Princes and States of the Empire to ſupply him with a ſpeedy and powerful Aſſiſtance.

Henry *prepares to reſiſt the League.*

THE Eccleſiaſtical Princes of the League were *Werner* Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg*, and the Biſhops *Burchard* of *Halberſtat*, *Henry* of *Hilderſheim*, *Werner* of *Mersbourg*, *Heilberg* of *Minden*, *Jumer* of *Paderborn*, *Frederick* of *Mimmegardefurt*, and *Benno* of *Miſnia*. The Seculars, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, who was proſcribed, *Magnus* Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquiſſes of *Thuringia*, *Uko* and *Dede*, *Frederick* Count Palatine of *Saxony*, and ſeveral Counts, with the Nobility, and all Perſons who were capable of bearing Arms, which all together amounted to 60,000 Men.

THE

HENRY IV.

THE Emperor's Party was not leſs conſiderable; for all the other Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and Prelates of the Empire, remained faithful to him; even ſome of *Saxony*, as *Leomarus* Archbiſhop of *Bremen*, *Eppo* Biſhop of *Zeitz*, and *Benno* Biſhop of *Oſnabrug*, beſides a great Number of the moſt potent Princes and Dukes in the Empire, eſpous'd his Cauſe; amongſt the reſt, *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, Count of *Reinfelden*, who marry'd the Emperor *Henry*'s Siſter, and had by that Means the Dukedom of *Suabia*, *Guelph* or *Guelphon*, Son of *Azon* Marquis of *Ferrara*, to whom the Emperor had given the Duchy of *Bavaria*, the Dukes *Godfrey* of *Lorrain*, *Suintebold* of *Bohemia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and the Marquis *Erneſt* of *Bavaria*, without reckoning other Eccleſiaſticks and Seculars, who arm'd for him in this War.

The Emperor agrees with the Seditious.

NEVERTHELESS the Emperor (without minding the continual Hoſtilities and Outrages committed againſt him by the *Saxons*) would not neglect any Opportunity of reducing them by Lenity; to which end he hearkened to any Expedient, which the Princes of the Empire thought fit to propoſe. He even went ſo far as to depute the Archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*, the Biſhops of *Metz* and *Bamberg*, the Dukes of *Lorrain*, *Suabia*, and *Carinthia*, to go to *Gerſtingen*, and treat of a Peace in his Name with the Princes and States of *Saxony*, who made a long Detail by Articles to the Plenipotentiaries of their Reaſons to complain againſt the Emperor. Amongſt theſe Articles ſome related to the common Intereſt of the States of *Saxony*, and others only to his private Conduct, of which they gave a very exact Account, relating divers ſcandalous Debaucheries with married Women and Maidens, to the Prejudice of *Bertha*, *Marchioneſs*

HENRY IV.

chioneſs of Ferrara, whom he had eſpous'd at the Age of ſixteen.

To this the Plenipotentiaries anſwered alſo by Articles, and, beginning with the laſt, ſaid, That ſince the Emperor by his Conduct had occaſion'd the Commotions in *Saxony*, they thought it proper he ſhould promiſe them to change his Life for the future; and that, as for the States of *Saxony*, who, from being Parties, had made themſelves Judges, not being willing to refer themſelves to the States of the Empire, it was their Opinion they ought to wait on the Emperor to ask him Pardon for that Preſumption.

HE was all this Time at *Wirtzbourg*, with the States of the Empire, whilſt they were labouring about this Accommodation, and the Plenipotentiaries went thither to give him an Account of what had been reſolv'd on; wherewith he was very well ſatisfy'd, approving of all the Points that had been agreed on, and promiſing to perform them. But altho' he had found the Council of the Princes of the Empire uſeful to him in this Affair, he nevertheleſs neglected it in others of no leſs Importance, to follow the Opinions of particular Perſons who ſurrounded him. This incens'd the Dukes *Rodolphus* of *Suabia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and *Guelph* of *Bavaria*, ſo much, that, ſeeing the little Value ſet upon them, that they remov'd from Court, without waiting the Aſſembly of the States breaking up, which the Emperor diſmiſs'd after the Concluſion of the Treaty, and ſet out from *Wirtzbourg* to take up his Reſidence at *Nuremberg*.

Another Inſurrection of ſeveral Male-contents, where the Emperor offers to fight a Duel.

HERE he was inform'd that one *Reginger*, the moſt truſted of his Domeſticks, had retired from his Court, and was gone to acquaint the Dukes of *Suabia* and *Carinthia*, that the Emperor would have

HENRY IV.

have employ'd him to aſſaſſinate them; but that he would never conſent, as ſome had who were choſen for the Execution of that Deſign; wherefore that Prince had conceiv'd ſuch a mortal Hatred againſt him, that he was oblig'd to leave him. The Advice that had been given him of *Reginger*'s Perfidy, was ſoon after confirm'd by the ill Effects of the Impoſture; for this falſe Report made ſuch an Impreſſion upon the Minds of the People, that almoſt all Mouths agreed in decrying and inveighing againſt him; which oblig'd that Prince, according to the fooliſh Opinion then reigning, to offer to fight in ſingle Duel againſt *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, that GOD might publickly ſhew the Falſity of this Calumny, by diſcovering his Innocence: But the Duke referr'd the Affair to the Princes of the Empire to determine as they ſhould think proper.

AT the ſame Time a brave Cavalier, nam'd *Coſheim*, begg'd his Majeſty to permit him likewiſe to fight with *Reginger*, which was granted him; after which he went to Duke *Rodolphus* to deſire the ſame Leave, but the Duke refus'd him, perſiſting in his Reſolution of referring the Affair to the States of the Empire, rather chuſing that Method, than to expoſe himſelf to the uncertainty of the Event. All the Emperor's ſteps for his Juſtification were in vain, and tho' 'twas viſible to the leaſt clear-ſighted, that *Reginger* was an Impoſtor; Nevertheleſs the Princes of the Empire continued to declare againſt him, and reduced him to that Extremity, that his only Refuge was to have recourſe to the Imperial Cities, and take ſhelter at *Worms*, where the Inhabitants receiv'd him with Joy, in ſpite of their Biſhop, who oppos'd it, and would have forbid his Entrance.

THE

HENRY IV.

THE Emperor, tho' young, ſeem'd of a prodigious Spirit, and born for great Things; but Fortune reſpects and conſiders the Qualities of the Mind but little; for the Princes of the Empire, taking Colour from the Accuſations brought againſt him, met in the City of *Mentz*, to deliberate on the Means to deprive him of the Crown and Scepter, and elect another in his Place. The Emperor, being inform'd of this Deſign, manag'd matters ſo well by his ſecret Solicitations, that ſome of theſe Princes were perſuaded to come and confer with him at *Oppenheim*; where, being arrived, he received them with abundance of Civility, and, during the Conference, begg'd them ſo earneſtly to excuſe the Debauches of his Youth, and be aſſured that, for the future, he would live as became an Emperor, not acting any thing unworthy of the Crown wherewith they had honour'd him, inſomuch that they remain'd ſatisfy'd with his Proteſtations, and only inſiſted on the Charge brought againſt him. To this he anſwer'd without Heſitation, that he would fight even againſt *Reginger* himſelf, to ſhew how far he was from being capable of the Buſineſs wherewith he charg'd him; the Propoſal was approv'd on, and even the Day and Place of Combat appointed, *viz.* eight Days after *Epiphany*, at *Mareau* near *Mentz*, which being thus reſolv'd upon, the Emperor returned to *Worms*.

Fortune begins to frown upon the Emperor, who is reduced to offer to fight a Duel with his Domeſtick Servant, who is carried away by the Devil.

THIS Prince wanted Money, or rather every thing: He could neither get Supplies from the Empire, nor his own Duchy; for the States, taking Advantage of the Diſorder of his Affairs, had ſeiz'd on all his Revenues, driving and cutting off his Troops, as well as razing and demoliſhing his Fortreſſes and Caſtles. Nevertheleſs the Day of Combat approach'd; but a

HENRY IV.

little before, the Devil, as was pretended, carried off the Impoſtor; and thus in ſpite of himſelf, rendered a ſignal Service to the Emperor, who, on this Occaſion, had conſulted his Courage more than his Prudence, and the Honour of his Dignity.

1074. THE Emperor being deliver'd from this Enemy, endeavoured afterwards to win the Princes who were diſaffected, by Negotiation, wherein he had Succeſs, and thus enjoy'd ſome Eaſe; but the *Saxons* a little after began again to rebel; which obliged him to reſolve once for all to reduce them by Force: To which Intent he rais'd the ſame Year an Army of abont 60,000 Men, by the Aſſiſtance of the Princes and States of the Empire. As ſoon as he was arriv'd in *Saxony*, he delivered all up to Pillage, quartering his Troops at Diſcretion in the Cities, whilſt the *Saxons*, who kept the Field, were dying with Hunger and Cold. He might have promis'd himſelf to have compleated their Ruin by an entire Victory; nevertheleſs, according to Cuſtom, giving Ear to his Prudence ſooner than his Paſſion, or Fortune which flattered his Courage, he made Peace, even to his own Diſadvantage, by the Mediation of ſome Princes of the Empire: Then having disbanded his Troops, after rewarding them according to their Merit, he caus'd himſelf to be conducted in Triumph to *Goſlar* by the Forces of the *Saxon* Princes.

IN the Treaty of Peace, amongſt other Conditions, were theſe, That the Emperor ſhould firſt disband thoſe Troops that were in the Fortreſſes in the Country, which Fortreſſes the Inhabitants ſhould be at Liberty to demoliſh; that he ſhould make thoſe States amends that were ruined by his Forces; that he ſhould diſmiſs all Strangers from the *Saxon* Council, and put *Saxons*

ons in their Room; that he ſhould reform the Courſe of Juſtice, and aſſiſt in Judgment himſelf, for the more ſpeedy rendring it to all Men; that he ſhould make Satisfaction within the Year to Duke *Otho* for the Duchy of *Bavaria*, whereof he had diſpoſſeſs'd him; that he ſhould not take up his ordinary Reſidence in *Goſlar*, but in other Places in the Empire; and laſtly, that he ſhould govern the Empire only by *German* Councils. HENRY IV.

IN Conſequence of this Treaty, the Emperor went to reſide at *Worms*, where he was very ſafe, having experienced the Zeal and Fidelity of that City, by the Aſſiſtance ſhe had given him in the Time of his Adverſity. In the mean while the *Saxons*, on their ſide, demoliſh'd the Caſtles and Towns he had built, and both the Eccleſiaſtical and Secular Princes paid him due Homage, and alſo reſtor'd thoſe Lands and Poſſeſſions they had unjuſtly taken from him.

Another Rebellion againſt the Emperor, which he ſuppreſſes.

NEVERTHELESS, this Peace was not of long Continuance, the *Saxons*, who were naturally unquiet, and us'd to live in Luxury and Abundance, the Strongeſt at the Expence of the Weakeſt, again occaſion'd new Commotions. The Emperor had built a large Monaſtery, with a handſome Church and ſtately Caſtle, at *Harlesberg*, where he had a large Park inclos'd with Walls; and the *Saxons*, in Performance of the Articles of Peace, had ruin'd the Fortifications, but preſerv'd the Church and Caſtle. But a little after, both the one and the other were maliciouſly raz'd by the Peaſants in the Neighbourhood, after having pillag'd the Ornaments, Furniture, and all Things of Value, even to the Iron Inſtruments and Stones, without ſparing the Tombs and ſacred Places.

THE Emperor, having Advice hereof, and 1075.

HENRY IV.

ſeeing how the *Saxons* continued to abuſe his Clemency and Goodneſs, bent his Thoughts upon a Way to prevent the ill Conſequences thereof, and as the Feſtival of *Eaſter* drew nigh, which he had reſolv'd to celebrate at *Bamberg*, and ſeveral Princes of the Empire went there to meet him, to pay their Court, according to the Cuſtom obſerv'd on great Feſtivals, he thought it proper to take Advantage of this Opportunity to repreſent to them the Proceedings of the *Saxons*, and demand their Sentiments, upon what Meaſures he ſhould take on this Occaſion. Accordingly he did ſo, and was anſwer'd by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, in the Name of all the Eccleſiaſtical Princes, and of *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, *Bertold* of *Carinthia*, and other ſecular Princes, That GOD, having been offended, and the Emperor, Empire, and its Members, treated unworthily, and with Contempt by this Sedition; it ought to be the more ſeverely puniſh'd, as its Example might be of dangerous Conſequence, if ſuffer'd with Impunity; that therefore his Imperial Majeſty ſhould exhort the Princes and States of the Empire to unite all together to chaſtiſe this Sacrilege and Rebellion: That as for themſelves, they were entirely diſpoſed to aſſiſt him to the utmoſt of their Power. The Emperor could hardly be perſuaded to come to this Extremity, but defer'd their Puniſhment for ſome Months, as hoping other Expedients might be found to reclaim theſe People; but heard that, whilſt they pretended to be willing to ſubmit, they were endeavouring, by ſecret Intrigues, to ſtrengthen themſelves in their Revolt. Hereupon he follow'd the Princes Advice, and caus'd an Order to be publiſh'd throughout the Empire, for the States to march their Troops againſt the *Saxons*, at the ſame

ſame Time declaring War againſt them by his Ambaſſador, then at their aſſembly at *Goſlar*, the Rendezvous of the Forces being at *Bredingen*, a Place depending on the Abbey of *Hirchfelt*. HENRY IV.

THE Rebels thought, that, to throw all the Blame upon the Emperor, they need only complain to his Ambaſſador, that he had reſolv'd to wage War with them without hearing their Juſtification; they being ready (as they ſaid) to repair all the Damage he might have ſuffer'd, either in Gold, Silver, Jewels, Furniture, Ornaments of the Crown, or in what related to the Demolition of his Houſe; proteſting that all theſe Outrages had been committed only by Peaſants, and Men without any Authority, as well as without any Order from the States of *Saxony*, who were inclin'd to puniſh them ſeverely. But the Ambaſſador anſwer'd them, that the Emperor would only act againſt Rebels, and not againſt ſuch as, quitting the League made amongſt them, ſhould join themſelves to the other States of the Empire.

ALL the Archbiſhops and Biſhops met the Emperor at *Bredingen*, except thoſe of *Cologn* and *Liege*, who nevertheleſs ſent their Forces; the Dukes of *Bohemia*, *Suabia*, and *Bavaria*, with the Marquis *Erneſt* of *Bavaria*, the Dukes of *Lorrain* and *Carinthia*, together with the Counts and Nobility of the Empire, came alſo thither with a fine and numerous Army. The Princes of *Saxony* rais'd likewiſe a conſiderable Body of Forces, and gave the Command to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*. The Arms on both Sides were Coats of Mail, Halberds, Javelins, and Swords. The Emperor caus'd his Army to ſeize on the moſt advantagious Poſts, and offer'd them Battle on *May* 13, 1075; the Duke *Rodolphus* beginning the Onſet, according to the common Practice

HENRY IV.

of the antient Emperors, who always gave the Command of the firſt Attack to the Dukes of *Suabia*. The Battle was very bloody, and laſted till Night, when the *Saxons* were defeated; and their Generals, with the other Eccleſiaſtical and Secular Princes, made their Eſcapes to their Strong-holds; and *Henry*, being Maſter of all *Saxony* by this Victory, diſmiſs'd his Troops, on Condition that they ſhould return to *Gerſtingen*, on the firſt of *October*, in better Caſe and greater Number, to put a final End to the War; after which he return'd to *Worms*.

The Emperor agrees with the Rebels.

DURING this Interval, the Princes and States of *Saxony* endeavour'd to make an Agreement with him, but continued however to raiſe Forces to be always in Readineſs to defend themſelves; the Emperor alſo ſtrengthen'd himſelf on all ſides, and took the Field firſt with his Army, where the *Saxons* follow'd him ſoon after; but at laſt, by the means of Mediators, both Parties were brought to an Agreement, which was conſented to by the whole Empire. The Princes and States of *Saxony*, *viz.* *Werner*, Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg*, *Bucco* Biſhop of *Haldberſtat*, *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, *Magnus* and *Herman*, Dukes of *Saxony*, *Frederick*, Palatine of *Saxony*, with the Counts and Nobility of the Country, ask'd Pardon of the Emperor for their Revolt, in Preſence of the Imperial Court, which was in the open Field, begging he would honour them ſo far as to reſtore them to his Favour; and that Prince granting it, gave Orders to the Princes and Officers to diſperſe their Troops, and retire to their reſpective Homes, which was executed on all ſides. This important Expedition being thus ended in a ſmall Time, the Emperor return'd back again to *Worms*, whither he arriv'd on St. *Martin*'s Day, in the ſame Year.

BUT

HENRY IV.

BUT he was not to enjoy this Repoſe long, having a Difference with the *Italians*, much more difficult to compoſe, as will be ſeen in the ſequel. Cardinal *Hildebrand*, during his Employments under *Alexander* II, and the former Popes, had made his Efforts, by his Intrigues, to deprive the Emperors of their Right of electing and confirming the Popes, and giving the Inveſtitures of Biſhopricks in their Dominions, which they had enjoy'd ever ſince *Charlemagne*. The Conteſt about Inveſtitures had of late been revived at *Rome*, on account of ſome that had been conferr'd by the Emperor, as was ſaid, on Prelates whoſe Lives were not irreproachable, and they had recourſe to indirect ways to aboliſh the Cuſtom; but, before we farther proceed, it may be proper, in order to clear up this Diſpute, to give an Account, not only of the original Matter of Fact, but alſo of the original Right. We read in Scripture, that, to ſupply the Vacancy of the Apoſtleſhip of *Judas*, the Believers, to the Number of 120, propos'd *Barſabas* and *Matthias*, and, having caſt Lots for each, the Lot fell upon *Matthias*; and that likewiſe when they were to elect Deacons, the Believers, being then many more in Number, choſe ſeven whom they preſented to the *Apoſtles*, who, after Prayer, laid their Hands upon them. Wherefore there are two Things in theſe Elections, the Preſentation made by the Believers, and the Impoſition of Hands by the *Apoſtles*. The Preſentation was wholly ſecular, as being perform'd by Laymen; the Impoſition of Hands was a ſacred Thing, or a Sacrament, as being the viſible Sign of the inviſible Deſcent of the HOLY GHOST; accordingly this Action belonged to conſecrated and holy Men.

The Emperor has a great Difference with Rome, *on Account of the Inveſtitures.*

HENRY IV.

THE Preſentation is what one may call the Inveſtiture; for the People firſt electing the Perſons they judged capable, and then preſenting them, gave, as much as in them lay, the Inveſtiture of the Miniſtry in queſtion to the Perſon elected, that he might be afterwards conſecrated by the Prieſts, and thereby rendred capable of the Miniſterial Functions. This was the Practice in the Infancy of the Church, when all the Believers were but one Body, and one Soul, and liv'd in common.

SINCE that Time the Dignities of the Church, having been endow'd with large Poſſeſſions by Princes and Perſons of Condition, were coveted by ſuch as had more a View to the Poſſeſſions annexed to them, than the Office it ſelf, that is, who had more Value for the Revenue of the Benefice, than for the Order, or the Office. Then 'twas that they ſtrove to obtain them by Factions, Simony, and other unlawful Ways, whence generally ſprung Seditions, contrary to the publick Tranquility, and the Authority of the Sovereign, oblig'd theſe Princes (whom GOD commands above all things to preſerve the Peace of their Dominions, which they hold of him) to have recourſe to ſome Means more ſafe and agreeable to the publick Quiet.

THESE Means were, to do themſelves what was before done by the People, that is, themſelves to elect, preſent, and inveſt the Incumbents; and in effect, being the Heads of the People, and repreſenting (as is ſaid) the Perſons of the People, what they do in the Name of the Publick, is eſteem'd to be done by the Publick it ſelf. The Prince alſo knows, better than any one, the Subjects moſt capable of theſe Dignities; becauſe he is better inform'd of their Conduct and Reputation; whereof we have an

Example

Example in the Popes themſelves; it having been remarked that thoſe who have been nominated by the Emperors, have generally been great Men; and that, on the contrary, thoſe who have been introduc'd other ways, have not always acted anſwerably to their Engagements. HENRY IV.

BESIDES, two ſtrong Reaſons are to be conſider'd, which inconteſtably conferr the Right of electing and inveſting the Biſhops and other Incumbents on the Sovereigns. 1. That the Temporalities of theſe Benefices were their own Gifts, which they have erected into a ſort of Fiefs in the Perſons of the Biſhops, whence came the Name of *Benefices*; and, 2. That the Incumbents being their own Subjects, and becoming their Vaſſals by the Poſſeſſions of theſe Temporalities, which are accompany'd with Honour and Authority, the Princes, by their Duty as Sovereigns, and for the Good of the Publick, are bound to ſecure themſelves of the Perſon and Fidelity of theſe Vaſſals; inſomuch that, to conteſt the Right of theſe Princes, is to deſtroy the political Order eſtabliſh'd by GOD.

AGAIN, theſe Inveſtitures were given by the Emperors with the Croſier and Ring, in the ſame manner as they gave the Inveſtitures of other Fiefs with the Scepter, Sword, or Standard; all which was but a pure outward Ceremony, to ſignify, by theſe Marks, that they inveſted the Vaſſal with ſomething real. For to ſay, that, becauſe the Biſhops carry a Croſier, which repreſents the Crook wherewith a Shepherd keeps his Sheep; and a Ring, which is a Token of their Marriage with their Church, theſe two Things denote their Spiritual Power, is a very arbitrary Explanation.

THE Emperors therefore, as well as other Sovereigns, had a Right, not only to inveſt the Biſhops

HENRY IV.

Biſhops, whoſe Biſhopricks were in the *German* Territories, but the Popes themſelves; and 'tis this Right from which the ſame Popes were endeavouring to free themſelves under the Emperor, pretending to the World, that it is a kind of Sacrilege for Laymen to lay their prophane Hands upon the Sanctuary, in making Biſhops, who are ſacred Perſons, and the Succeſſors of the Apoſtles: But, in effect, they only made uſe of this Pretence to render themſelves independent of the Emperors, and be inveſted with the full ſovereign Authority. One manifeſt Proof of this Deſign is, that they are very careful, not to diſtinguiſh the Temporalities from the Spiritualities of a Benefice, as we have juſt done; for the one, as has been explain'd, is different from the other. The Temporalities of a Benefice, or the Benefice it ſelf, are of the Nature of other Poſſeſſions of the Commonwealth, whereof the Prince has the Diſpoſal, as firſt Proprietor, in the Name of the Publick, to conferr them, when vacant, upon whom he ſees proper. The Spirituality of a Benefice, or the Order, or the Office, is the Function of a Biſhop, Abbot, *&c.* which is deriv'd from the Impoſition of their Hands who ordain the Biſhop or Incumbent. Thus it has been, by the Help of this confounding, or not diſtinguiſhing between two Things entirely different, that the Court of *Rome*, putting Scruples into weak Heads, has carried Fire and Sword into the Heart of the Empire, in order to accompliſh their Ends during the Troubles.

THIS Quarrel alſo being a Quarrel wherein all Princes were concern'd, every one endeavour'd to be reſolute in the Maintenance of his Right; for which Reaſon Pope *Urban* II, not finding perhaps the *French* ſo tractable as the *Germans*,

HENRY IV.

Germans, explain'd the Thing in a Council. There 'twas decreed, that Kings have a Right to elect and name, but not to inveſt with the Croſier and Ring, as being Signs of the ſpiritual Power, which they would ſeem to conferr thereby; this ſhews, that the great Diſpute about Inveſtitures, was about the Name of the Thing, and not the Thing it ſelf.

THE Court of *Rome* did not, however, think it proper to make this Explanation ſo ſoon in the Empire; they were willing firſt to have an honeſt Pretence to eſtabliſh the Pope's Sovereignty; and indeed, conſidering the Conduct of thoſe Emperors who had ſupplanted the Houſe of *France*, to whom the Imperial Crown rightly belong'd, one might ſay, that, if the Popes were guilty of any Crime, in making themſelves independent, they have only follow'd the Example of the Emperors themſelves, the Popes having as much Right to make themſelves abſolute Sovereigns, as the firſt Comer to make himſelf Emperor.

Election of Gregory *VII, without the Emperor's Knowledge, and his Confirmation by the Emperor himſelf.*

BUT, to reſume the Thread of our Hiſtory, Cardinal *Hidebrand*, a Man of conſummate Knowledge in Negotiations, but of a firy Temper, by his Experience in the Affairs he had manag'd in *Germany*, having diſcover'd that their Minds were not hard to be ſhaken, during the Lives of two or three Popes (under whom he had been employ'd) had laid the Foundation of the Scheme he had form'd in his own Perſon, *viz.* to deprive the Emperors of the Right of Inveſtiture to Benefices. Thus he had couch'd under a general Pretence, his particular Aim of taking from them the Right of electing or confirming Popes; hoping that this Point being gain'd, and it not being poſſible to miſs the Papacy in the Poſt he enjoy'd, he ſhould then ſee himſelf really

HENRY IV.

ally inveſted with the Sovereign Pontificate. However, he came to the Papal Dignity before the Affair was brought to Perfection; for after *Alexander* II his Death, which happen'd in the Year 1073, this Cardinal was immediately elected by the Faction of the Populace, without the Clergy's having any hand therein, and aſſum'd the Name of *Gregory* VII; but in the end, the Cardinals, not being able to prevent this Election, had given their Conſent. This being all done without the Emperor's Knowledge, who, as well as the Princes of the Empire, was ſurpriz'd at the Novelty, he call'd a Diet at *Mentz*, where the States repreſenting to him, that, ſince he had received from his Predeceſſors the Right of electing and confirming the Popes, whereof *Nicolas* II, had given him a preciſe Declaration, in a full Council held at *Rome*, on his coming to the Crown, he was bound in Duty to maintain this Right, and declare *Gregory*'s Election null. Thereupon the Emperor, approving the Opinion of theſe Princes, ſent an Ambaſſador to *Rome* to complain of this Incroachment to the Pope and Cardinals, with Orders to the latter, to depoſe Cardinal *Hildebrand*, if they did not demand of him the Confirmation of his Election.

BUT the Pope, not being willing to embroil Affairs, *mal a propos*, received the Ambaſſador very civilly, proteſting that he never deſired the Papacy, but that the *Romans* had oblig'd him to accept that Honour; to which nevertheleſs he did not agree, but on Condition of being rais'd to it with Conſent and Approbation of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire; for which Reaſon he had deferr'd his Coronation, and would not have that Ceremony perform'd till he was confirm'd by his Imperial

Imperial Majeſty. The Emperor, being inform'd of theſe Excuſes, was ſatisfy'd, and ſent immediately the Confirmation of the Pope's Election to his Ambaſſador, after which *Gregory* was crown'd. HENRY IV.

The Pope excommunicates ſeveral Members of the Empire.

THE Pope being thus ſettled in St. *Peter's* Chair, and acknowledg'd by all the World, began his Pontificate by a great Number of Excommunications, which he iſſued out againſt the *German* Princes and States, both Secular and Eccleſiaſtick, particularly againſt the Arch-Biſhops of *Saltzbourg* and *Bremen*, and the Biſhops of *Bamberg*, *Spires*, and *Strasburgh*, becauſe they were either married, or liv'd with Concubines. Beſides this, he excommunicated every Eccleſiaſtick who ſhould receive his Inveſtiture of a Layman, and every Layman who ſhould conferr it; but theſe firſt Steps, tho' vigorous, were only to make an Eſſay of the Thunder of the holy See: For he thought, to ſignalize himſelf, he muſt level it at the Heads of Sovereigns. With this Intent he ſent four Legates into *Germany* to officiate at a Council, which was not held, thro' the Obſtacles laid in the Way by the Biſhops; nevertheleſs the Legates treated *Henry* (as excommunicated) till he juſtify'd himſelf of the Crime of Simony, wherewith he was charg'd before the former Pope.

The Pope excites Revolts againſt the Emperor.

TO carry his Point yet further, againſt the Emperor, *Gregory* (according to ſome Authors) inſinuated it into the Minds of the *Saxons* to ſend Ambaſſadors to *Rome*, with Complaints of the Wrong ſuffer'd by the Treaty, they were forced to conclude with *Henry*; and to beg the Pope earneſtly to depoſe him, as having render'd himſelf unworthy of his Dignity by his Vices and Miſconduct.

'TWAS in Conſequence of theſe Articles that *Gregory*,

HENRY IV.

1076. *The Pope cites the Emperor to* Rome, *and the Emperor degrades the Pope in a Diet.*

Gregory, being falſly perſuaded of his having a Right to elect and depoſe Emperors, and reſolving not to accept of the ſame Reaſons as had been given his Predeceſſor, whoſe Summons had been condemn'd by the Emperor, ſent again Legates to the Diet at *Goſlar*, which was call'd on Account of the *Saxon* Princes who were taken Priſoners at the laſt Battle. Theſe Legates, and the *Nuntio*, acording to the Pope's Orders, began firſt by complaining, that the Emperor had given the Inveſtiture of ſome Biſhopricks, contrary to the Prohibition of the Court of *Rome*, and that he had not caus'd the Decrees of the laſt Council againſt theſe Inveſtitures, Simony, and the Incontinency of the Clergy, to be publiſh'd. In the ſecond Place, they demanded the Enlargement of the Princes who were Priſoners, and that the Archbiſhops, who were excommunicated, ſhould be depriv'd of their Dignities and Poſſeſſions; and laſtly, that the Emperor ſhould appear at *Rome* on *Shrove-Sunday*, there to anſwer the Accuſations laid to his Charge, adding, that he ſhould be excommunicated, and depoſed, if he did not pay due Obedience to the Church.

THE Emperor was the more ſenſibly touch'd at this Attempt of *Gregory*'s, becauſe eſteeming the Pope and *Roman* People his Vaſſals, and dependent on the Empire, 'twas an Incroachment upon the Imperial Dignity: Accordingly the Legates were ſent back after a Manner not very obliging, and he immediately ſummon'd the Eccleſiaſtical Princes, and other Prelates, to *Worms*. Thither they came, in great Numbers; and, having deliberated on theſe Attempts, till then unheard of, concluded, that *Gregory* ought only to be conſidered as a Man who had uſurped the holy See by artful and indirect

direct Means, infected the Church with many Abuſes and Novelties, and ſwerv'd from his Duty, by ſeveral ſcandalous Outrages; wherefore the Emperor, by Virtue of his Sovereign Authority, according to the Example of his Predeceſſors, ought to deprive him of the Popedom, and ſettle another Pontif in his Place. HENRY IV.

AGREEABLY to this Reſolution, the Emperor ſent an Ambaſſador to *Rome*, who, by Letters to the Pope, and ſeveral Writings to the Publick, inform'd them, not only of the Reaſons that induc'd the general Aſſembly of *German* Biſhops to pronounce *Gregory* unworthy and incapable of the Papacy, but declared, that the Emperor depriv'd him of that Dignity, diſcharging the *Romans*, and all others at the ſame Time, from the Obedience they ow'd him in that Quality.

THE Pope, being exaſperated at this Embaſſy and theſe Writings, immediately ſummon'd a Council at *Rome*, whereat 110 Biſhops were preſent, who, having conſulted upon the Emperor's Proceedings, concluded, that the Pope ought to deprive him of the Crown, declare the Princes and Members of the Empire diſcharged from the Oath they had taken to him, and prohibit their having any manner of Communication with him, which the Pope executed, excommunicating the Emperor and his Adherents. This is the firſt Pontif who ever durſt excommunicate his Sovereign, and this is the firſt Step the Popes took, in the Perſon of *Gregory* VII, to ſhake off the Yoke of the Emperors, and make themſelves abſolute; for the Popes, having maintain'd themſelves ever ſince in this Independence, have held no more of the Empire.

The Emperor, being depos'd by the Pope, ſtoops to great Indignities, to ſatisfy him.

THIS Sentence fill'd Chriſtendom with Troubles and Diviſions, and *Germany* with long and bloody

HENRY IV.

bloody Wars; whereby the Emperor was reduced to ſuch an Extremity, that ſeeing almoſt all the Princes of the Empire riſe in Arms againſt him, by the Pope's Inſtigation, and not being able to ſubmit to the unjuſt, unworthy Conditions propos'd him, he thought his beſt way would be to endeavour to appeaſe the Pope's Anger by an Action of ſingular Humility, imagining that the Spiritualities only were in Queſtion. Hereupon he reſolv'd to go into *Italy* as a Penitent, and undertook this Journey in *December*, 1076, with his Wife, and Son *Conrad*, then but two Years old, ſuffering great Fatigues and Inconveniencies in the Journey.

BEING arriv'd at *Canoſſa*, an Imperial Town, belonging to *Godfrey* and *Matilda*, where the Pope was, the Emperor was let in at the firſt Gate, and, ſhutting him cloſe within whilſt all his Retinue were left waiting without, they gave him to underſtand between the two Gates, that he muſt expect no Pardon, unleſs he would faſt for three Days, ſtand each Day till Evening barefoot in the Snow, and after that Pennance, ask Forgiveneſs of the Pope; to all which he ſubmitted, and the Pope received him on the fourth Day, (*June* 25, 1077) gave him Abſolution, and made an Accommodation with him. But 'tis incredible how infinitely an Agreement, ſo extraordinary and outragious, diſpleas'd the *Italian* Princes, they could neither bear the Pope's Arrogance, nor the Emperor's exceſſive Meanneſs.

THAT Prince, being even enraged at his own Weakneſs, which had reduced him to ſuch a violent Neceſſity, came over to the Sentiments of the Princes, States, and Cities of *Italy*; pacifying them to the utmoſt of his Power, giving

ing them to underſtand the ſtrange Extremity whereunto he was reduced; and, to convince them how ſenſible he was of this Outrage, declared himſelf the Pope's mortal Enemy.

The Pope imbroils Affairs again, and induces the Princes of the Empire to chooſe another Emperor.

THE Pope, on the other hand, ſummoning all his former Animoſity, left no Stone unturn'd to diſturb the Affairs of *Germany*, and he incens'd the Minds of the Princes ſo effectually for his Revenge, that he induced them unanimouſly to conſent to ruin the Emperor. Hereupon, making the Excommunication iſſued againſt him their Pretence, they deprived him of the Sovereign Dignity at *Forſcheim*, electing *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, in his Place, and crowning him at *Mentz* the ſecond of *March* following.

THE Emperor, being inform'd of what was tranſacted in *Germany*, ſet out from *Italy* with all Expedition, and, being there arriv'd, took the Field immediately with what Troops he could gather together: Herewith he attack'd *Rodolphus*, and defeated him near *Wirtzbourg*, on the firſt of *July*, the ſame Year, whence the Duke made his Eſcape. The Year following, 1078, *Henry* and *Rodolphus* each again ſet another Army on foot, and giving Battle on the ſeventh of *Auguſt*, fought with great Obſtinacy. At laſt the Reſolution of *Henry*'s Troops made thoſe of *Rodolphus* give Ground, and, being routed a ſecond Time, *Rodolphus* was again oblig'd to ſave himſelf by Flight. 1078

THE Emperor after this made himſelf Maſter of the Dukedom of *Suabia*, whence he drove out *Bertold*, Son-in-Law to *Rodolphus*, who defended that Country, when, having Advice that the Partiſans of *Rodolphus* were again aſſembling together in *Saxony*, he march'd thither at the head of 60,000 Men, notwithſtanding the Rigour of the Winter, and meeting the Rebels

A famous Battle between the two Rivals.

HENRY IV.

near *Flatersheim*, engaged them about the End of *January*, 1079, and put them to the rout. But as the Biſhops, who had elected *Rodolphus*, bent their Mind inceſſantly upon croſſing *Henry*'s Succeſs, they bethought themſelves of ſolliciting the Pope to excommunicate him once more; and that Pontif, being but too well inclin'd to enter into their Sentiments, thunder'd out a ſecond Sentence of Excommunication againſt him in *March* 1080, whereby he alſo depriv'd him of all Authority, and the Imperial Dignity; confirming at the ſame Time the Election of *Rodolphus*, and ſending him a Crown with theſe Words:

1079. Henry *again excommunicated.*

1080

Petra dedit Petro, Petrus Diadema Rodolpho.

THE Emperor, on the other hand, conſidering ſeriouſly that the Intrigues of *Rome* was the Source of all the Diſorders and Misfortunes wherein Chriſtendom was involv'd, bent all his Thoughts on Expedients to deliver it from this Oppreſſion. With this View he aſſembled the Biſhops of *Germany* at *Mentz*, to be inform'd by them, Whether the Pope had the Power to deprive an Emperor of his Crown? and, Whether the Emperor had not a Right, both in Reaſon and Juſtice, to depoſe the Pope, *Hildebrand*, and nominate another in his ſtead? Nineteen Biſhops, who compos'd this Diet, having deliberated upon this Propoſition, thought it proper likewiſe to ask the Opinion of other Prelates, and to call an Aſſembly at *Brixen* for that Purpoſe. Hereupon *Henry* appointed the Month of *June*, and thirty Biſhops, both of *Germany* and *Italy*, appear'd at this National Council, where he, in Imitation of his Predeceſſors, perform'd the Office of Preſident. Here 'twas unanimouſly concluded, That the Pope having no Power over the

the Emperor, he could not deprive him of the Empire; but that, on the contrary, the Emperor, having a Right to depoſe the Pope for lawful Reaſons, might with Juſtice deprive *Gregory* of that Dignity, ſince he had render'd himſelf unworthy thereof, both by his ill Conduct, and the Outrages he had committed. Upon this Foundation theſe Prelates elected Cardinal *Wiberti*, whom others call *Guibert*, or *Gilbert*, Archbiſhop of *Ravenna*, a Man of Virtue and Merit, in the Room of *Hildebrand*, who took the Name of *Clement* III. They alſo beg'd the Emperor to prepare to march into *Italy*, and put this Decree in Execution; which he promis'd to do. But before he undertook this Expedition, he was oblig'd to gather all his Forces, to render his Rival's new Attempts, to re-eſtabliſh his Affairs, fruitleſs: For *Rodolphus* had already levied a Body of Troops in *Saxony*. But *Henry*, that he might not give him Time to make any Progreſs, march'd with all Speed that Way, and the two Armies meeting near *Mersbourg* on the 8th of *October*, fought with great Courage, inſomuch that *Rodolphus*'s Men ſeem'd to have ſome Advantage; but they did not purſue it. For the News being ſpread that *Rodolphus*, (as was really true) had his right Hand cut off by *Godfrey* of *Bulloign*, Duke of *Lorrain*, who ſerv'd the true Emperor, (and ſeem'd, as it were, to be born for the Extirpation of Rebels) entirely diſcourag'd them. *Rodolphus*, finding himſelf very ill, ordering his Hand to be brought to him, ſpoke thus to the Princes and Officers who were preſent: *This is the Hand wherewith I took the Oath of Allegiance to* Henry *my Sovereign, which I have violated by Order of the Court of* Rome, *and at the Deſire of ſome Biſhops, to aſpire by Perjury to an Honour not my due*; and, having

HENRY IV.

HENRY IV.

utter'd theſe Words, with great Signs of Repentance, he expired. He was buried with great Pomp at *Mersbourg* in *Saxony*, and they even engrav'd a Crown, with the other Enſigns of Royalty, on a Braſs Plate on his Tomb, on which the *Saxons*, apprehending that *Henry* might have ſome Reſentment againſt them, would have taken away all theſe Marks of Honour; but the Emperor order'd them to be let alone; adding, that he wiſh'd all his Enemies were as magnificently interred, that the Empire and himſelf might breath a little, and recover their Force, which had been weaken'd by the Effuſion of ſo much Blood.

Henry's good Senſe.

HENRY being thus delivered from his Rival, left no Stone unturn'd to diſperſe entirely the Party of the confederate Rebels; which he effected in ſome Meaſure; and, having ſettled the Affairs of *Germany* in as good Order as poſſible, prepared for the Expedition he had promiſed to make into *Italy*, to eſtabliſh *Clement* in St. *Peter*'s See. He ſet out thither in the beginning of the Year 1081, attended by *Clement*, and march'd up to the Gates of *Rome* without meeting any Reſiſtance; but he found more Difficulty in entering the City, for he was forced to attack it in Form, and the Siege laſted above two Years and a half. However, at laſt he gain'd his End in *Lent*, 1084, and as he took it by Storm, 'twas not without great Difficulty he ſaved it from Plunder; nevertheleſs he did ſecure it, in Conſideration of a Sum of Money which the People offered, wherewith he oblig'd the Soldiers to be contented.

1081.

1084.

GREGORY, apprehending above all Things to fall into the Emperor's Hands, ſav'd himſelf in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, which was very well fortify'd, and gave his Friends Time to come

come to his Aſſiſtance; and, whilſt he was defending himſelf there, the Emperor publiſh'd the Reaſons that had induced him to put Cardinal *Wiberti*, or *Clement* III, in the Place of *Gregory*; and the *Romans*, having acquieſced with them, had him crown'd with all the uſual Ceremonies in St. *Peter*'s Church; which done, *Clement*, by way of Retaliation, crown'd and anointed the Emperor the *Eaſter-Day* following, in the Preſence, and with the Applauſe, of the *Roman* Senate and People, who took an Oath of Allegiance to him. HENRY IV.

IN the mean Time, they ſtill continued their Attacks upon the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*; but ſome Affairs calling the Emperor into *Lombardy*, it happen'd, that, during his Stay there, *Guichard*, Duke of *Apulia*, coming to *Gregory*'s Aſſiſtance, found means to deliver him from the Caſtle, and have him conducted to *Salerno*, where he ended his Days the Year following. But the Troubles that aroſe in *Germany* did not permit *Henry* to taſte the Joy he might have hop'd from the happy Succeſs of his *Italian* Expedition.

THE *Saxons*, who were naturally ſeditious, and always ſtirr'd up by the Emperor's Enemies, taking Advantage of his Abſence, had again began to embroil Affairs; they had united Intereſts and Councils with the other Rebel-Princes; and having all, by *Gregory*'s Inſtigation, elected Count *Herman* of *Luxembourg* King of the *Romans* the Year before, and crown'd him at *Mentz* by the Archbiſhop *Sigefrid*, they made Incurſions into *Franconia*, and waged War with ſuch as had aſſiſted the Emperor againſt them. This oblig'd *Henry* to leave *Italy*, and haſten his return into *Germany*; where, being inform'd that ſeveral Things, contrary to his Intereſt, had paſs'd in ſome private Aſſemblies of Pre- *New Inſurrections in* Saxony *againſt the Emperor, with the Election of a King of the* Romans.

HENRY IV.

lates, in Conſequence of the Excommunications thunder'd againſt him and his Adherents by *Gregory*, he appointed a general Aſſembly at *Mentz*, in *February*, 1088, where, by the common Conſent of the *Italian*, *German*, and *French* Biſhops and Prelates who aſſiſted thereat, all *Gregory*'s Acts were repealed, and thoſe of the Emperor againſt *Gregory* approv'd and confirm'd. The Biſhops, who had eſpous'd the Rebels Cauſe, were alſo depriv'd of their Benefices, as was Count *Herman* of the Title of King of the *Romans*, which had been conferr'd on him by the Rebels.

1086. SOME Days after the breaking up of this Aſſembly, they receiv'd News that Pope *Gregory* died at *Salerno* the twenty fourth of *May*; and that, without making any Mention of *Clement* III, they would have rais'd Cardinal *Didier*, Abbot of Mount *Caſſin*, who was then at *Rome*, to the holy See; but that he was fled to his Abbey, which occaſion'd the deferring his Election to the *Witſunday* following, 1086. In the mean while, the Emperor, being inform'd that *Herman*, tho' depos'd, us'd his utmoſt Efforts to maintain himſelf in his aſſumed Title, purſued, and obliged him to forſake all, and ſeek Refuge in *Saxony*; whereupon the Rebels elected *Egbert*, Marquis of *Thuringia*, King of the *Romans*, in his Place, who, like Count *Herman*, was forced to yield to the victorious Arms of the Emperor, and in the End had no better Fortune; for as *Herman*, two Years after his Depoſition, was 1089. kill'd by a Stone which a Woman tumbled upon his Head from the Top of a Tower, as he was paſſing thro' a Town; ſo *Egbert*, after the Loſs of a Battle againſt the Emperor in 1090, making his Eſcape to a Mill, was kill'd there by

one

one of *Henry*'s Friends, or, as others ſay, by his Guards. HENRY IV.

WHILST the Emperor was thus employ'd in getting rid of his two Competitors, his other Enemies did not fail to create him new Diſturbances in *Italy*, and took care that the Popes, who had ſucceeded *Gregory* VII, ſhould nouriſh the ſame Hatred againſt him. Their Negotiations were of no great Conſequence to the Emperor during the Pontificate of *Victor* III, who had enjoy'd the holy See but about ten Months after *Gregory*; but they work'd their deſired Effect upon *Urban* II, Succeſſor to *Victor*, he being well convinced, that his Election, having been made without the Emperor's Knowledge, as well as that of his Predeceſſor, was not agreeable to him. This Pope had alſo been excited againſt *Henry*, not only by *Matilda* Counteſs of *Tuſcany*, who was again married above a Year to *Guelpho* Duke of *Bavaria*, but alſo by the *Normans*, and all taking Advantage of the Employment the Emperor found in *Germany*, had enticed away a good Part of *Italy* from their Obedience to him. 1090.

THE Emperor, having Advice of theſe ſecret Practices, reſolved to paſs over into *Italy* with all his Troops; and as ſoon as he had croſs'd the *Alps*, re-took all the Cities on this ſide the *Po*; amongſt the reſt, *Mantua*, wherein his Forces enter'd on *Eaſter-Eve*, after a Siege of twelve Months. After this, he reduced almoſt all the reſt of *Lombardy*, notwithſtanding the Counteſs *Matilda* made a very vigorous Defence, not fearing in Perſon to oppoſe the Emperor inceſſantly at the Head of her Troops. The *Romans* ſeeing *Henry*'s Progreſs, who always maintain'd the Anti-Pope *Clement*, took hold (in Order to oblige him,) of this Occaſion, and of 1091.

HENRY IV.

Urban's Abſence, to recall *Clement* to *Rome*, where he remained ſome time; which forced *Urban* to renew his Excommunications againſt *Clement* and *Henry*.

IN the mean while, *Conrad*, the Emperor's eldeſt Son, being enrag'd at ſome ſharp Words ſpoken to him by his Father, and likewiſe gain'd over by *Matilda* and the *Normans*, revolted againſt him; and having in his Rebellion
1093. carried over with him the City of *Milan*, and ſeveral other Towns in *Lombardy*, aſſum'd the Title of King of *Italy*. This was by the Conſent of Pope *Urban*, Duke *Guelpho*, *Matilda*, and ſeveral other Dukes and Noblemen, and he was crown'd at *Milan* by *Anſelm*, who was Archbiſhop thereof. Some time after he mar-
1095. ried the Daughter of *Roger* King of *Sicily*, and puſh'd his Revolt ſo far, that he enticed moſt part of the Cities and Noblemen from their Allegiance to the Emperor, who by this means was reduced to fortify himſelf in ſome ſtrong Places, to get time to re-eſtabliſh his Affairs. He thought he had found a favourable Opportunity during Pope *Urban*'s Journey into *France*, where he held the famous Council of *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, which was opened during the Octave of St. *Martin*, wherein two conſiderable Things were tranſacted. The firſt was the Excommunication of King *Philip* I. of *France*, for having put away his lawful Conſort, and married one of his Relations, nam'd *Bertrade*, who had left her Husband; and the ſecond was, the Reſolution of the *Croiſade* for the Aſſiſtance of the Chriſtians in the *Levant*, and the Recovery of the Holy Land. But this Abſence of *Urban*'s, and the Practices of *Clement*, who had remained in the mean while at *Rome*, with the Efforts of ſeveral Noblemen in

favour

favour of the Emperor, were of no great Service to him, *Conrad*'s Party, being ſtrengthen'd by the Alliance of the King of *Sicily*, and *Urban*'s Return, becoming ſo powerful a little after, that *Henry*, giving over all hopes of reducing him by Force, or otherwiſe, reſolv'd to return into *Germany*. HENRY IV. 1097.

THE Emperor had not been long there before he diſcovered how much he reſented his Son's undutiful Behaviour; for he no ſooner arriv'd at *Cologn*, where he had aſſembled divers Princes of the Empire, but he caus'd *Conrad* to be put to the Ban of the Empire, and his ſecond Son *Henry* declared King of the *Romans*, having him crown'd at *Aix la Chapelle*, after taking an Oath, that, during his Life, he ſhould not intermeddle with the Government of the Empire without his Allowance. Then he aſſign'd him the City of *Ratisbon* for the Reſidence of his Court; and that Prince going thither, and living peaceably according to his Father's Intention, it ſeemed as if Things, being thus ſettled, would have confirm'd the Peace they had begun to enjoy in *Germany*, ſince the Death of the Head Rebels, who had ended their Lives during his laſt Expedition to *Italy*. People were the more perſuaded of this, in that the *Saxons* and *Bavarians* were alſo agreed with the Emperor; and thus they might have promis'd themſelves a firm and laſting Peace on all Sides. But his application to the rendering all Things more ſtable, and the reeſtabliſhing good Order and Juſtice in divers Places, whence the Licence of former Wars had baniſh'd them, inſtead of turning to his Glory, was, by a very fantaſtical effect of Fortune, the Cauſe of the Confuſion whereinto he fell in the laſt Years of his Life. He had reſolved 1099.

HENRY IV.

volved to correct ſome conſiderable Diſorders that had happen'd at *Mentz*, at which the Archbiſhop, who was concerned therein, took alarm; and though the Emperor, knowing he cou'd not puniſh the Accomplices without comprehending him in the Number, had put a ſtop to the Proceedings, in conſideration of him; the Archbiſhop, inſtead of acknowledging *Henry*'s Diſcretion and Goodneſs herein, fled to *Thuringia*, where he no ſooner arriv'd but he declar'd for the contrary Party, which had begun to ſtir at the Sollicitation of *Gebehard*, Biſhop of *Conſtance*, to whom Pope *Paſchal* II, who had ſucceeded *Urban* ever ſince the *Auguſt* before, had ſent the Commiſſion of Legate of *Germany*, to maintain the Pretenſions of the Court of *Rome*, with regard to the Church, againſt thoſe of *Henry*. What chagreen'd the Emperor moſt, was the continual Attempts of the Church of *Rome*, with reſpect to the Election of Popes, three of whom had been made ſucceſſively without his Allowance; this it was that rendered him likewiſe ſo obſtinate; for, after *Clement*'s Death, which happened the Year following, he caus'd three other Anti-Popes, *Albert*, *Theodorick* and *Magniulphus*, to be elected, who ſucceeded to one another, to preſerve in ſome meaſure the Rights of the Empire. But this only ſerv'd to confirm the true Popes in the Power they had uſurp'd; for two of theſe Anti-Popes were confined in Cloiſters, and the third died ſuddenly, leaving *Paſchal* II at laſt peaceable Poſſeſſor of the Holy See.

1100.

NEVERTHELESS this Pontif, not to degenerate from the Vigour of his Predeceſſors, having cited the Emperor in a Council held at *Rome*, in the beginning of *Lent*, *A. D.* 1102, and he neither appearing, nor ſending Ambaſſadors, excom-

1102.

excommunicated him again, on account of the Intruſion of the Anti-Popes; confirming at the ſame time all that had been done againſt him by *Gregory* and *Urban*, and accordingly he immediately felt the Effect of this Thunder: For, by the Inſurrection of the Party that oppos'd him in *Germany*, they engaged his own Son in the Revolt, wherein he plunged himſelf ſo deeply, that, forgetting both his Duty and his Oath, he made himſelf Head of the Party. HENRY IV.

HIS Pretence was, that moſt part of *Germany* refuſing any longer to acknowledge the Emperor, on account of the laſt Excommunication iſſued againſt him, he was obliged to take the Reins of the Empire, in order to obviate all the Diſorders that this Diviſion might produce, and prevent the diſmembring of this great Body, which might enſue in time. He even palliated this Perfidy under Colour of a Zeal for Religion, and reſpect for the Pope; pretending to believe thoſe Laws preferable to the Law of Nature, and conſequently refuſing to acknowledge *Henry* for his Father, till he ſhould be abſolved from his Excommunication. Thus the Father's Remonſtrances had no Influence upon the Son's Mind, and Things proceeded ſo far, that they took Arms againſt each other, and met at *Ratisbon*; but the two Armies only skirmiſh'd; for the Emperor finding himſelf too weak, judg'd it not proper to hazard a Battle, and retired towards the Duke of *Bohemia*. In the mean while King *Henry* bent his Thoughts wholly upon ſeizing the City of *Spires*, where his Father's Treaſure was repoſited; and accordingly march'd with his Army from *Wirtzbourg* to *Spires*, whereof he made himſelf Maſter, as well as of its Riches. 1105.

THE

HENRY IV.

THE young Prince, being puff'd up with this Succeſs, and reſolving to take advantage of his favourable Fortune, conven'd an Aſſembly of the Princes to meet at *Mentz*, on the firſt Day of the Year 1106, where the Emperor prepared to come alſo, to which end he rais'd a powerful Army, with intent to diſpute his Right publickly with his Son. But this impious Rebel oppos'd Stratagem to Force, or, to ſpeak more properly, knowing his Father to be extreamly tender of him, took him by his blind Side, and, ſeeing that the Safety of his Affairs depended upon the preventing him, reſolved, by the advice of his Friends, to meet him at *Coblentz*, and there pretend Repentance. On his firſt arrival there, he went and threw himſelf at his Feet, asking Pardon for his Crime, and excuſing his ſuffering himſelf to be over-reach'd by evil Councils. Hereupon the Emperor, relenting, embraced him, and forgave all that was paſs'd; after which firſt Step, the Prince, puſhing home his Deceit, advis'd him to go to *Mentz* with a ſmall Retinue, that he might not give Umbrage to the Princes of the Empire; which Council he only gave to diſperſe his Father's Army, and ſend home a Number of Perſons of Quality who had follow'd him: The Emperor, not miſtruſting his Son, followed this Advice, and contented himſelf with three hundred Horſe for them both.

1106.

The Son's pretended Repentance reduces the Father to the laſt Extremity.

THESE two Princes, and the whole Court, made great Rejoycings all that Night, and, Things being well concerted, ſet out from *Coblentz*, and arrived at *Bingen* the *Friday* before *Chriſtmas*; where the Prince again repreſented to the Emperor, that, being excommunicated, it was to be fear'd, if he enter'd *Mentz*, the Archbiſhop would not releaſe him again; where-

HENRY IV.

wherefore it would be ſafer to ſpend the Holidays at *Bingen* whilſt he would go to *Mentz*, open the Diet, negotiate his Reconciliation with the Princes, and accommodate every Thing, that he might come thither in Safety. The Emperor again followed this Advice, whereupon the Prince confined him in a Chamber, where he left him Priſoner with three Perſons only, and departed, without having any regard either to the Reſpect he ow'd him, the Word he had given, or the Oath he had taken.

To put the finiſhing Stroke to this Intrigue, the Pope's Legates, at the beginning of the Diet, renewed the Excommunications heretofore thundered againſt the Emperor; and the Aſſembly at the ſame time, with one Conſent, deprived him of the Imperial Dignity, inveſting *Henry* his Son therewith, and proclaiming him Emperor. This done, the Archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*, with the Biſhop of *Worms*, were ſent to *Bingen*, to inform the Father of this News, and demand of him the Crown, and other Imperial Ornaments.

The Emperor depos'd.

HEREUPON the Emperor refus'd to deliver them, maintaining that he had been condemn'd unjuſtly and unheard; but all his Reaſons did not avail, and the Deputies, inſiſting upon their Commiſſion to make him deliver them, and even threatening to uſe means that would not be agreeable to him; the Emperor withdrew into his Chamber, cloathed himſelf in his Robes and Ornaments, returned to them, and, ſitting down in his Chair, ſpoke to this Effect: *Gentlemen, Theſe are the Enſigns of Royalty wherewith* GOD, *and the Princes of the Empire, unanimouſly inveſted me; I ought to believe that you will not attempt to ſtrip me of them; nevertheleſs*

if

HENRY IV.

if you neither fear the Anger nor Puniſhment of GOD, *nor the eternal Infamy of this Injury, you may lay your Hands upon your Sovereign, we are not in a Condition to defend our ſelves againſt Violence.*

ALTHO' the Emperor's Diſcourſe touch'd the Deputies very ſenſibly, they nevertheleſs approach'd that Prince, and, taking away the Crown, drew him from his Chair, and ſtripp'd him of all his Royal Robes, imagining that the Pope had ſufficiently diſcharged them of their Oath of Allegiance: The Emperor, during this Outrage, addreſſing himſelf to God in theſe Words:

ALmighty GOD, *the* GOD *of Vengeance! Thou canſt, if Thou pleaſeſt, avenge this Outrage. I own I have ſinned, and deſerved this Diſgrace by the Debaucheries of my Youth; but, Great and Juſt* GOD! *Thou knoweſt very well how to puniſh the Crime they commit againſt my Perſon, and their Violation of their Oath of Allegiance!*

THIS done, the Ambaſſadors return'd to *Mentz*, and delivered the Ornaments into the Hands of the new Emperor and the Princes; whereupon the Succeſs of this Aſſembly having been ſo favourable to young *Henry*, there remained nothing more but to excuſe the Violence that had been exercis'd againſt his Father, in having caus'd him to be condemn'd unheard. To clear himſelf of this Imputation, he bethought himſelf of aſſembling his greateſt Confidents among the Princes at *Ingelheim*, in order to oblige the Emperor himſelf to abandon the Empire voluntarily. There 'twas (as 'tis reported) that this Prince, looking on himſelf as a dead Man, ask'd pardon of all whom he might have offended; after which he fell at the Feet of the Pope's Legate, who was with them,

them, and beg'd him to abſolve him of his Excommunication. But the Legate refus'd it, ſaying, that none but the Pope could give him that Abſolution; which ſhewed plainly that was not the Reaſon of his being depos'd; accordingly they left him in Confinement alone in this City, leſt he ſhould go and demand it of the Pope. HENRY IV.

NEVER was Patience put to a ſeverer Tryal than his; for young *Henry*'s Impiety went ſo far that, after taking from him his Treaſures at *Spires* the former Year, and ſtripping him of all he had in the World, he reduced him to ſuch a degree of Poverty, that he often wanted Bread. Thus, from a very potent Prince, he became the moſt miſerable of all Mankind: An aſtoniſhing Example of the Inconſtancy of Fortune, and the Inſtability of worldly Greatneſs. This unhappy Prince, being in this Neceſſity, conjured *Gerald*, whom he had made Biſhop of *Spires*, to give him a Canonicate, to enable him to ſubſiſt, as being Scholar ſufficient to perform that Office, and believing himſelf entitled to demand that Benefice, as his Anceſtors and himſelf had founded and built the Cathedral Church. This the Biſhop refus'd him, on Pretence that he durſt not do it without the Pope's Leave; whereupon the Emperor, ſurpriz'd at this Denial, could not refrain Tears, but ſaid ſighing to thoſe about him: *Dear Friends! at leaſt have you Compaſſion on me; for the Hand of the* LORD *has touch'd me, and lies very heavy upon me.* *The Incredible Poverty of the Emperor, who is deſpis'd by all the World.*

ONE cannot too much admire the ſurprizing Effects of GOD's Providence in this Prince, who ſeems to have been reſerv'd for a Leſſon to Sovereigns. For, beſides an infinite Number of Dangers he had undergone in War, his Enemies

HENRY IV.

mies at *Rome* in 1084, after the depoſing of *Gregory* VII, had recourſe to all manner of Stratagems to deprive him of Life. One, amongſt the reſt, had placed a large Stone upon a Beam in the great Church, juſt over the Spot where the Emperor us'd to kneel at his Devotions, with a Reſolution to let it fall upon that Prince's Head; but the very Moment that he was going to execute this execrable Deſign, he came to the Ground himſelf with the Stone, and was kill'd before *Henry*'s Face, without doing him any Hurt. The Body of this Wretch was faſten'd to a Wheel, and drawn for three Days thro' the Streets of *Rome*; nevertheleſs the Emperor, touch'd with the Misfortune of the Reprobate, and out of a Principle of Charity, order'd his Body to be buried.

HENRY then having experienced all the Inhumanity in the Power of Fortune, even to the ſeeing himſelf deſpoil'd of all, made a Priſoner, abandon'd by his Sons, Relations, and thoſe he had rais'd and enrich'd in *Germany*, 'tis evident that all theſe Diſgraces were more than ſufficient to have made him ſink under them. Nevertheleſs he was not diſcouraged, and at the very Time when he was thought overwhelm'd and cruſh'd, recovered himſelf, and ſhewed what he was. In ſhort, eſcaping from his Guards, he went down the *Rhine* to *Cologn*, where he was receiv'd and acknowledged for lawful Emperor; thence he paſſed on to the *Low Countries*; where his Friends had rais'd a good Body of Forces to re-eſtabliſh him; and, ſtopping at *Liege*, wrote Circular Letters to all the Chriſtian Princes, to induce them to intereſt themſelves in his Diſgrace: He even wrote to the Pope, to let him know that he was ready to be reconciled to him, provided it could be done without

without any Prejudice to his Crown, which ſhews, that as much as he was humbled, his Soul was incapable of an unworthy Action; but at laſt Providence, having deſtin'd him to die as unfortunate as he had liv'd, took him out of the World at *Liege*, on the ſeventh of *Auguſt* 1106 at the Age of fifty ſix Years. The *Liegiois* made him a magnificent Funeral, and buried him in the Cathedral; but young *Henry*, who purſued his Father every where, coming before the City, with a Reſolution to be revenged of them for daring to give him Refuge, they were obliged, in order to make their Peace, to dig up the Emperor's Body by his Sons Command, and deliver it to him. This done, it was carried to *Spires*, where it remain'd five Years without Sepulture, on account of his Excommunication. Thus he underwent his wretched Deſtiny, and his Son's Inhumanity even after Death.

HENRY IV.

He dies, is buried, dug up, without Sepulture.

NEVERTHELESS, it muſt be own'd, that this Prince was endued with very great Qualities; or, to uſe the common Phraſe, that he was the greateſt Prince the Earth ever bore. He had hardly attain'd the Age of twelve Years, but he fought in Perſon againſt the *Hungarians*; and had likewiſe very bloody Wars, during his Reign, with the *Saxons*, his Subjects; and both againſt them, and his other Enemies, had himſelf commanded his Armies in ſixty two Battles, in almoſt all which he came off with Victory; whence it has been ſaid, that in this Point he had not only exceeded *Julius Cæſar*, and all the other Emperors, but even all the Monarchs in the Univerſe. He was very charitable, and ſenſible of the Miſery of the Neceſſitous, having uſually the Blind, the Lame, the Wounded and the Sick at his Table, and making them

His Wars, and Battles.

His Charity, Wiſdom, and Juſtice.

HENRY IV.

lie in his own Chamber, that he might himſelf take care of them. He endeavour'd to procure all the Eaſe in his Power for his Subjects, even to the giving them often Part of his Revenues. Nor was he leſs Praiſe-worthy for his Wiſdom and Capacity in the Adminiſtration of Affairs, having long uſed the Councils of the Princes and States of the Empire, hearing their Advice with Leiſure and Attention, and taking ſuch Reſolutions as were prudent, advantagious to the State, and conformable to Equity.

His Perſonal Qualities.

HIS fine Shape was agreeable to the Perſon of a Hero, and anſwerable to the Greatneſs of his Soul: He was eloquent, and had a very lively Wit: And as, with all theſe excellent Qualities, he had rendered himſelf very illuſtrious by his Actions, ſo he was at the ſame Time an Example of Fortitude in Adverſity, which generally oppreſſes the Brave. One cannot propoſe a better Pattern for Princes to follow, to teach them to ſuſtain Diſgraces with Courage, and not be puffed up with a Grandeur which may ſometimes degenerate into Beggary. What is not to be imitated in this Picture, is, that this Prince in his Misfortunes, having made it a Maxim to gain Time, as the ſovereign Remedy of the unfortunate, had not ſometimes been careful enough to uſe Means ſuitable to his Dignity, that he might the better put in Practice the Dictates of Prudence that had often been ſo advantagious to him. But he thought, that, provided he had Succeſs, the Glory of the End effaced the Shame of the Means us'd to attain it, which is a great Error.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

HENRY *the Fifth.*

HENRY V, call'd the *Young*, born *A. D.* 1081, having got Poſſeſſion of the Imperial Dignity, after the Manner before mentioned, pretended, at the beginning of his Reign, to favour the Eccleſiaſtical State in all Things, with a View both to pleaſe the Court of *Rome*, and profit by his Father's Misfortunes; neglecting, to this Intent, the Rights and Authority of the Empire, which his Father during his Reign had maintained at the Peril of his Honour, Poſſeſſions, and Life. But after he had acted this Part ſufficiently, and conſidered that the Princes of the *Roman* Party had only made uſe of him for their own Ends, and that their Deſigns and Intentions were quite different from what they had pretended, he reſolv'd to hazard all to maintain the Authority of the Empire, in its Honour and Dignity, as his Predeceſſors had left it; in a Word, he reſolv'd to walk in his Father's Steps, and follow the ſame Path he had before trod.

HENRY V. 1106. Henry V. *profits by his Father's Misfortunes*

HE apply'd himſelf then to take Example by the Conduct of that generous Emperor; but whatever Care he could take, or how prudently ſoever he managed, all his Actions were continually attended with the Curſe he had drawn on himſelf by his Impiety to his Father. GOD himſelf from his firſt Election had ſhown a ter-

HENRY V.

rible Mark of his Juſtice and Anger on him; the Thing happen'd thus: Being at the Diet at *Goſlar A. D.* 1103, there aroſe a dreadful Thunder, which, piercing thro' his Chamber, hurt his right Leg, broke the point of his Sword by his Side, and ſhiver'd his Buckler in Pieces. So ſignal a Warning did not hinder his giving himſelf up to Avarice, and placing more Confidence in earthly, than heavenly Treaſures; whence it happen'd at laſt, that, to amaſs immenſe Riches, he made no Scruple of loading his People with Taxes.

He is ſtruck with Thunder.

He is ſubject to Avarice.

The Pope in a Council, deprives the Emperor of Inveſtitures, and throws himſelf under the King of France's Protection.

TWO Months after the Emperor *Henry* IV his Death, Pope *Paſchal* II call'd a Council at *Guaſtala*, a City on the *Po*, where he renew'd the Decrees of his Predeceſſors againſt the Inveſtitures, which News mortify'd the Emperor very ſenſibly. However, not thinking it proper as yet to oppoſe the Attempts of the Court of *Rome* openly, he invited the Pope into *Germany*, to compoſe their Differences amicably. But *Paſchal*, being appriz'd that the Emperor was not ſatisfy'd with his Conduct, and that he was entirely altered from that very tractable Temper he had before ſhewn to the Popes, dreading a Prince ſo very haughty and rough, durſt not accept of the Offer; but thought it his beſt way on this Occaſion to go into *France*, and demand King *Philip*'s Protection. He travell'd thither immediately, and was very well received at St. *Dennis* by the King, and *Lewis* his Son, who firſt paid him their Reſpects by a Bow to the Ground.

The Pope grants a Conference to the Emperor at Chalons.

THO' this Step of the Pope's diſturb'd the Emperor very much, he took no notice of it, becauſe that, having already but too much Employment in the Empire, he would not embroil himſelf with *France*. Wherefore as he

was

was very politick, by the Mediation of the Moſt Chriſtian King, deſir'd the Pope that he might ſend Ambaſſadors to him, to regulate Affairs in a Conference; which was accordingly appointed at *Chalons* in *Champagne*, whether *Adelbert*, the Emperor's Chancellor, and Chief of the Embaſſy, came with his Colleagues; but the Chancellor would not aſſiſt therein, becauſe the Pope was there in Perſon. He thought it beneath his Maſter's Dignity to give place to the Pope, whom he ſtill eſteem'd as Vaſſal to the Empire; however, the Pope being not willing to conſent to the Inveſtitures, and the Ambaſſadors having Orders not to recede in the leaſt from thence, the Aſſembly broke up abruptly, without deciding any Thing. HENRY V. 1107.

AFTER this Rupture the Pope went to *Troyes*, to hold a Council, as the Emperor did a Diet at *Mentz*; 'twas in the Year 1107. The *German* Biſhops were for the Inveſtitures, and the Fathers of the Council for maintaining the Decrees of the Former Popes, ſaving to the Emperor the Right of coming to *Rome* within a Year, to repreſent his Reaſons to the contrary.

THE Emperor, not being content with this laſt Deciſion, did not think it proper, in Deference to it, to neglect his other Affairs, having a Deſign upon the Conqueſt of *Sileſia*. That Duchy belong'd then to the Crown of *Poland*, and being deſirous to execute his intended Purpoſe, to ſubdue and re-unite it to the Empire, he march'd with as many Troops as he thought neceſſary to make himſelf Maſter thereof, where at firſt he took ſome Cities, and advancing into the Country, laid Siege to *Glogau*; but the Inhabitants thereof defending themſelves with great Courage, he was oblig'd to retire. He next attack'd *Breſlau*; but *Boleſlaus* Duke of *Poland*, *Wages War with the* Poles, *and is defeated.* 1109.

HENRY V.

land, who had uſurp'd the Title of King without the Emperor's Conſent, came to its Relief, and ſome Engagements and Skirmiſhes paſs'd, in all which little Actions the *Poles* had almoſt always the Advantage. But in the laſt, which was a general Battle, the Emperor got the Victory, which obliged the King of *Poland* to ſend an Ambaſſador nam'd *Scorbius* to declare that he was diſpos'd to conclude a Peace.

THE Emperor, who was then at *Prague*, propos'd ſuch Conditions to the Ambaſſador, that he ſoon judged there was no Treaty to be hop'd for, unleſs *Poland* would remain ſubject and tributary to the Empire; and *Henry*, to ſhew him that he was almoſt aſſur'd of the Conqueſt of *Sileſia*, carry'd him to ſee his Exchequer, and the Riches he had in his Treaſury, to reduce it ſoon to his Obedience. Hereupon *Scorbius*, taking immediately a Ring from his Finger, and throwing it into the Treaſury, ſaid in Raillery, but in a very reſpectful Manner: *I will encreaſe it with this Ring*; to which the Emperor, anſwering in the *German* Tongue, *Habdank, I thank you*; the *Poles* have ſince honour'd the Family of *Scorbius*, with the Name of *Habdank*.

THE King of *Poland* being inform'd of the hard Conditions the Emperor would impoſe on him, reſolv'd to try by Arms if Silver would carry the Day from Courage; and the two Armies coming to an Engagement in open Field, a League from *Breſlau*, fought with great Bravery and Obſtinacy from Morning to Night, but at laſt the *Poles* were victorious, and the *Germans*, loſing abundance of Men, were forc'd to quit the Field of Battle.

THIS bad Succeſs made the Emperor deſiſt from his Attempt upon *Sileſia*, and apply himſelf

to

to the greateſt Affair of his whole Reign. This was his Difference with Pope *Paſchal*, who, as has been already obſerv'd, confirmed the Decrees of his Predeceſſors *Gregory* VII, *Victor* III, and *Urban* II, in the Council of *Troyes*, importing, that it belonged to the Popes, and not the Emperors or Kings, to confer the Inveſtitures of Biſhopricks, Abbeys, and other Benefices. HENRY V. *The Sequel of the Difference between the Emperor and the Pope about Inveſtitures.*

THE Emperor, looking upon theſe Decrees as farther and farther Incroachments upon the Rights of the Empire, conven'd a Diet at *Ratisbon*, where the Princes and States, on mature Deliberation, granted what he deſir'd, with the neceſſary Aſſiſtance for maintaining the Rights of his Crown in *Italy*. Hereupon this Prince paſſed the *Alps* that ſame Year with 30,000 Horſe, and near 50,000 Infantry, which he made march by different Ways. Beſides theſe Forces, he had order'd all the Quality and Gentry in *Germany* to follow him, eſpecially ſuch as were well acquainted with the Rights of the Empire, with a Reſolution to defend them either by Negotiation, or Arms. *The Emperor's Expedition into* Italy.

THE Emperor being advanced as far as *Tuſcany*, ſome Cities would have oppos'd his Paſſage, which he eaſily took, and ſpent his *Chriſtmas* at *Florence*. He had before ſent a famous Embaſſy to *Paſchal*, with many Proteſtations of Reſpect to the Holy See; nevertheleſs it did not hinder the Pope's providing for his Defence, and cauſing all the Troops he could raiſe to file off into *Rome*; however, he likewiſe diſpatch'd his Legates to meet him. After which firſt Civilities, 'twas thought proper to come to a better explanation before the Emperor's ent'rance into that City. Several Aſſemblies were held on this Account at *Sutry*,

HENRY V.

where ſome Articles of Agreement were propos'd, and the Treaty was ſign'd by the Commiſſioners on both Sides, to the Satisfaction of the Emperor, to whom they had granted all he demanded, and even more, whereof he acquainted the Princes of the Empire with much Joy. But the Pope complied herewith only to amuſe him, doing at the ſame time all in his Power to ſow Diviſion between the Eccleſiaſtick and Secular Princes of the Empire.

IIII. *February* 12

IN effect, the Day appointed for his ſolemn Entry into *Rome*, which was alſo to be that of his Coronation, as had been agreed, one might ſee the beginning of the Tragedy prepared for him. For if the Imperialiſts ſtirr'd never ſo little from their Ranks, they were plunder'd, abus'd and imprison'd; and though theſe Proceedings offended the Emperor very ſenſibly, he diſſembled in his turn, and continued his Cavalcade. Beſides, before they proceeded to his Coronation, the Treaty that had been made was read in preſence of the Princes of the Empire, and the *Italian* Biſhops and Prelates; which the *Italian* Biſhops oppos'd formally, as the Pope well knew they would, and this Diſpute laſted till Night: Hereupon the Emperor, ſeeing they impos'd on him, order'd the Pontif to be ſeiz'd on, for having violated his Word and Oath. The Soldiers, who were at the Doors, hearing this Order, enter'd tumultuouſly into the Church, and, thinking it was the intention of the Emperor and Princes of the Empire, abus'd the Cardinals and Biſhops; but moſt part of the latter made their eſcape as well as they could; and this 'twas that increaſed the Diſturbance. For ſome of them complaining, and giving the Alarm to the Conſul, and Captains of the Quarters in the City, the Officers put the Soldiers

diers and Citizens under Arms all Night, in which poſture they remained till Morning. Then nothing was to be ſeen but Skirmiſhes; and the Emperor, going to the aſſiſtance of his Men, fought very bravely, expoſing his Perſon but too much, and hazarding his Life; and, to ſay all in one word, the Slaughter, which laſted till Night, was ſo great, and ſo obſtinate, eſpecially on the *Romans* ſide, that the Waters of the *Tiber* were died with the Blood ſpilt. Some Cardinals, ſeveral Biſhops, and ſome principal Citizens, were taken Priſoners, and the Emperor beating down the City Walls in divers Places, marched out three Days after. Then encamping in the open Field near the City, he kept the Pope and the other Priſoners very ſafe during the whole *Lent* and *Eaſter* Holidays, but caus'd his Holineſs always to be ſerved with much reſpect. HENRY V.

The Pope's Reſolution to maintain his Rights.

DURING this time a great many Negotiations and Propoſals were made for their liberty, and to re-eſtabliſh Peace; the Cardinals, Biſhops, and Prelates in particular, ſollicited the Pope to give up the Right of Inveſtiture to the Emperor, and crown him, in order to obtain all their Liberties. But *Paſchal* was in no wiſe diſpoſed to renounce the Advantages and Rights which (as he ſaid) his Predeceſſors had lawfully acquired for the Holy See, and reſolved to ſupport them at the hazard of his Life.

The Agreement made.

THE Emperor, hearing with Grief of the Pope's Obſtinacy, ordered them immediately to behead the reſt of the Priſoners in *Paſchal*'s preſence; and the Execution was upon the point of being perform'd, when his Holineſs, mov'd with Compaſſion for the Priſoners, promis'd to give the Emperor an entire ſatisfaction: Thus the Agreement that had been made, and afterwards

HENRY V.

wards broken, was renewed and ratify'd the 11th of *April* following, by the Pope and Emperor.

By this Treaty it was reſolved, that his Holineſs ſhould no more diſturb the Emperor on account of Inveſtitures; that the Emperor might inveſt with the Croſier and Ring ſuch as were canonically choſen by his Conſent, and that they ſhould be afterwards inſtituted by thoſe whoſe Office it was; but that no one ſhould be inſtituted before he had taken his Inveſtiture: That the Archbiſhops and Biſhops might, without difficulty or ſcruple, conſecrate ſuch as had been inveſted in that manner by the Emperor: And, in fine, that the Pope ſhould never excommunicate the Emperor, nor derogate from all the Conditions of the Treaty, on any Pretext whatſoever: To this his Holineſs ſwore, with ſixteen Cardinals. The Emperor, on the other hand, promis'd to reſtore to the Holy See what had been taken from it, and, ſaving the Honour of the Empire, to render that Obedience to the Pope which his Predeceſſors the Chriſtian Emperors had paid to the *Roman* Pontifs; to which he ſwore jointly with his Chancellor, and eight Princes of the Empire. Agreeably to this Treaty the Bull for Inveſtitures was drawn up, and 'twas inſerted therein, that the Pope had given them up for two Reaſons; the one was, in conſideration of the former Emperor's having enriched and endowed the Church by their own Beneficence; the other, becauſe there was generally too much Strife and Diſturbance in the Elections; after which the Pope, and other Priſoners, enter'd the City in great Pomp. The Emperor came thither alſo, and was crown'd the firſt *Sunday* after *Eaſter*, at which Ceremony his Holineſs took

took one part of the conſecrated Hoſt, and gave the other to *Henry*, in Teſtimony of their perfect Reconciliation, and as a Pledge for both, of the Sincerity wherewith they had promis'd to execute the Treaty. After this the Emperor caus'd another Bull to be given him to the ſame Purport with that already drawn up about Inveſtitures, leaſt the Pope ſhould think fit to proteſt againſt the former as null, in that it was given during his Confinement. HENRY V.

THIS Prince, in conſideration of this Reconciliation, confirmed the Privileges of the *Romans*, and, more out of Policy than Liberality, made great Preſents in Money and other Things of value, particularly to the Eccleſiaſticks; after which he return'd to *Germany*, being attended by the Pope, and divers Cardinals and Prelates, as far as the *Alps*.

THE firſt Thing he did after his arrival into *Germany*, was to make a magnificent Funeral for the Body of the Emperor *Henry* IV. his Father, which had all this while been depoſited at *Spires*, and had remain'd without Sepulture, only becauſe that good Prince had maintain'd the Right of Inveſtitures, which the Pope had juſt declared lawful. 'Tis true, the Sequel has ſhewn, that the Court of *Rome* had only acted thus to make (as one may ſay) a Virtue of Neceſſity. However, the Pope kept outwardly the appearances of Sincerity; but nevertheleſs his Legates, and, amongſt the reſt, the Archbiſhop of *Vienne* in *Daupbiny*, excommunicated him in the National Councils: Even moſt part of the Eccleſiaſtical Princes of the Empire would neither acknowledge nor receive the Pope's Bull concerning the Inveſtiture of Benefices, and *Albert* or *Adelbert*, whom the Emperor of his Chancellour had made Archbiſhop

The Emperor buries his Father Henry IV.

The Eccleſiaſticks of Germany diſpute the Pope's Grant to the Emperor.

HENRY V.

1112. biſhop of *Mentz*, being incited thereunto by the Legates (who endeavoured every where to arm the Biſhops againſt the Emperor, as againſt an excommunicated Perſon) managed Matters ſo in the Diets that were held afterwards, that they declared the Pope had a Right to revoke this Bull in a Council.

The Pope in Council revokes the Grant made to the Emperor of Inveſtitures.

HIS Holineſs opening the *Lateran* Council on the 28*th* of *March*, 1112, they, on his refuſal, as thinking himſelf bound by his Oath, ordered the Bull concerning Inveſtitures to be burned, and excommunicated the Emperor. Beſides, the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, Prelates and Chapter, ſeeing themſelves thus ſupported by the Court of *Rome*, reſolved to maintain themſelves in their Poſſeſſion of the Right of preſenting to their vacant Sees by Election, without the Emperor's Intervention; and thus every thing broke out again into Diſſenſion and Diſturbance.

The Emperor goes a ſecond Time to Rome.

HEREUPON Pope *Paſchal* reſuming Courage, and ſeeking Occaſion in theſe Diviſions to mortify and be revenged of the Emperor, a favourable one ſoon offered. The Counteſs of *Matilda* dying the 24th of *July*, 1115, *Henry*, as her neareſt Relation, reſolved to march into *Italy*, there to receive that rich Succeſſion, notwithſtanding her having given away *Liguria* and *Tuſcany* to the Church in 1077, under the Pontificate of *Gregory* VII, (reſerving only the Revenues thereof for her ſelf) and her Confirmation of it in 1102; for he pretended, that as theſe States were immediately dependent on the Empire, ſhe could not diſpoſe of them without his Conſent.

1115.

1116. ON his arrival in *Lombardy* the Year following, whilſt he was reducing ſome Places belonging to the Dominions of this Princeſs, he ſent

HENRY V.

ſent Ambaſſadors to the Pope to deſire him to revoke the Sentences of Excommunication iſſued againſt him, as being contrary to the Treaty made between them; but the Pope gave no Ear to this Embaſſy. On the contrary, that ſame Year he call'd a Council at *Rome*, where his Treaty with the Emperor was again condemned, and not only the Decrees of his Predeceſſors were confirmed, but even the national Councils by which he had been excommunicated. Thus the Pope reveng'd himſelf without forfeiting his Word; having promis'd (as he ſaid) not to excommunicate the Emperor, but not that he would not cauſe him to be excommunicated by others; as if confirming the Excommunication were not the ſame thing.

The Pope confirms the Revocation of Inveſtitures in a Council.

THE Emperor being exaſperated at the Pope's Procedure, advanced towards *Rome*, to deſtroy by his Preſence the Meaſures taken againſt him, and his Intereſts; but his Holineſs, who knew him by his own Experience, retired into *Apulia*, not thinking it proper to wait his coming. Hereupon *Henry* continuing his March, made himſelf Maſter of ſome Cities and Caſtles that were for the contrary Party, and, in order to defend himſelf, and engage more and more in his Intereſts thoſe who were for him, managed them ſo dextrouſly, eſpecially *Ptolemy* Count of *Tuſculum*, who was their Head, that he brought the *Roman* People to decree him a Triumph. In effect, he was received in *Rome* with an extraordinary Retinue, and great Magnificence; and not thinking his Coronation valid, as being perform'd by a Perſon who retracted all he had done, he hought proper to be crown'd a ſecond time. For this Ceremony he choſe *Maurice Burdin*, a *Limoſin*,

The Pope leaves Rome *on the Emperor's approach.*

HENRY V.

Limoſin by Nation, Archbiſhop of *Prague*, a Prelate who came to embrace his Party, to incenſe the Pope, with whom he was diſſatisfy'd; accordingly he was crown'd ſome Days after in St. *Peter*'s Church by this Archbiſhop.

The Emperor crown'd by the Archbiſhop of Prague.

THE Emperor being withdrawn into *Tuſcany* on account of the Heats, Pope *Paſchal* return'd without Noiſe to *Rome*, to try in this Juncture to re-eſtabliſh his Authority there; but fell Sick and died at the end of two Days, about the 15*th* of *January*. Three Days after his deceaſe, they elected Cardinal *Cajetan* under the Name of *Gelaſius* II, without the Emperor's Knowledge, though he was then in *Italy*, which incens'd him ſo much, that he advanced by long Marches to ſurprize the Pope. But he, being appriz'd of his coming, had time enough to retire; however, he narrowly eſcaped falling into *Henry*'s Hands, for they even ſhot at him as he went down the *Tiber* to *Cajeta*.

1117. *Death of* Paſchal *and creation of* Gelaſius. 1118.

THE Emperor, in revenge, declared the Election of *Gelaſius* null, as being made without his Conſent, and againſt his Will, and put in his ſtead *Burdin*, who had crown'd him, and took the Name of *Gregory* VIII. This new Pontif took off the Emperor's Excommunication, and confirmed to him the Right of Inveſtitures: But this, in the end, produced no other Effect, than to give an Opportunity to *Gelaſius* to excommunicate them both, I mean the Anti-Pope and the Emperor.

The Emperor creates the Archbiſhop of Prague *Pope.*

THIS was all the Fruit of his Expedition; for ſeeing that the Princes of *Apulia* took the true Pope into their Protection, and not having Troops ſufficient to oppoſe them, he thought it beſt to return to *Germany*, leaving *Gregory* VIII in *Rome*, under the guard of his Creatures.

The Emperor returns into Germany.

POPE

HENRY V.

POPE *Gelaſius* having in vain endeavoured to eſtabliſh himſelf in *Rome*, whither he return'd *incognito*, was very fortunate to eſcape once more; whereupon he took a Reſolution to retire into *France*, where he died the twenty ninth of *January* 1119, in the Abbey of *Clugny*. The Cardinals who were with him rais'd the Cardinal Archbiſhop of *Vienne* to the Pontificate, who was Legate of the holy See in *France*, and one of thoſe who excommunicated the Emperor in the National Councils under *Paſchal*, being a *Frenchman*, of the Houſe of the Princes of *Burgundy*, and related to the Emperor himſelf; he aſſumed the Name of *Caliſtus* II. This Pontif, after his Election, call'd a Council at *Rheims*, whereat the Emperor reſolv'd alſo to be preſent, in that *Germany* was weary of this long Affair of the Inveſtitures, which had laſted and diſturb'd her almoſt fifty Years; ſo that the States of the Empire aſſembling between *Mentz* and *Worms*, had expreſs'd their Chagrin, and the little Satisfaction they took in this long Diſpute.

Pope Gelaſius's *Death.* 1119.

Election of Caliſtus II, *and his Negotiations for the Reunion of the Church and Empire.*

THIS Affair had been already almoſt concluded by the Ambaſſadors, which the Pope and Emperor had reciprocally ſent to each other, the latter having receded ſo far as to be content with conferring the Inveſtitures in the ſame manner as the King of *France*, that is to ſay, without giving Croſier or Ring; and the Pope, for his Part, promiſing to anull the Excommnnications iſſued againſt the Emperor: There was even a Writing ſign'd on each ſide, and a Day was appointed for a Conference between them at *Mouzon*.

ACCORDINGLY the Emperor came thither at the Head of an Army of thirty thouſand Men; but the Pope, taking Umbrage at thoſe Forces,

HENRY V. Forces, had ſtop'd by the Way, and kept himſelf ſafe in a Caſtle, whence he ſent his Legates to know if *Henry* perſiſted in what had been agreed: And being inform'd by them that he had chang'd his Mind, diſown'd his Writing, and was inexorable on the Point of Inveſtitures, he went in great Haſte to *Rheims*.

THE Emperor ſent to deſire him to wait only one Day, till he had ask'd Advice of the Princes of the Empire, without whom he could not conclude on any Thing; but he would not ſtay. The Reflection of his Treatment of *Paſchal* had given the Pope ſuch an Apprehenſion of being inveſted, that he purſued his Journey with exceſſive Diligence, giving hereby an Example to violent Princes, that Violence is attended with Conſequences of long Duration, and that 'tis hard to regain that Confidence which has been once loſt by ſome Tranſports of Paſſion.

THE Pope returning then to *Rheims*, without ſeeing the Emperor, continued the Council there for ſome Days; and after having made ſome Canons, the laſt whereof prohibited the Eccleſiaſticks receiving the Inveſtiture of Biſhopricks and Abbies of Laymen, he excommunicated *Henry* and the Anti-Pope *Gregory* VIII, with their Adherents, whoſe Names were mentioned in the Sentence of Excommunication; which done, he diſmiſs'd the Council, that he might at Leiſure go to *Rome*. He arriv'd there the Year after, and was very well received; which, not agreeing with the Intereſt of *Gregory* VIII, he left the City, and made his eſcape to *Sutry*, a ſtrong Town, wherein was an Imperial Garriſon; but 'twas there *Caliſtus* wanted him; for having ſpent till the Year 1121 in eſtabliſhing himſelf at *Rome*. he went into *Apulia*, and, raiſing

1120. *Pope* Caliſtus *goes to* Rome, *arms againſt the Antipope, beſieges and takes him Priſoner.*

raiſing a ſtrong Army there, by the Aſſiſtance of the Princes of that Country, to beſiege the Anti-Pope at *Sutry*. After the Siege had laſted ſome Time, the Inhabitants, being too ſtrong for the Garriſon, delivered him up to the Beſiegers, who, carrying him to *Rome*, mounted him upon a Camel with his Face to the Tail, and led him thro' the City, amidſt the hollowings of the People; however, he gave him his Life, being contented with confining him in a Caſtle. HENRY V.

The Emperor being oppreſs'd with great Leagues, is forced to labour in earneſt for an Agreement with the Pope.

CALISTUS, being thus without a Competitor, bent his Thoughts alſo upon reducing the Emperor, as haughty as he was; in order to which, he took Advantage of the Revolt before-mentioned, which *Albert*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, had excited againſt his old Maſter and Benefactor. This Prelate's Infidelity, being cover'd with the Maſk of the Intereſt of the Church, had been fomented by the Intrigues of *Rome*, and, under this pretended Zeal, Affairs had been exaſperated to that Degree, that a formidable League had been made againſt the Emperor and his Partizans, whom they call'd Schiſmaticks. The Armies that had taken the Field, were in Sight, and ready to engage, when (by the Mediation of the moſt prudent and conſiderable of each Party, who knew well that in Civil Wars, whether one conquers or loſes the Day, 'tis always at the Expence of the ſame Blood) a Conference was demanded on both ſides, and granted.

THERE it was reſolv'd, that they would go unanimouſly and beg the Emperor to give Peace to the Church and Empire, which was done: And they found that Prince ſo well diſpos'd to it, that he even offer'd to ſtand to the Judgment of the States; and they took him at his Word. A Diet was call'd at *Mersbourg*, where

HENRY V.

'twas concluded that an Embaſſy ſhould be immediately ſent to the Pope, to deſire him to call a general Council at *Rome* to decide the Conteſt.

1122. *A general Council at* Rome, *where the Diſpute about Inveſtitures is decided.*

THE Ambaſſadors arriving at *Rome*, *A. D.* 1122, the famous Council was open'd in Lent, conſiſting of 300 Biſhops, and near 700 Abbots; and the Ambaſſadors being heard, the great Difference about the Inveſtitures, was at laſt ended with them, and by their Conſent. The Conditions of the Regulation were: *That the Emperor ſhould leave the Elections free to the Chapters and Communities, and no longer confer Inveſtitures by the Croſier and Ring; that he ſhould reſtore the Poſſeſſions belonging to the Holy See, and the Churches; that the Elections ſhould be made in the Emperor's Preſence, or his Deputies, by Canonical Methods; that in Caſe there ſhould be any Diſpute about the Election, the Emperor, aſſiſted by the Metropolitan, and his Suffragans, ſhould be Judge thereof; that the Perſon elected ſhould receive the Inveſtiture of the Fiefs and Lordſhips of the Empire, not with the Croſier, but the Scepter, or ſome Wand, and ſhould be faithful to him on account of the ſaid Lordſhips; and that for the Countries diſtant from Germany, the Emperor ſhould allow ſix Months to receive the like Inveſtiture.*

The Emperor's Excommunication taken off.

THESE Articles were delivered to the Ambaſſadors, to carry them to be ratify'd by the Emperor, and as ſoon as they arrived at Court, with the Pope's Legates, who had follow'd them, a Diet was call'd at *Worms*, where the Treaty was read and ratify'd; and at the ſame Time the Cardinal of *Oſtia*, firſt Legate, gave Abſolution to the Emperor, and all his Schiſmatical Adherents; after which he ſaid Maſs Pontifically, and gave him the Communion, as the laſt Mark of a perfect Reconciliation. The Legates return'd very well ſatisfy'd, and, in Teſtimony

mony of a ſingular Acknowledgment, the Emperor ſent back new Ambaſſadors with them to the Pope, with rich Preſents, as the Pledges of Friendſhip, which he ever afterwards cultivated with him very carefully. HENRY V.

THUS was this bloody and long Conteſt agreed and concluded on; by which one may plainly ſee, that moſt part of the Affairs which diſturb Potentates, and coſt ſo much Trouble and Blood, are only great in Imagination. From the Reign of *Charlemagne* till that of *Henry* IV, the Inveſtiture was conferr'd by the Croſier and Ring, as by things indifferent; under that unfortunate Emperor 'twas imagin'd that the Croſier and Ring were ſome ſacred Things, and what is ſtill more deplorable, is, that the former Popes made uſe of this Imagination to diſturb and diſmember the Body of the Civil Society. Pope *Caliſtus* and the laſt general Council were more equitable, and the Emperor ſhew'd that he underſtood Reaſon: For as his Holineſs and the Fathers of the Council would not incroach upon the political Authority, which is of divine Right, to maintain a meer Scruple; ſo the Emperor alſo receded from the Ceremony of the Croſier aud Ring, ſeeing that, by the Cuſtom which had been introduced, theſe Things were the Marks of the Spiritual Authority, and that, in fine, the Emperors having only a Right over the Temporalities, they could not, without laying Hands raſhly upon the Altar, have any Right to inveſt Biſhops and Prelates with the Spiritual Authority.

The Death of Caliſtus, *and Election of* Honorius. 1124.

No Mention was made in this Treaty of the Right which the Emperors had formerly of inveſting and creating Popes, nor of what Share they ſhould have for the future in theſe Elections; wherefore *Caliſtus*, not ſurviving this

HENRY V.

Accommodation long, the Cardinals, Clergy, and People, after his Death, which happen'd in 1124, proceeded to the Election of a new Pope, without the Emperor's Knowledge. So great was the Diſorders of this Election, that they choſe two Popes at the ſame Time, *viz.* Cardinal *Theobald*, whom they call'd *Celeſtine*; and *Lambert*, Cardinal-Biſhop of *Oſtia*, who was nam'd *Honorius* II; but theſe Cardinals, being Men of Probity, deprived themſelves voluntarily; nevertheleſs they confirm'd the Election of *Honorius*, by correcting and amending all that had been contrary to the Canons.

The Emperor reduces thoſe who rebel againſt him.

AFTER his Agreement with *Rome*, the Emperor had a Domeſtick War; for *Holland* revolting againſt him, he marched thither in Perſon, and reduced her to Duty by Force of Arms. He did the ſame by the City of *Worms*, which had alſo rebell'd againſt him, beſieging and taking it by Compoſition, and puniſhing the Heads of the Sedition. This Spirit of Mutiny, which was occaſion'd by the Miſery whereunto the paſt Diviſions had reduced many Cities, began to ſpread very much; the City of *Ruffat* had the Raſhneſs to take up Arms againſt the Emperor's Officers, even in his Preſence, and that in ſuch a manner, that he but narrowly made his eſcape from the Tumult.

1123. *The Emperor* Henry *the Fifth's Death.*

THIS Diſgrace, touching him very ſenſibly, was partly the Cauſe of the Sickneſs that ſeized him afterwards, whereof he died on *July* 1, 1125. His Body was buried at *Spires* with thoſe of the Emperors his Anceſtors. 'Twas obſerv'd, that the Reflection of his ill Uſage to his Father was continually before his Eyes, and that 'twas particularly the extream Sorrow he felt for it, which in the end contributed moſt to his Death. He had no Children by his Wife *Matilda*,

Matilda, Daughter to *Henry* I, King of *England*, which Defect was aſcrib'd to a particular Puniſhment of Heaven, he not deſerving to be a Father, who had been ſo much wanting in the Duty of a Son. He left no Heirs but two Nephews by his Siſter, *viz. Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*. HENRY V.

CHAP. XI.

LOTHAIRE *the Second.*

AFTER *Henry*'s Death, 'twas thought that the States would have conferr'd the Imperial Dignity upon one of his Nephews, Sons to his Siſter *Agnes*, that is, either on *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, or *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, both brave, generous, and powerful Princes; and even the Emperor *Henry*, before his Death, had given a very ſtrict Order to deliver the Imperial Ornaments to them, which, however, was not executed. They alſo, on their Side, with a View to the Imperial Crown, had careſs'd and attended the principal Members of the Empire, to gain their Suffrages; but *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who could never forgive *Henry* V the ill Uſage he pretended to have received from him, and who retain'd his Reſentment againſt his Memory, and even againſt theſe two Princes, oppos'd their Deſigns to the utmoſt of his Power. Wherefore, that he might ſucceed the better, he bethought himſelf of getting Poſſeſſion of the LOTHAIR II. *His Election oppos'd, but in vain.*

LOTHAIR II.

Crown, Scepter, and other Regal Ornaments, which remain'd in the Hands of *Henry*'s Widow; and to this end he flattered her so effectually, that she could not avoid delivering them into his Hands, trusting to his Word, that he would take Advantage of this Confidence in Favour of one or the other of these Princes. Nevertheless this Prelate, being thus Master of these Ensigns of Royalty, managed the Minds of all the Princes with so much Address, that, without having any regard to the Pretentions of the two Competitors, they elected *Lothaire*, Duke of *Saxe-Supplenbourg*, Emperor; and he was crown'd at *Aix la Chappelle* in *September* 1126, in the Presence of the Pope's *Nuntio*.

ONE of the principal Reasons why the Arch-Bishop of *Mentz* declared thus for *Lothaire*, was, because they had always been join'd together by Interest, both when they espous'd the Party of *Henry*, and afterwards when they left him to side with the Court of *Rome*, and her Partizans in *Germany*, of whom *Lothaire* was the Head. Besides, as this Prince had in that Quality contributed the most to reduce this Emperor to recede (in Favour of *Rome*, and the Ecclesiastical Princes of *Germany*) from the Rights of Election, Investitures, *&c.* for which so much Blood had been spill'd, these Princes having thus obtain'd all they desired, more especially by *Lothaire*'s Assistance, rais'd this Prince to the Throne, in Recompence for this great Service; and after this, left nothing in their Power undone to maintain him therein against his two Competitors, *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, and *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*. Nevertheless, the latter was elected King of the *Romans* by some Princes, Lords, and Cities of the Empire, and the other was crown'd King at *Milan*, by the

the Biſhop of that City. But, in fine, after ſome Wars, which were of ſhort Continuance, tho' very bloody, they were reconcil'd in the Year 1129, by the Mediation of ſeveral Princes their common Friends; and this Reconciliation was ſo ſincere, that the Emperor honour'd them with his Friendſhip. He even in ſome Meaſure preferr'd *Conrad* to all the Princes of the Empire, entruſting him with the Imperial Banner, and procuring him all the Advantages he could on other Occaſions. If he behav'd thus to reconcil'd Enemies, he was not wanting in Gratitude to thoſe Princes who had ſet the Crown on his Head; for he continued the ſame Zeal for the Intereſts of *Rome*, during his whole Reign, and favour'd the Popes in all that was in his Power, as well as the other Eccleſiaſticks of the Empire, to whom he granted many Privileges and Immunities. LOTHAIR II. 1129. 1130.

HONORIUS II, dying the twenty fourth of *February* 1130, Pope *Innocent* II was elected Canonically the ſame Day; but Cardinal *Peter de Leon*, having a powerful Faction in *Rome*, got himſelf proclaim'd Pope, under the Name of *Anacletus*, notwithſtanding the other's Election; which caus'd ſo violent a Schiſm, that, *Innocent* finding himſelf the Weakeſt, retired into *France*, where St. *Bernard* preach'd up loudly for his Intereſts. This Saint gain'd over *Lothaire* alſo to his Party, and induced this Prince to have a Conference with *Innocent* at *Liege*, where St. *Bernard* perſuaded him alſo to come, and accompany him thither.

THE Emperor, on the Pope's Approach, who came on Horſeback, mounted a Horſe likewiſe, rode to meet him, and as ſoon as he ſaw him, diſmounted, ran to him, ſupported him in his Arms on his getting off the Horſe, and attend-

LOTHAIR II. ed him to his Lodging. They had at first some Difference about the Investitures, the Right whereof the Emperor press'd the Pope to surrender to him, in the same Manner as the former Emperors had enjoy'd it; but he desisted from this Demand, on the urgent Reasons and
1132. pressing Intreaties of St. *Bernard*, who even engaged him to march to *Rome*, re-establish the Pontif, and drive out *Anacletus*, according to the Scheme projected between them.

The Emperor goes to Italy *to re-establish Pope* Innocent II. THINGS being thus concerted between them, the Pope set out first for *Italy*, passing through *France*, where he receiv'd a considerable Sum for his Journey, and, advancing as far as *Piacenza*, waited there for the Emperor, who join'd him in a few Days, and, conducting him to *Rome*, re-established him in his See, in spite of all the Efforts the Anti-Pope could make to
1133. prevent it.

IT perhaps might be, to add Weight to this Re-establishment, or else to excite others to honour the true Pope, that the Emperor afterwards, in the Ceremony of his Coronation, kneel'd down before *Innocent*, who sat upon a rais'd Throne, and having, thus kneeling, made Protestations of Obedience to the holy See, receiv'd the Crown, which he put upon his Head; the Ceremony was perform'd in the Palace of St. *John de Lateran*.

THIS Solemnity being finish'd, the Emperor return'd to *Germany*, where, by the Advice of one *Werner Urſperg*, or *Irnerus*, who was very well

The Emperor introduces the Roman *Law into the Empire.* vers'd in the ancient Laws of *Justinian*, he order'd that Justice should be administer'd in the Empire, according to the *Pandects*, or the *Code*, the Use whereof had been left off for five or six hundred Years. Insomuch that these Laws were introduced into *Italy* and *Germany*, and after

that

that into *France* and *Spain*, where the People before made uſe of their own proper Laws, and the Cuſtoms they obſerv'd in particular. LOTHAIR II.

THE Anti-Pope, *Anacletus*, having thrown himſelf into the Arms of *Roger*, Duke of *Apulia*, whoſe Dominions, to render him the more favourable, he erected into a Kingdom, under the Title of the Kingdom of *Sicily*, ſeeing *Lothaire* departed, took the Field with a good Army, and made himſelf Maſter of almoſt all St. *Peter*'s Patrimony; which obliged *Innocent* to retire to *Piſa*, and once more implore *Lothaire*'s Aſſiſtance. Anacletus *returns with an Army to* Rome. 1134.

HIS Imperial Majeſty, having not loſt the leaſt of his Affection for the Church, did not want much Invitation, but arming powerfully, paſſes the *Alps* in the Year 1136, and divides his Army in two, one Part whereof he gives to his Son-in-Law, the Duke of *Bavaria*, commanding the other in Perſon. After this there was nothing but Conqueſt; he retook all the Places of the *Patrimony*, and reconducted the true Pope in Triumph to *Rome*, cauſing hereby the Death of *Anacletus*, who died with Envy at the good Succeſs of his Competitor. 1136. 1137. 1138.

NOT content with this, his Imperial Majeſty puſh'd ſo briskly upon *Roger*, from Town to Town, that he retir'd ſhamefully into his Country of *Sicily*; inſomuch that, making himſelf abſolute Maſter of *Apulia* and *Calabria*, with all that *Roger* poſſeſſed in *Italy*, he form'd a State thereof, which he gave to *Renald*, a *German* Prince, his Relation, with the Title of Duke, whereof he depriv'd *Roger*.

AFTER this glorious Expedition the Emperor return'd for *Germany*; but his Progreſs was ſtopt by a dangerous Sickneſs that ſurpriz'd him at *Verona*. He thought he might overcome the *His Death.*

Diſ-

LOTHAIR II.

Diſeaſe, by regaining the Place of his Birth, but at laſt he died in the *Alps*, near *Trent*, the third of *December*, 1138, after having reign'd twelve Years.

THIS Prince left no Male-Heirs, but is famous for his paſſionate Love of preſerving the publick Peace, and adminiſtring Juſtice, had it but pleas'd GOD that his Intention had been follow'd in this latter Point. But the great Number of Comments that were, or have been ſince, made on the *Pandects*, have drawn upon his Memory the Reproach of having introduc'd Tricking, inſtead of rendring Juſtice eaſy.

'TWAS apprehended that his Death would have chang'd the Affairs of *Rome*; but all things there remain'd peaceable; even *Roger* himſelf, ſeeing the Anti-Pope dead, was reconcil'd to *Innocent*, who, to ſecure himſelf ſo important a Support, confirm'd to him the Kingdom of *Sicily*.

CHAP. XII.

CONRAD *the Third.*

CONRAD III.

His Election and Coronation.

THE Princes of the Empire being aſſembled at *Coblentz* for the Election of an Emperor, deputed ſeven of their Number, *viz.* three Archbiſhops, and four ſecular Princes, one King, one Duke, one Count, and one Marquis, to whom they gave the Power of collecting the Suffrages of the Aſſemblies, and chooſing the moſt worthy of thoſe propoſed. Hereupon they

they unanimously elected *Conrad* Duke of *Franconia*, Nephew to the Emperor *Henry* V, and conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where, in 1139, he was crown'd by Cardinal *Thierry*, the Pope's Legate, who perform'd this Ceremony for the Archbishop of *Cologn*, because he was not yet a Priest. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria*, sirnam'd the *Proud*, who had marry'd *Lothaire*'s only Daughter, and had receiv'd with her in Portion the Duchy of *Saxony*, the Emperor's Patrimony, was not at this Election. The Reason was, that he pretended he ought to have been declared Emperor, and he thought he had the more Right thereunto, in that *Lothaire*, having no Male-Heirs, had, before his Death, put the Regal Ornaments into his Hands, and thus design'd him his Successor to the Empire; but notwithstanding this Appointment, *Conrad* was preferr'd to him, and advanc'd to the Empire without any other Contradiction. Immediately after his Election he sent to desire the Duke of *Bavaria* to deliver those Ornaments, but he plainly refus'd it. Hereupon the Princes, who were resolv'd to maintain their Election, were oblig'd in a Diet at *Goslar*, to deprive him publickly of his Duchies of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*, the latter whereof was given to *Albert* Marquis of *Austria*; wherewith *Henry* was so sensibly touch'd, that he died the same Year. CONRAD III.

A Revolt against the Emperor in Apulia, *which spreads into* Germany.

At the same Time *Roger*, King of *Sicily*, reconquer'd the Territories that were still dependent on the Empire in *Apulia*, which serv'd to augment his new Kingdom; and, in order to maintain himself therein, could contrive no better Way than to continue the Civil War in *Germany*. With this intent he animated *Welf*, or *Guelph*, Duke of *Bavaria*, Brother to *Henry* the

CONRAD III.

the *Proud*, with a Deſire of repoſſeſſing the two Duchies that had been confiſcated from his Brother, to ſuch a Degree, that, with the Aſſiſtance of the *Saxons*, he reſolv'd to make War upon the Emperor, having receiv'd ſuch a conſiderable Sum from *Roger*, that it enabl'd him to give *Conrad* a great deal of Trouble. Their Troops had ſeveral Engagements, but at laſt, in 1140, *Guelph* was beſieged by *Conrad* in the Caſtle of *Weirsberg*; and the beſieged, being reſolv'd to make a Sally upon the Imperialiſts, gave for the Word to their Men, *Hiewelf*; which being diſcovered by *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, Brother to the Emperor, and General of the Imperialiſts, he gave to his the Word *Hiegibelin*; which was the Name of a Village in *Suabia* where he had been educated. Theſe two Names have ſince that Time been in great Vogue, eſpecially in *Italy*. By the *Welphs*, or *Guelphs*, were meant thoſe who eſpous'd the Pope's Part, and by the *Gibelins*, the Imperialiſts. *Guelph* at this Sally loſt abundance of Men, and was forc'd to retire in Diſorder to *Weirsberg*, where he defended himſelf to the laſt Extremity; but at laſt he was oblig'd to ſurrender at Diſcretion.

1140.

Origin of the Guelphs *and* Gibelins.

THE Emperor would not uſe his good Fortune with Severity, but treated the Perſon ſent by *Guelph* to capitulate with abundance of Civility; and gave his Word that the Duke with his Troops might paſs through the Imperial Army. But the Duke's Wife, taking umbrage at ſo great Goodneſs, was afraid that, under ſuch generous Appearances, his Majeſty conceal'd ſome Reſentment againſt her Husband on Account of ſome injurious Words ſpoken againſt that Prince, ſhe would have an Obligation of more Force than his Word. Accordingly

The Generoſity of ſeveral Women diſarms the Emperor's Anger.

cordingly ſhe ſent a Gentleman to him, to demand a Paſs both for her ſelf, the Ladies, and all the Women in the Caſtle, with Leave to come out without Danger, and be conducted to a Place of Safety, with whatever each of them could carry away; which the Emperor granted. CONRAD III.

UPON this they came out in Preſence of *Conrad*, and the whole Army, who were not a little ſurpriz'd to ſee the Ducheſs, the Counteſſes, the Baroneſſes, and other Ladies of Quality, whoſe Husbands had offended the Emperor, each of them bringing, though with the utmoſt Difficulty, her Husband upon her Shoulders: 'Twas thought in the Army, that, when the Ducheſs deſir'd this Permiſſion, 'twas only to carry off their Jewels, Gold, and Silver, and they never miſtuſted this Stratagem. Whereupon *Conrad*, being ſurpriz'd on a ſudden at ſuch a Sight, and reflecting upon the Tenderneſs and Courage of theſe Ladies, who eſteemed their Husbands as their real Treaſure, and valued them more than Gold, or whatever was moſt pretious, was ſo much mov'd to ſee them in that State, that he could ſcarce forbear ſhedding Tears. He prais'd them, entertain'd them ſumptuouſly at Dinner, and made a ſincere Agreement with Duke *Welf*, and his Adherents, in ſpite of his Generals who oppos'd it by their Advice; anſwering them, *That 'twas unworthy of a King to break his Word.*

NEVERTHELESS, this Civil War gave an Opportunity to ſeveral Cities in *Italy* to withdraw themſelves from their Dependence on the Empire, and, following *Roger*'s Example, to erect themſelves into Republicks: Even the *Romans* themſelves had, for ſome time, form'd the Deſign of re-eſtabliſhing the ancient Common-

Several Cities in Italy *ſet up for Republicks.*

wealth,

CONRAD III.

wealth, taking Poſſeſſion of the Sovereignty of *Rome*, and all the Patrimony of the Church. They had already reſtored the Order of Senators, and conferr'd thoſe Dignities upon the moſt conſiderable amongſt them. In the Year 1144 they reviv'd alſo that of *Patrician*, wherewith they inveſted one *Jordan*, giving him the ſame Authority as was heretofore conferr'd on *Charlemagne*. This new *Patrician*, attended by the Senators and People, remonſtrated to *Lucius* II, that the Popes had never apply'd themſelves but to Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, and that they were contented with their Tithes, which were paid them for Subſiſtence, without having any other Poſſeſſions, or interfering with political Affairs, the Adminiſtration whereof always belong'd to the Seculars, as might be ſeen by the Hiſtories of the City of *Rome*, and *Germany*; that therefore it was not juſt for him to interpoſe any more in ſuch Affairs, but to leave the Direction thereof entirely to them. Upon this Foundation theſe Mutineers attempted to diſpute the ſecular Juriſdiction with him, or rather to deprive him of it; and began, by making themſelves Maſters of the City-Revenues, and putting Officers in the Place of thoſe appointed by the Pope.

1141.

1144.

HIS Holineſs, the Cardinals, and other Eccleſiaſticks, oppos'd this Deſign openly, and maintain'd, as much as lay in their Power, their Authority and Rights; but, in fine, 'twas concluded to have Recourſe to the Emperor *Conrad*, and to diſpatch Ambaſſadors to him for that Purpoſe, which was done. He was then at a Diet at *Spires*, and it would have been reaſonable to have referr'd it to his Deciſion; but both Parties were ſo incens'd, that Pope *Lucius*, during that Time, levy'd ſome Troops, beſieg'd the Sena-

Senators in the Capitol, commanding himſelf in Perſon, and received there ſuch a Wound, that he died thereof in few Days, (*viz*) the twenty fifth of *February*, 1145. On hearing this News, the Ambaſſadors return'd without Anſwer; nevertheleſs 'twas believed that the Emperor did not approve of the *Romans* Procedure, and had even received the Pope's *Nuntio* very well, and ſent him back ſatisfy'd. CONRAD III.

AFTER the Death of *Lucius*, *Eugene* III was elected, whom the Seditious likewiſe diſturb'd at firſt; but he joining the Secular Arm to the Spiritual, and being ſeconded by the Well-affected, reduced the Rebels and the City to Reaſon, and re-eſtabliſhed his Authority. This Repoſe gave him Liberty to apply himſelf diligently to the famous *Croiſade*, which was then making againſt the *Saracens* for the Defence of the *Holy-Land*, wherein he engaged the Emperor *Conrad*. This was by his own Exhortations, join'd to thoſe of St. *Bernard*, which were ſo effectual, that that Prince received the Croſs from the Saints's Hands, and underook the Expedition to the *Levant* in the beginning of the Year 1147, with ſixty thouſand as fine Cavalry as had ever been ſeen; but he was not ſucceſsful; for Part of his Army periſh'd thro' the Malice of *Emmanuel Commenus*, Emperor of the *Greeks*, who caus'd Plaiſter to be mix'd in the Meal, wherewith he ſupply'd *Conrad*'s Troops; and the other Part, having a long Time ſuffer'd Hunger, was almoſt entirely defeated by the *Turks*. 'Twas with much Difficulty that the Emperor ſav'd ſome few Remains, with which he return'd to *Germany*, after ſpending two Years and a half in this Expedition. The reſt of his Reign had but two Things remarkable; one was, the Revolt of Duke *Guelph*, which

Pope Eugene III. *ſucceeds* Lucius; *re-eſtabliſhes his Authority in* Rome, *and ſets about the* Croiſade.

Conrad *goes to the* Holy Land.

1147.

CONRAD III.

which was immediately appeas'd by the Emperor's giving him Satisfaction; and the other, the Death of his eldeſt Son *Henry*, who was elected King of the *Romans* before his going for the *Holy Land*. This Loſs afflicted him ſo much, that, having but only one young Son, nam'd *Frederick*, left by his Marriage with *Gertrude*, Daughter to *Berengaire*, Count of *Sultzbach*, he took a Reſolution to call a Diet at *Bamberg*, in the beginning of the Year 1152, wherein he repreſented to the States, that being threatened with Death every Hour, conſidering his ill State of Health, he thought himſelf obliged no longer to defer recommending to them the electing his Nephew *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia* for his Succeſſor, he being a brave, experienced Prince, and worthy of that high Dignity. This being well received by all the Princes, he caus'd all the Imperial Ornaments to be delivered into his Hands, a little after which he died at *Bamberg*, after a Reign of thirteen Years, and, as nigh as can be gueſs'd, was buried near the Tomb of *Henry* II, altho' ſome ſay it was at *Spires*.

1152. *He appoints a Succeſſor, and dies.*

CHAP. XIII.

FREDERICK *the Firſt*.

His Coronation.

AFTER *Conrad*'s Death, the Princes of the Empire aſſembled at *Frankfort* to chooſe an Emperor, and, according to his Recommendation, elected *Frederick* of *Suabia*, his Nephew by his Brother, after

after which they crown'd him at *Aix la Chapelle*, being about the Age of twenty eight or nine. He was the firſt of this Name, and was call'd *Father of his Country*, from the great Concern he ſhew'd for the Glory of the Empire; and *Barbaroſſa*, on account of his red Hair and Beard. FREDERICK I.

ASSOON as he was elected, moſt Part of the Princes of Chriſtendom ſent Ambaſſadors to *Mersbourg* to congratulate him thereupon: Amongſt others, the King of *Denmark*, who was juſt come to that Crown, came in Perſon to deſire Inveſtiture, which the Emperor granted, and crown'd him with his own Hands; after which the King took the Oath of Allegiance, as a Vaſſal of the Empire. A little after, he ſent the Archbiſhop of *Treves*, and Biſhop of *Bamberg*, on an Embaſſy to *Rome*, to receive the Crown in his Name, becauſe he could not go thither himſelf, before he had appeas'd and terminated the Differences between the Princes of the Empire. Amongſt the reſt, there was one very conſiderable, which was the Diſpute between *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, with another *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria*, as having inherited the Duchy of *Bavaria* from his Brother, to whom the Emperor *Conrad* had granted it, confiſcating it from his Father *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*; hereupon the Son reclaim'd the Duchy, and this great Conteſt had arm'd almoſt all the Princes in *Germany*.

WHEREFORE, to end this Difference, he caus'd a Diet to meet at *Spires*, where, by the Princes Advice, he ordered that *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* ſhould be re-eſtabliſh'd in the Duchy of *Bavaria*, which *Conrad*, after depoſing the Father of this Duke (as has been before obſerv'd) had conferr'd upon *Leopold* Marquis of *Auſtria*, Brother

FREDERICK I.

Brother to this *Henry*, alſo Marquis of *Auſtria*. And to ſatisfy this Marquis, the Emperor erected *Auſtria* into a Duchy, diſcharging him thus of the Homage and Oath of Allegiance, which he owed to the Duchy of *Bavaria*, of which he before depended.

Has a Diſpute with the Pope; but it is happily ended.

HOWEVER, *Frederick*, as well as his Predeceſſors, was very near embroiling himſelf with the Pope; it was thus, the Emperor had elected the Biſhop of *Zeits* to the Archbiſhoprick of *Magdebourg*, on account of a Diviſion of Voices at the Election of the other two. *Eugene* found Fault herewith, becauſe it was not allowable to take a Biſhop from his own Church, and tranſlate him to another, but in Caſes of the greateſt Neceſſity; but *Frederick*, who well knew the Agreements his Predeceſſors had made with the Pope, ſupported his Archbiſhop, and when the Legates came from *Rome*, with Orders to depoſe him, prevented them, and obliged them to retire.

July 8.

1153. POPE *Eugene* being dead, and *Anaſtaſius* IV ſucceeding to the See, was reſolv'd to tread in *Eugene*'s Steps; wherefore he ſent Cardinal *Gerard* into *Germany* to conclude this Affair: But this Legate ſpeaking imperiouſly, and contrary to the Reſpect due to his Imperial Majeſty, *Frederick*, who was as jealous of his Authority, as expert in his Affairs, caus'd him to be ſhamefully driven out of *Germany*, which chagrin'd the Cardinal ſo much, that he died on his return to *Rome*.

BUT the Emperor, who had before his Eyes the Trouble the Popes had given his Preceſſors, and for that Reaſon would not expoſe himſelf to like Extremities, took a judicious Medium to terminate this Affair: Wherefore in the Year

1154. 1154 he ſent the new Archbiſhop of *Magdebourg*

to

to *Rome*, who, having inform'd Pope *Anaſtaſius* fully of the Truth, he was ſatisfy'd, and gave him the *Pallium*; ſome Months after which he died, and *Adrian* IV was choſen in his Stead on the fourth of *December* the ſame Year. FREDERICK I.

ABOUT this Time ſeveral Cities of *Italy*, that were Fiefs of the Empire, endeavour'd to free themſelves from Subjection, as ſome had already done; even the *Romans* themſelves would alſo have reviv'd their Pretentions in the Time of *Lucius* II againſt the Pope's Sovereign Authority in *Rome*, and the Sedition increas'd to that Degree, that the People having fallen upon a Cardinal, the Pope laid an Interdict on the whole City; whereupon, Things being again aggravated, *Adrian* was at laſt forced to ſeek Refuge at *Viterbo*, there to wait the Emperor, whom he had call'd to his Aſſiſtance. 1155. *An almoſt general Revolt in* Italy *againſt the Emperor and Pope.*

FREDERICK had been in *Lombardy* the *October* before, to reduce the Cities to Reaſon that had fortify'd themſelves, and would no longer acknowledge the Empire; ſome of theſe he had already taken and chaſtis'd, and had made them of *Pavia* deliver up the Iron Crown. Whilſt he continued his Advances, he heard, with abundance of Diſpleaſure, that Troubles were again breaking out in *Germany*; and that the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, and Duke *Herman*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, were at Variance together, and in open Arms, with a Reſolution to carry Things to the utmoſt Extremity, ſo much were they incens'd againſt each other. In ſhort, this Difference caus'd great Diſorders, and almoſt totally ruin'd the Provinces of the *Rhine*, and even the Count Palatine, aſſiſted by the Counts *de Leiningen*, *Spanheim*, *Catſelenbogen*, *Kirchberg*, *Dideſheim*, and ſome others, plunder'd, ſack'd and burnt the City of *Mentz*, af- *Frederick's firſt Expedition into* Italy *cauſes Troubles in* Germany.

FREDERICK I.

ter having ravaged the Country round about.

THE Diſquiet which the Quarrel of theſe Princes gave the Emperor, made him haſten his Expedition into *Italy*, where he ſoon reduced almoſt all the Places that had revolted, to his Obedience; and as his principal Buſineſs was to re-eſtabliſh the Pope in *Rome*, he preſs'd the Interview that had been propoſed, in order to concert their Meaſures together. It was appointed at *Sutri*, where *Adrian* coming upon a Mule to meet *Frederick*, 'twas thought that Prince would have help'd him to diſmount, and himſelf have held the Bridle; but he perſiſted in refuſing it, till ſuch Time as he had been inform'd that his Predeceſſors had not diſdain'd that Act of Humility, in Conſideration of the Perſon the Pontif repreſents. Hereupon the Emperor reconducted the Pope to *Rome*, where he received the Imperial Crown from the Hands of his Holineſs, which Ceremony the *Romans* ſuffer'd him to perform without Trouble; but aſſoon as he was withdrawn to his Camp, they renewed their fomer Sedition, and came with open Arms to beſiege the Pope in the *Vatican*.

Interview between the Emperor and the Pope; the Emperor reconducts the Pope to Rome.

THE Emperor, on the firſt Advice he received hereof, march'd ſpeedily to his Aſſiſtance, cut in Pieces all who reſiſted, and diſperſed the Tumult; which done, and being all quiet in *Italy*, he returned into *Germany*; and no ſooner arrived there, but he called a Diet at *Worms*, whereunto the Princes who had taken Arms were cited. They were heard, and Sentence being paſs'd, with the Advice of the States of the Empire, were condemn'd, as diſturbers of the pnblick Tranquility, to the Puniſhments allotted for ſuch Crimes, (*viz.*) the Princes and

The Emperor returns to Germany. 1156.

and Counts to carry a Dog upon their Backs from one Province to another, the Gentlemen a Joint-ſtool, and the common People a Cart-wheel. This Sentence was put in Execution againſt all but the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who was diſpens'd with by the Emperor on account of his Age. FREDERICK I.

A LITTLE after, another Difference aroſe between *Adrian* and *Frederick*; for the Biſhop of *London* having been robb'd and made Priſoner in the Imperial Territories, and having complain'd thereof, without any Reparation made him, the Pope ſent Legates to the Emperor to demand Juſtice of him. Theſe Legates found him at *Bezancon*, where he had ſummon'd a Diet, took Occaſion to read the Pope's Letter in the open Aſſembly, which caus'd a general Murmur, and particularly at the Pope's having expreſs'd himſelf in theſe Terms, *That he had conferred the Sovereign Authority of* Rome, *and the Kingdom of* Italy, *on the Emperor, as a ſignal Grace and Favour*; whence all the World imagined the Pope meant that he had given the Empire to *Frederick* to hold in Fief of him. What incens'd the Aſſembly yet more, was, that one of the Legates, thinking to ſalve the Matter, cry'd out, (without diſtinguiſhing the Empire from *Rome*,) *and from whom then do you hold it?* At theſe Words the Count Palatine, *Otho* of *Bavaria*, who, as Marſhal of the Empire, kept the Sword, drew it from the Scabbard, and advanced to ſtrike the Legate; but the Emperor with-held him, ordered them to leave the Aſſembly, and return without Delay to *Rome* the ſhorteſt Way. And that the World might not be led away by this falſe Opinion, he wrote circular Letters in Form of a *Manifeſto*, wherein he gave them to know, that they who ſaid he depended on any one but GOD, were Liars. *Another Broil between the Emperor and the Pope.*

FREDERICK I.

NEITHER did the Pope keep Silence; he wrote to the *German* Biſhops to repreſent to *Frederick* the Injury he had done him, in the Perſon of his Legates; to which the Emperor firmly reply'd, *That he held his Crown of* GOD, *and the* German *Princes; and that he would ſooner reſign it, than ſuffer it to be thus debaſed in his Perſon*: Theſe reſolute Words induced the ſame Biſhops to adviſe the Pope to reconcile Matters. The prudent Pontif comply'd with this Counſel, and ſent back other Legates, who paid *Frederick* all poſſible Honour, and preſented him a Letter from his Holineſs, in Interpretation of the former; this ſecond was full of Civility and Reſpect, and repreſented that he meant the placing the Marks of the Imperial Dignity upon his Head was a good Action, and not that he had given or conferred them on him as a Favour. He choſe, rather for the Sake of Peace, to give thus a foreign Explanation to his Letter, than to interpret it ſtrictly as the Senſe would have born.

Frederick's great Progreſs in Germany.

NEVERTHELESS *Frederick*, who was a Prince of great Penetration, underſtanding very well what all theſe Letters meant, knew that *Rome* wanted but a favourable Occaſion to explain herſelf in another Manner. For which Reaſon he made his utmoſt Efforts to put an end to all the Affairs that might oppoſe him in *Germany*; and began by *Poland*, whoſe Duke *Boleſlaus* (for *Poland* was then a Duchy) had revolted: Him he oblig'd to return to his Duty, and to pay him Homage, and the Tribute he ow'd him. On the other hand, he erected the Dukedom of *Bohemia* into a Kingdom, to preſerve *Uratiſlaus* Duke of *Bohemia* in his Intereſts, and made him firſt King of *Bohemia*: not but the Emperor *Henry* IV had given the Title of King to *Urati-*

Uratiſlaus in the Year 1086, but the Duchy it ſelf had not been acknowledged for a Kingdom, as it now was. He in the like Manner aſſured himſelf of the Fidelity of the King of *Hungary*; and having thus quieted all *Germany*, and ſettled a good Intelligence amongſt his Neighbours, prepared for a ſecond Expedition to *Italy*. FREDERICK I.

1158. *The Emperor's ſecond Expedition into* Italy; *a new Diſpute between the Pope and him.*

HE repaſs'd then the *Alps* towards the End of the Year 1158, with a powerful Army, to finiſh the Conqueſt of the Cities that had rebelled againſt him, where he beſieged and took *Milan* at Diſcretion, with what other Towns remained in *Lombardy*. After which, reſolving to regulate the Affairs relating to his Demeſnes, he caus'd Search to be made into the Rights of the Empire, and had Homage paid him by thoſe who held Fiefs, without excepting the Biſhops. Hereat the Pope took Offence, and ſent a great Embaſſy of Legates to complain thereof; to whom *Frederick* anſwered, *That it was reaſonable they ſhould pay him Homage, as they poſſeſſed Fiefs; and that* JESUS CHRIST, *as much Maſter as he was of Sovereignty, yet condeſcended to pay the Tribute due to the Emperor for St.* Peter *and himſelf.*

Schiſm about the Election of a Pope.

DURING theſe Tranſactions, Pope *Adrian* IV dies, and the Election of his Succeſſor caus'd a Schiſm; for the greateſt Part of twenty five Cardinals, who were preſent at *Adrian*'s Death, chooſing *Rowland* Chancellor of the Church, who took the Name of *Alexander* III, and the others electing *Octavian* of St. *Cecilia*, the latter ſeeing them give the Papal Cope to his Competitor, fell upon him, tore it from him, and, cauſing himſelf to be adored under the Name of *Victor* IV, was at the ſame Time approved and proclaimed by the People.

FREDERICK I.

ALEXANDER, on the other hand, and twenty-two Cardinals who had elected him, seiz'd on the Castle of St. *Angelo*, the Governor whereof was their Friend, where the other Faction invested them, and kept them Prisoners, till the People, about nine Days after, being disabused, came to their Deliverance, crying in their
1159. Turn, *Long live Pope* Alexander; and he was crown'd in a Village near *Rome*.

The Emperor summons a Council.

BUT the Emperor declar'd for *Victor*, notwithstanding the plurality of Voices that had conferr'd the Popedom on *Alexander*; he espoused his Cause, by Reason he was before in his Interests; whereas the other was of *William* King of *Sicily*'s Party, whom *Frederick* had long counted his Enemy; which, and the Example of former Popes, obliged *Alexander* to have Recourse to that King's Protection. However, the Emperor, that he might not support *Victor* without a plausible Pretence, order'd a Council to be call'd at *Pavia*, to judge of the Validity of each of these Elections; whither the two Competitors were cited, and *Frederick* open'd it on the
1160. second of *February* 1160, after which he went out immediately, that he might not by his Presence prevent their giving their Opinions freely.

VICTOR appear'd thereat, but *Alexander* did not think proper to be present, because that, esteeming himself the true Pope, he could not own a Council which had been call'd without his Consent. Here *Victor*'s Election was confirm'd, the Emperor himself adoring him, and causing him to be acknowledged with the usual Solemnities. On the other hand, *Alexander*, having made use of Remonstrances to *Frederick*, to bring him to himself, finding he would not leave *Victor*'s Party, thundered out a

Sentence

Sentence of Excommunication ſolemnly againſt him at *Anagni*, in Preſence of ſeveral Biſhops and Cardinals, whom he call'd thither, abſolving all his Subjects from their Oath of Allegiance; and at the ſame Time he alſo renewed that he had before iſſued out againſt *Victor*. FREDERICK I.

NOTWITHSTANDING all theſe Excommunications, *Frederick* did all that lay in his Power to perſuade the World that *Victor*'s Election was lawful and Cannonical; he even ſent Ambaſſadors to the Kings of *France* and *England* to draw them over to his Side; but *Alexander* gain'd the better, and his Cauſe being examined by thoſe two Princes, and found juſt, they took him into their Protection: Hereupon the *Milaneze*, and the reſt of *Lombardy* alſo, eſpous'd his Party, and driving out the Emperor and *Victor*'s Partiſans, expreſs'd their Sorrow for having own'd him. Nevertheleſs, *Alexander*, not thinking himſelf in Safety, neither in *Rome*, nor the reſt of the Territories of the holy See, becauſe thoſe of *Frederick*'s Party were very powerful, went to *Genoa*, and thence into *France*, where he arrived about *Eaſter*; ſometime after which he went to *Clermont* in *Auvergne*, and held a Council, where he did not ſpare hurling his Thunder both againſt *Victor*, *Frederick*, and all his Adherents. 1161. 1162.

THE Emperor, on the other hand, loſt no Time; for, aſſoon as the Seaſon would permit, he took the Field againſt the *Milaneze*, and other Rebels, and had ſeveral Advantages over them in divers Engagements; but he received a Check which ſenſibly affected him. He had ſurpriz'd their Troops, and poſting himſelf between the City and them, they were oblig'd either to fight, or ſurrender at Diſcretion, if he would not leave them a Paſſage open to *Milan*. This he refus'd,

which

FREDERICK I.

which threw them into Deſpair, hereupon they fought ſo bravely and reſolutely, that they obliged the Emperor to retire with Loſs. *Frederick*, incens'd at this Diſgrace, ravag'd the *Milaneze*, and reſolv'd to block up the City as cloſe as poſſible; the carrying on of the Siege being long and bloody, he intruſted it to his 1163. Generals, and went in the mean while where his moſt preſſing Occaſions call'd him; but being weary'd with the Length of it, he return'd to *Milan*, and preſs'd the City ſo ſharply, where moſt Part of the Inhabitants were already dying with Hunger, that they ſurrender'd 1164. at Diſcretion. His Imperial Majeſty, touched with Compaſſion, gave the Men, Women, and Children their Lives, and Liberty to come out; but for the reſt, he deliver'd the City to be plunder'd, and afterwards entirely demoliſh'd all but the Churches: He even had it plough'd up, and ſow'd with Salt, as a perpetual Memorial of their Rebellion. After this, without Delay he diſmantled *Breſcia* and *Piacenza*, and reduced the reſt of the revolted Cities, obliging them at the ſame Time to acknowledge *Victor*; then, elate with this Succeſs, he returned to *Germany*, at that Time full of private Quarrels, which had arm'd moſt Families, and appeaſed them with his uſual Addreſs.

The Emperor returns to Germany.

BUT as the Reflexion of his rigorous Treatment of *Milan*, was a Spur which continually incited almoſt all the Cities of *Italy* againſt him; they again revolted, being beſides underhand ſtirr'd up by Pope *Alexander*, which oblig'd the Anti-Pope, *Victor*, to ſeek Refuge with *Frederick*, who, hearing of this general Inſurrection, reſolv'd immediately to return to *Italy*. He thought it proper for *Victor* to go before him, as he did; but, arriving at *Lucca*, he died there

there the ſame Year, 1164; and, few Days after his Deceaſe, the Cardinals of his Faction elected *Paſchal* III in his Room, whom the Emperor caus'd to be acknowledged in a Diet, which he call'd ſome Time after at *Wirtzbourg* for that purpoſe. FREDERICK I.

ABOUT this Time Pope *Alexander*, being inform'd how well diſpos'd all *Italy* was to his Intereſts, was perſuaded by their Entreaties to return to *Rome*, going by Sea to *Meſſina*, whence *William* King of *Sicily* convoy'd him in his Ships to *Oſtia*; and thence he ſet out for *Rome*, while *Paſchal* kept at *Lucca*, in Expectation of the Emperor. *Pope Alexander returns to Rome.* 1165.

FREDERICK then having rais'd a formidable Army, return'd to *Italy* in 1166, and, defeating the *Romans*, aſſiſted by the *Neapolitans* and Rebel-Cities, obliges *Alexander* to retire to the Territories of the King of *Sicily*, by whom he is protected; then, puſhing on his Point, enters *Rome*, eſtabliſhes *Paſchal*, and makes him crown the Empreſs, to give the Pope more Authority by that remarkable Action. 1166. *The Emperor's third Expedition into Italy.*

TILL now every thing had ſmil'd on the Emperor; but his Troops being ſeiz'd with the Plague, it made ſo great Havock, that, ſeeing this Turn of Affairs, he was very fortunate to make Haſte, ſave what Forces he could, and regain *Tuſcany*; whence, after having ſecur'd himſelf of ſome Towns, he return'd for *Germany*. This Diſgrace happening to his Army, and this precipitate Retreat, made the Cities of *Italy* take Heart again; and, the Year following, almoſt all ſhook off their Yoke, and made a League together for the Preſervation of their Liberties: Even thoſe of *Milan*, finding the Emperor ſufficiently employed in *Germany*, took that Opportunity to rebuild their City; which they 1167.

did

FREDERICK I.

did with ſo much Eagerneſs, that they almoſt brought it to Perfection in a very ſhort Time.

1168. 1169. POPE *Paſchal* dying in the Year 1169, the Cardinals of his Faction elected *Caliſtus* III; but his Imperial Majeſty receiving advice on all hands, that all *Italy* was weary'd with the length of this Schiſm, and that his Friends, as well as his Enemies, paſſionately deſir'd to ſee it ended, made him fear that all would revolt; wherefore, finding he ſhould be oblig'd to make another Expedition into *Italy*, he prepar'd long before-hand all things neceſſary for it. Hereupon, having rais'd a numerous Army, he croſs'd the *Alps*, and, entring *Lombardy* in 1174, found the Enemy's Forces likewiſe in the Field; but the two Armies, contenting themſelves with ſeveral Skirmiſhes, did not come to a general Battle till the Year following, when the Emperor was not ſucceſsful; for he loſt it, and narrowly eſcap'd being kill'd. He was the more ſenſible of this Diſgrace, in that, being accuſtom'd to conquer, and reign in the midſt of Laurels, he ſaw himſelf oblig'd to ſubmit, and give up a Part he had hitherto gloriouſly ſuſtain'd in the Eyes of all Chriſtendom. What exaſperated him the more, was, to ſee moſt of the Princes of *Germany* forſake his Intereſts at the ſame Time; amongſt others, *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, (call'd after his Father, the *Proud*) abandon'd him entirely whilſt he laid Siege to *Alexandria*. The Emperor did what he could to retain him; but all the Reaſon he gave him was, that he would not be excommunicated; however, the Event ſhew'd he was incited by the Pope to go into *Germany*, and invade the Empire.

1174. Frederick's fourth Expedition into Italy, where he loſes one Battle, and gains another, 1175.

FREDERICK was not ignorant hereof, and for that Reaſon wiſh'd ardently within himſelf to make Peace; eſpecially ſeeing Prince

Henry

Henry, his eldeſt Son, who commanded his Fleet againſt the *Venetians*, had loſt a Battle, and was made Priſoner. But as he was of a great Soul, he thought it not proper yet to diſcover his Deſire of an Agreement with the Pope; wherefore he rally'd his Troops, made a new Effort, and in a little Time put himſelf in a Capacity to diſpute the Field with his Enemies. Hereupon, having given them Battle the Year after, he beat, and routed them; and as he was as great a Politician as General, he did not loſe that favourable Opportunity of coming to an Accommodation. FREDERICK I. 1176.

BUT as Authors differ about this Point of Hiſtory, and about the Circumſtances of the Emperor and Pope's Interview, I thought I might depend upon the Account given by *Romuald*, Biſhop of *Salerno*. As this Prelate was then Ambaſſador of the King of *Sicily*, and in this Quality an Eye-Witneſs of all theſe Incidents, 'tis probable that he ſpeaks without Diſguiſe or Flattery, beſides which he agrees with *Sigonius*. He ſays then, that *Frederick*, having gain'd a ſecond Battle over the *Lombards*, was at the ſame Time ſollicited and preſs'd by the Princes of the Empire, to make Peace with Pope *Alexander*, for the Good and Quiet of the Church and Empire; that, in order to this, he ſent the Archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Magdebourg*, and the Biſhop of *Worms*, with the Sieur *De Palſy* his Secretary, Ambaſſadors to him, with a full Power to treat of an Accommodation, and conclude it; that they met the Pope at *Anagni*, who receiv'd them with the more Joy, in that he had himſelf a long Time wiſh'd for Peace; that it was concluded ſoon after, and agreed that the Pope and the Emperor ſhould have an Interview ſo ſoon as poſſible, to ratify it in Perſon. *Reconciliation between the Pope and the Emperor, and their Interview.*

THE

FREDERICK I.

THE ſame Author adds, that the Ambaſſadors returned to *Frederick* with this Treaty; all which this Prince approved, except the Expedient for a Peace, which the Pope had propoſed with regard to the *Lombards*, which Expedient he refuſed to ratify; that *Alexander* having been inform'd of this Denial, it was agreed to have another Aſſembly at *Ferrara*, where he was again preſent in Perſon with the Ambaſſadors, to take other Meaſures, and remove this Difficulty; that in the mean while this Negotiation being ſpun out to a long Time, ſome Flaterers had taken Advantage of the Abſence of the Ambaſſadors, who were the Emperor's moſt faithful and moſt able Miniſters, to perſuade him that they had favoured the Pope in their Negotiation to the Prejudice of his Reputation, and for their own particular Intereſts; that thereupon the Emperor fell into ſuch a Paſſion, that he diſown'd his Ambaſſadors, and declared for *Caliſtus*, which he had not till then done, that the Ambaſſadors being inform'd hereof, deſired *Alexander* to ſend his *Nuntio* with them to *Frederick* to demand the Ratification of the Treaty; that the Ambaſſadors and *Nuntio*, being arrived at the Imperial Court, gave an Account of their Negotiation; and that afterwards the Emperor refuſed to ratify the Treaty; that he remain'd fix'd in this Reſolution for ſome Time, endeavouring to find ſome Means to revoke the Power he had given them; that, on the other hand, the Archbiſhops of *Mentz*, *Cologn*, *Treves*, and *Magdebourg*, with the Biſhop of *Worms*, the Vice-Chancellor *Godfrey*, and the Secretary *Palfy*, all of whom had been employ'd by him in this Negotiation, deſiring to prevent the fatal Conſequences of this Rupture, repreſented to him by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, that his Majeſty could not but remember

ber the Commiſſion he had given them, to go to *Anagni* and treat with the Pope; that his Holineſs had acted in this Affair like a Man of Honour; that 'twas not to be doubted but he deſired Peace, and that he was gone to wait its Ratification at *Venice*; that nevertheleſs they were inform'd that his Majeſty, at the Perſuaſion of ſome particular Perſons, was no longer of the ſame Mind, as to the Agreement they had juſt made between the *Roman* Empire and the Church; that, if it were ſo, they would not diſſemble with him, that they were all ready to pay him due Reſpect, and to aſſiſt him with their Troops and Counſels, becauſe they were obliged by Oath thereunto, on Account of their Characters and Benefices; but as he, being Emperor, had Power only over the Body, and not over the Soul, they were not inclin'd to oblige him with that, at the Riſque of their eter- Damnation, nor to loſe Heaven for Earth; and that therefore they declared to him that they were all unanimouſly reſolved to acknowledge Pope *Alexander* III, as the true Head of the Church, and to regard *Caliſtus*, but as an Anti-Pope. Upon this Declaration, ſays the ſame Hiſtorian, the Emperor came to himſelf, and changing his Mind, made Anſwer, That 'twas juſt he ſhou'd conform himſelf to the Sentiments of his principal Miniſters, and Princes of the Empire; that they ought to contribute to the Execution of what they thought for the Safety and Advantage of the Common-weal; and that, to ſhew them he did not deſire to abandon either them or their Counſels, he was ready to ſend Count *Henry Deſſau* with them and the *Nuntio* to *Venice*, to confirm by Oath in his Name the Treaty they had made. Hereupon he diſpatch'd them immediately; and thoſe Princes accordingly

FREDERICK I. 1177.

FREDERICK I.

ingly were next Day at *Venice*, where they executed his Order. He alſo ſet out himſelf a little after for that Place, with an Intent to ratify in Perſon all that had been concluded, and to viſit the Pope, as he had *Adrian*, and *Victor*, and as the Emperors his Predeceſſors had done with Relation to other Pontifs.

HE arrived there on St. *James's* Eve; and as the *Venetians* were appriz'd of his coming, the Doge, the Patriarch, the Biſhop, with the Clergy and the Senate went out to meet him, and conducted him in their *Gondola's* to St. *Mark's* Strand, where the Pope with the Cardinals waited for him before the Church. The Emperor, on his approaching his Holineſs, who was ſeated in a Chair, made him a low Bow, and kiſs'd his Feet. This Humility forced Tears from the Pontif, who inclining towards him, embraced him, and gave him the Kiſs of Peace; after which *Frederick* taking him by the Hand, they entered the Church together, from whence, after Maſs, which was celebrated by his Holineſs, he reconducted him to the Church Door, giving him always the right Hand: And, when *Alexander* was going to mount a Horſe, that was brought to carry him to the Sea, he held the Stirrop, and wou'd again have follow'd him; but his Holineſs would not ſuffer him to go any farther, and begg'd him ſo earneſtly to retire, that he comply'd.

Ratification of the Peace made by the Pope and Emperor in Perſon.

THESE firſt Civilities being thus paid, the Pope, Emperor, and all the Princes met on the firſt of *Auguſt* in the patriarchal Palace, where his Holineſs, being ſeated in a Chair prepared for him, made a Diſcourſe in *Latin*, concerning the Peace concluded between him and *Frederick*; and, after he had done ſpeaking, the Emperor anſwered it in his Mother Tongue, which was the

German, and interpreted into *Latin* by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, that all might underſtand it. Not but the Emperor was Maſter of the *Latin*, but he would not uſe it in this illuſtrious Aſſembly, that he might ſupport the Honour and Dignity of the *German* Empire. And as his Imperial Majeſty had publickly declared that he was ſincerely inclined to execute the Treaty, it was ſworn to be ſolemnly obſerv'd by the Deputies in the Name of the Pope and Emperor, and the Ratifications were exchang'd with all imaginable Marks of Rejoicing. This Joy laſted whilſt they remained at *Venice*, that is, all the Month of *Auguſt* to the thirteenth of *September*, when the Emperor ſet out for *Ravenna*. FREDERICK I.

THESE Circumſtances ſhew with how little Foundation ſome Hiſtorians have ſaid, that *Frederick* ſuffered himſelf to be trampled on by the Pope; for without alledging that the Emperor had as great a Spirit as any Prince whatever, is it probable that he could have ſpent ſo much Time in Joy, and the beſt Underſtanding imaginable with his Holineſs, after having received from him the moſt cruel of Outrages? That is, if after bowing to pay him Reverence, the Pope ſet his Foot upon his Neck, as upon a Serpent, repeating theſe Words of the *Pſalmiſt*, *Thou ſhalt tread upon the Adder and the Serpent*; and that when the Emperor anſwered him, *That was wrote for* Peter, *not for you*, he ſhould reply, *Both for St.* Peter *and me.* In ſhort, there is no likelihood in it, and poſſibly 'tis only an imaginary Story, as diſadvantagious to the Reputation of the Pope, as of the Emperor. *The Improbability of what ſome relate concerning this Interview.* *Pſal.* 91.

AFTER this Reconciliation between *Frederick* and *Alexander*, the Rebellious Cities that had leagued together for their mutual Preſervation

FREDERICK I.

vation, were not long before they ſought to be reſtored to his good Graces. Their Agreement was made at *Conſtance*, and upon his granting them a general Pardon, with Liberty to retain their own Laws, and Manner of Government, they obliged themſelves to acknowledge him as their Sovereign, and, in that Quality, took an Oath of Allegiance to him; 'twas alſo agreed, that, in any Cauſe which exceeded a certain Sum, they might appeal to the Officers whom he ſhould appoint in *Lombardy*, that the Inhabitants of theſe Cities might not be obliged to ſollicit their Suits in *Germany*.

1178.

The Anti-Pope Caliſtus *ſurrenders himſelf to Pope* Alexander, *who receives him with Humanity.*

THE Anti-Pope *Caliſtus* ſeeing himſelf without Support by the Reconciliation of the Pope and Emperor, cou'd find no better Refuge than in the Goodneſs of that Pontif; in ſhort, he flung himſelf into his Arms, and his Holineſs, by receiving him with abundance of Humanity, made it appear that he had learn'd of Jeſus Chriſt to be meek and humble. But to prevent the Schiſms that were caus'd by the Diviſions that happen'd in the electing of Popes, *Alexander* call'd a Council, whereby, among other Things, it was decreed, that, to be legally choſen, one muſt have at leaſt two-thirds of the Votes.

The Pope holds a Council.

1180.

The Emperor returns to Germany.

WHILST all theſe Things were tranſacting in *Italy*, *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* had embroil'd the Affairs of the Empire; but the Emperor arriving with extraordinary Diligence in *Burgundy*, and having ſummoned this Prince to a Diet, where he did not appear, he confiſcated his Dominions, wherewith he gratified his Creatures; who puſhed ſo vigorouſly upon *Henry*, that *Frederick* had nothing to fear.

POPE *Alexander* dying the 27th of *Auguſt*, 1181, *Lucius* III was choſen in his Place, who imme-

immediately ſet his Heart upon the Affairs of the *Chriſtians* in the *Holy Land*. Some Difference he had with the Emperor on Account of the Succeſſion to the Counteſs *Matilda*'s Territories, which, he pretended, belonged to the Church, by the Will of that Princeſs, and whereof *Frederick* reſolved to keep Poſſeſſion, as having a right thereto; each of them came to *Verona* the Year following, in order to make ſome Agreement; but this Diſpute was not decided.

FREDERICK I.

Pope Alexander's *Death.*

THIS Affair was again brought upon the *Tapis*, at the ſame Place, with *Urban* III, who ſucceeded *Lucius*, and the Conteſt was ſo ſharp between the Emperor and him, that they were upon the Point of coming to an open Rupture. In the mean while *Frederick* being come into *Italy*, chiefly on Account of the Marriage of his Son *Henry*, who was Twenty one Years old, with *Conſtance*, Siſter and Heireſs to *William* King of *Sicily*, had advanced the Negotiation ſo far, that it was concluded on, and the Nuptials were celebrated with an extraordinary Magnificence in the City of *Milan*, which he had formerly ſacked and deſtroyed, and which the Inhabitants had rebuilt with great Splendour.

The Emperor's fifth Journey into Italy, *where his Son* Henry *marries the Heireſs of* Sicily.

AFTER the Conſummation of this Marriage, which in leſs than three Years brought into his Family the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, by the Death of *William* without Children, *Frederick* returned to *Germany*, where he governed his Dominions in a profound Peace; but being informed of the miſerable State of the Chriſtian Affairs in *Paleſtine*, and of the taking of *Jeruſalem* by *Saladin* King of *Egypt*, he thought he cou'd not ſpend the reſt of his Days better than in ſacrificing them in the Defence

The Emperor returns to Germany *where he undertakes the Holy War, but firſt divides his Dominions among his Children.*

1186.

FREDERICK I. 1187.

of the Chriſtian Name. He undertook then in 1187, a Voyage to the *Holy Land*, with ſeveral other great Princes; and that the Affairs of the Empire might not ſuffer in his Abſence, he viſited that ſame Year all the principal Cities of *Germany*, attended with the Prince his Son, intending to intruſt him with the Care of the Empire during his Expedition.

BUT to eſtabliſh Peace more ſecurely, the Emperor reſolved alſo that his eldeſt Son *Henry* ſhould ſucceed him in the Empire, and by this Means obviate all Pretences that his other Children might have to diſturb its Tranquility; wherefore he made a Diſtribution amongſt them of their future Inheritance, and that in ſuch a Manner as might content all. He had no Children by *Alix*, Daughter to the Marquis of *Urſbourg*, his firſt Wife, whom he had repudiated; but he had five Sons and two Daughters by his Second, the Empreſs *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Regimbaud*, or *Renaud*, Count of *Burgundy*, who died two Years before, and had taken very particular Care of their Education. As for his eldeſt Son *Henry*, he had him elected King of the *Romans*, and his Succeſſor in the Empire in the Year 1181, and had married him, as has been before obſerved: And as for the States, Provinces and Territories which he inherited from his Family, he divided them amongſt his other Children. To *Frederick* his ſecond Son he gave the Duchy of *Suabia*, with that Part of *Bavaria* which came by Right of *Welf* his Brother, to which he added the County of *Pfullendorf*; to *Conrad* his third Son he gave the Duchy of *Rottembourg*; to Duke *Otho*, the Patrimony of the Empreſs *Beatrix*; and to Duke *Philip* his youngeſt, all the Poſſeſſions and Lands he had recovered from the Hands of the Eccle-

Eccleſiaſticks: ſo that they were all great and potent Princes. The Daughters were married; the One, (whom ſome call *Judith*, others *Luitgarde*) to *Conrad* Marquis of *Miſnia*; and the other, named *Bertha*, to *Matthew* firſt Duke of *Lorrain*. FREDERICK I.

THIS done, the Emperor *Frederick* ſet out for his *Aſian* Expedition in 1188; and the next Year paſſed the *Helleſpont*, with ſuch glorious Succeſs againſt the *Turks*, who diſputed his Paſſage, that the Terror of his Name was ſpread every where, and rais'd the Courage of the *Chriſtians*; but that was to be the Period of his Conqueſts. This great Prince was extreamly hardy, and as he was an excellent Swimmer, would bathe himſelf one Summer's Day in a River, as he had ſeveral times before; but the Stream prov'd ſo rapid, that he could not ſtem the Force of the Water, but was carried away by the Current, and drowned, without its being poſſible for any one to ſave him; however, his Body was taken up and buried at *Tyre*. 1188. 1189. Frederick *is drowned in* Syria June 10, 1190.

DURING his Reign, the greateſt of his Cares was to maintain Peace in the Empire, and with the neighbouring Princes; according to the *German* Etymology of his Name, *Frederick*, which ſignifies, *Rich in Peace*. He cou'd not be otherwiſe, being endued with ſo many good Qualities, and knowing well that a Prince ought only to be brave and warlike to maintain his Subjects in Peace. He was a Prince of great Courage, very good Senſe, and of an extraordinary Vivacity; beſides this, he was naturally eloquent, and of ſo happy a Memory, that he remembered the Names and Quality of all who treated with him. In a word, his Converſation was full of Charms, without any remarkable Vice; and for his external Accompliſhments, he *Encomium of the Emperor* Frederick.

FREDERICK I. 1187.

of the Chriſtian Name. He undertook then in 1187, a Voyage to the *Holy Land*, with ſeveral other great Princes; and that the Affairs of the Empire might not ſuffer in his Abſence, he viſited that ſame Year all the principal Cities of *Germany*, attended with the Prince his Son, intending to intruſt him with the Care of the Empire during his Expedition.

BUT to eſtabliſh Peace more ſecurely, the Emperor reſolved alſo that his eldeſt Son *Henry* ſhould ſucceed him in the Empire, and by this Means obviate all Pretences that his other Children might have to diſturb its Tranquility; wherefore he made a Diſtribution amongſt them of their future Inheritance, and that in ſuch a Manner as might content all. He had no Children by *Alix*, Daughter to the Marquis of *Urſbourg*, his firſt Wife, whom he had repudiated; but he had five Sons and two Daughters by his Second, the Empreſs *Beatrix*, Daughter to *Regimbaud*, or *Renaud*, Count of *Burgundy*, who died two Years before, and had taken very particular Care of their Education. As for his eldeſt Son *Henry*, he had him elected King of the *Romans*, and his Succeſſor in the Empire in the Year 1181, and had married him, as has been before obſerved: And as for the States, Provinces and Territories which he inherited from his Family, he divided them amongſt his other Children. To *Frederick* his ſecond Son he gave the Duchy of *Suabia*, with that Part of *Bavaria* which came by Right of *Welf* his Brother, to which he added the County of *Pfullendorf*; to *Conrad* his third Son he gave the Duchy of *Rottembourg*; to Duke *Otho*, the Patrimony of the Empreſs *Beatrix*; and to Duke *Philip* his youngeſt, all the Poſſeſſions and Lands he had recovered from the Hands of the Eccle-

Eccleſiaſticks: ſo that they were all great and potent Princes. The Daughters were married; the One, (whom ſome call *Judith*, others *Luitgarde*) to *Conrad* Marquis of *Miſnia*; and the other, named *Bertha*, to *Matthew* firſt Duke of *Lorrain*. FREDERICK I.

THIS done, the Emperor *Frederick* ſet out for his *Aſian* Expedition in 1188; and the next Year paſſed the *Helleſpont*, with ſuch glorious Succeſs againſt the *Turks*, who diſputed his Paſſage, that the Terror of his Name was ſpread every where, and rais'd the Courage of the *Chriſtians*; but that was to be the Period of his Conqueſts. This great Prince was extreamly hardy, and as he was an excellent Swimmer, would bathe himſelf one Summer's Day in a River, as he had ſeveral times before; but the Stream prov'd ſo rapid, that he could not ſtem the Force of the Water, but was carried away by the Current, and drowned, without its being poſſible for any one to ſave him; however, his Body was taken up and buried at *Tyre*. 1188. 1189. Frederick *is drowned in* Syria June 10, 1190.

DURING his Reign, the greateſt of his Cares was to maintain Peace in the Empire, and with the neighbouring Princes; according to the *German* Etymology of his Name, *Frederick*, which ſignifies, *Rich in Peace*. He cou'd not be otherwiſe, being endued with ſo many good Qualities, and knowing well that a Prince ought only to be brave and warlike to maintain his Subjects in Peace. He was a Prince of great Courage, very good Senſe, and of an extraordinary Vivacity; beſides this, he was naturally eloquent, and of ſo happy a Memory, that he remembered the Names and Quality of all who treated with him. In a word, his Converſation was full of Charms, without any remarkable Vice; and for his external Accompliſhments, he *Encomium of the Emperor* Frederick.

was finely ſhap'd, ſtrong and expert in Arms, both on Foot and Horſeback; and his Air was agreeable, and altogether majeſtick, adding to all theſe great Qualities an extream Thirſt of Glory.

CHAP. XIV.

HENRY *the Sixth.*

HENRY VI.

Is crowned at Rome, *the Pope putting on and pulling off the Crown at the ſame Time.*

WHEN *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Severe*, was informed of the Emperor his Father's Death, and almoſt at the ſame time of the Deceaſe of his Brother-in-law *William*, King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, he immediately levied what Forces he could, and marched into *Italy* with his Wife *Conſtance*, in order to be crowned Emperor by Pope *Clement* III, who then enjoyed the Holy See, and afterwards to take Poſſeſſion of *William*'s Dominions, (who died without legitimate Iſſue) in the Name of his Wife. On his arrival at *Rome*, a little before *Eaſter*, Pope *Clement* died, and *Celeſtine* III, who was almoſt eighty ſix Years old, was choſen in his room; and being inaugurated on *Eaſter-day*, crowned the Emperor and Empreſs the next Morning, but with one very extraordinary Circumſtance. The Pope being ſeated in his Chair, had placed the Imperial Diadem on the Ground before his Feet, and when *Henry* kneeled, and bowed down to ſalute him, his Holineſs putting the Crown upon his Head, threw it down with his Foot; whereupon the

1191.

Cardinals

Cardinals took it up and replaced it on him; which done, *Celeſtine* crowned the Empreſs alſo, but did not throw off the Crown with his Foot. HENRY VI.

BARONIUS owns, that this Action was indecent; but nevertheleſs excuſes it, and ſays, that he deſigned by this to give the Emperor to underſtand, that the Popes had the Power to confer and take away the Imperial Dignity, when Neceſſity ſhould oblige them to it. But as it has been already ſhewn in ſeveral Places, how little Grounds moſt Authors have for this Pretenſion, and how repugnant it is to natural Reaſon, 'tis entirely needleſs to make a more ample Detail of their Arguments, to deſtroy them, and prove they are without any Foundation.

THE Emperor being crowned, bent all his Thoughts upon taking Poſſeſſion of the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*; however, this was not to be done without difficulty; for *Tancred*, *William*'s Natural Son, had already made himſelf Maſter thereof, pretending they were Male Fiefs; nevertheleſs *Henry* advanced towards *Naples*, and beſieged it. But finding ſome time afterwards that his beſt Troops periſhed before the Place, without much Advantage, and that the other conſiderable Towns declared alſo for *Tancred*, he judged that he was not ſtrong enough to finiſh an Affair whereon his Reputation depended. For which reaſon he reſolved to repaſs ſpeedily into *Germany*, to raiſe new Forces there, and make ſuch Preparations to drive out the Uſurper of theſe two Kingdoms, that he ſhould not fail of Succeſs next Expedition.

DURING the Time he was making theſe new Levies, and other neceſſary Preparations, he

HENRY VI.

did not neglect the Affairs of the Empire, but bent his Thoughts upon eſtabliſhing good Orders to maintain Peace, and take all the Precautions imaginable to prevent the publick Tranquilities being diſturbed in his Abſence. He applied himſelf particularly to the having Juſtice carefully adminiſtered every where; and was ſo intent upon it, that he often ſpent much Time in hearing thoſe himſelf who came to prefer their Complaints to him; in which he behaved himſelf with ſuch Mildneſs and Patience, as attracted every one's Praiſe and Admiration. Some of his greateſt Confidents having one Day taken the Liberty to tell him, that the Audience he gave to every one fatigued him too much, and made his Meals irregular; he immediately anſwered, That a private Man might eat when he would, but that a Prince muſt not, before he had ſettled the Affairs of the Publick.

The Inſtitution of the Teutonick Order.

As 'twas under his Reign, and almoſt at the ſame time, that the illuſtrious *Teutonick Order* of Knighthood had its Riſe, 'twill not be improper (for the better clearing up ſome Places in the ſequel of this Work) to ſay ſomething here of the manner of its Inſtitution. When the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa* engaged himſelf in the famous *Croiſade*, mentioned in his Life, and marched with a formidable Army for the Recovery of the *Holy Land*, an infinite Number of *German* Noblemen and Gentlemen followed him as Volunteers; ſome moved by a Sentiment of Piety, others by a Deſire of Glory. They were beſides incited thereunto by the Example of divers great Princes of *Europe*, who either out of the like Motives, or in deference to the Pope's preſſing Inſtances, had imbarqued in the ſame *Croiſade*. Of this Number

HENRY VI.

Number were *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, *Richard* King of *England*, *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, the Dukes of *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*, *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, *Philip* Count of *Flanders*, *Florant* Count of *Holland*, *William* Count *Eaſt Friezeland*, *Otho* Count of *Guelderland*, *Theodore* Count of *Cleves*, with ſeveral other Dukes, Marquiſſes, Counts and Lords; and 'twas before all theſe Auguſt Witneſſes, that the Flower of the *German* Nobility ſignalized themſelves in all the Emperor *Frederick*'s great Exploits. After his Death the *Germans* being without a Chief before *Acon*, then beſieged by the *Chriſtians*, elected *Frederick*, the late Emperor's ſecond Son, and *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, Captain Generals of their Nation. Under theſe Commanders they ſignalized themſelves that Campaign by ſuch glorious Actions, as well at the taking of *Acon*, as of *Jeruſalem*, and other Cities and Places, that *Henry* King of *Jeruſalem*, the Patriarch, and other Princes, thought themſelves oblig'd, on this Account, to do ſomething extraordinary for the *German* Nation, in order to excite others by their Example.

FOR this Reaſon, as an eternal Mark of their great Services already done, and which they ſtill did in the *Holy Land*, it was propoſed to create an Order of Knighthood, under the Name of St. *George*, becauſe all thoſe Heroes ſerved on Horſeback. But after that they judg'd it more proper to put it under the Name and Protection of the *Virgin Mary*, becauſe there was an Hoſpital ſettled at *Jeruſalem*, on Mount *Sion*, for the Pilgrims and Poor of that Nation, under the ſame Denomination of the *Virgin Mary*, or *Notre Dame*. Hereupon they drew up Statutes upon the Foot of thoſe of the Order of *Templars*, and thoſe of St. *John*, call'd now of *Malta*,

HENRY VI.

Malta, whence they took what they thought moſt agreeable to an Order, which they deſign'd to render both Military, and Hoſpitable; to the End that they who were received Knights, after having ſpent part of their Lives in the Defence of the *Holy Land*, againſt the Enemies of the *Chriſtian* Name, might conſecrate the other to the Exerciſe of Hoſpitality to the Poor, and Pilgrims of their Nation, who would viſit the Holy Places.

THESE Statutes, amongſt other Articles, ordained, That all the Knights who ſhould be admitted ſhould be of noble Extraction; that they ſhould be called *Brother-Knights of the holy Virgin*; that they ſhould make a Vow to defend the *Chriſtian* Church in general, and the *Holy Land* in particular; that they ſhould protect the Eccleſiaſticks, Widows, Orphans, and Poor, when in Affliction; that they ſhould aſſiſt and ſerve thoſe who were of a Quality requiſite to be received into their Hoſpital; and, in general, that they ſhould perform all that is contained in their Rules and Statutes. For their principal Houſe, and original Foundation, they aſſigned them the *German* Hoſpital of *Notre Dame de Mont Sion*, whereof we have juſt made mention, which had been founded ſome time before by a Perſon of great Piety, and ſupported by the Alms of the *Germans*. And as this Inſtitution was not made but on Condition of obtaining the Emperor and Pope's leave; they diſpatched the Archbiſhop of *Bremen*, and the Biſhop of *Paderborn* to them, to procure their Approbation and Conſent. *Henry*, not content with granting their Requeſt, and confirming it, would alſo be their Protector, and uſe his good Offices with *Celeſtine* III, to induce him to put the finiſhing Hand to it;

it; to which that Pontif willingly consented, and approved the Statutes that were presented him, adding likewise these that follow, *viz.* that the Knights should wear a white Habit, whereon a Black Cross should be worked after the Manner of that of the Order of St. *John*; that they should not only carry the like black Cross in their Banners, but also in their Shields and Coats of Arms, and that they should observe St. *Austin*'s Rule. He also confirmed to them the Gift of the *German* Hospital of *Mount Sion*, for their principal Place of Foundation, and granted them the same Privileges with the Knights of St. *John*; and finally, he gave Indulgences to all who should assist or be Benefactors to this Order, as is recited more at length by the Bull he caused to be drawn up the 22*d* of *February*, 1191. HENRY VI.

'TWAS by Virtue of this Bull that the King of *Jerusalem*, jointly with *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, who was impowered by his Imperial Majesty, created the Knights of this Order, the Number whereof were at first but Forty; and at the same time *Henry Walpot*, a Gentleman of the Empire, was immediately chosen Grand Master, and, with the Knights, put in Possession of the *German* Hospital of *Mount Sion*.

THIS Order being thus established, all these Princes strove, as it were with Emulation, to be its Benefactors; the Pope and Emperor, amongst others, gave it considerable Marks of their Liberality; the latter adding, besides the Right of possessing for ever, all that the Order could conquer from the Infidels. And *Philip* King of *France*, being willing likewise to favour it, conferred many Benefits thereon, and granted the Grand Master the honour to bear the *Flower de Lis*, at the four Extremities of his Cross.

How-

HENRY VI.

HOWEVER, as the Emperor *Henry*, amongſt all the Affairs that had employ'd him ever ſince his return to *Germany*, had in no wiſe neglected that for which he came, and having now what Forces he thought neceſſary for the Recovery of the two *Sicily*'s, march'd without Delay for *Italy*. But, before he advanced in Perſon to the Kingdom of *Naples*, he diſpatch'd a conſiderable Part of his Army, under the Conduct of one of his Generals, to make the firſt Attempts, which were very ſucceſsful. This good Fortune, and the News he receiv'd almoſt at the ſame Time of *Tancred* his Competitor's dying a few Days after his Son *Robert*, made him reſolve to follow with the reſt of his Troops; and
1192. having joined the others, he ſoon made himſelf Maſter of *Apulia* and *Calabria*. Having carry'd the City of *Salerno* by Storm, he revenged himſelf barbarouſly of the Citizens for their having inſulted the Empreſs his Wife in making
1193. her Priſoner. This ſevere Puniſhment, and
The Emperor conquers the Kingdom of Naples. his ill Uſage of the other Cities that dar'd reſiſt him, exerciſing all manner of Cruelty therein, made the reſt implore his Clemency, inſomuch that, in a ſhort Time, he ſaw himſelf
1194. peaceable Maſter of the two *Sicily*'s,

Henry's Cruelty. THIS Prince was endow'd with fine Qualities, he was prudent, had a great Vivacity, ſpoke well, and was brave and active; but he blemiſh'd them all by his Cruelty, and breaking his Word. *Tancred* had left but one Son, an Infant, nam'd *William*, whom the *Neapolitans* declared King after his Father's Death; the Emperor could not reſt till he made himſelf Maſter of this Child, and even of his Mother, who was withdrawn into *Sicily* with her Son, and two Daughters. Hereupon he purſued them ſo cloſe, that they were obliged to ſurrender themſelves upon Terms

Terms propoſed to them; but without having any Regard to his Promiſe, he ſtripp'd them of all, and, out of an extraordinary Spirit of Revenge, caus'd the young Infant to be gelt, put out his Eyes, and confin'd the Mother with the two Daughters in a Monaſtery. HENRY VI.

DURING this Conqueſt the Empreſs *Conſtance*, tho' almoſt fifty Years old, became with Child; and *Henry*, to avoid all manner of Suſpicion of Impoſture in her Lying-in, would have her delivered under a Tent in the open Field near *Palermo*, in the midſt of all the People. Accordingly 'twas in that Place, and in the midſt of that fine Company, that, on the twenty ſixth of *December*, ſhe brought into the World a Son nam'd *Frederick*, who was afterwards Emperor. 1196. *The Emperor's Precaution about the Lying-in of the Empreſs.*

HENRY, having eſtabliſhed new Officers every where, moſt Part whereof were *Germans*, and given what Orders he judged neceſſary, returned to *Germany*, carrying with him the Chief of the Nobility and Prelates in the Kingdom, as Pledges for the Fidelity of the reſt. But this Precaution was of no uſe; for the others, not being able to bear the great Impoſitions he laid on them, rebell'd again; whereat he was ſo incenſed, that he caus'd the Eyes of all the Hoſtages to be put out. 1197. *The Emperor returns to Germany and treats the Sicilian Hoſtages ſeverely.*

THE firſt Thing he ſet about after his return to *Germany*, was, to get his Son *Frederick* elected King of the *Romans*, tho' in the Cradle; which the States of the Empire did, but more from the Fear of him, then any Love to his Perſon. If the Sentiments of theſe Princes were ſuch, thoſe of Pope *Celeſtine* were not much different; *Henry*'s Power kept him in continual Fear and Diſquiet, wherefore he perpetually ſollicited him with the greateſt Earneſtneſs *Has his Son choſen King of the* Romans.

HENRY VI.

Earneſtneſs to go to the Aſſiſtance of the *Chriſtians* in the *Holy Land*, and for this Effect, to march with a conſiderable Army into the *Levant*, and to command them in Perſon, after the Example of his Father *Frederick*. But this Prince contented himſelf with ſending thither an Army under the Command of the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, with the Princes of *Auſtria*, *Brabant*, and *Thuringia*; and being preſs'd to return into *Italy*, to deſtroy the remains of ſome Inſurrections, and eſtabliſh Peace, he carried the Empreſs, and his Son the King of the *Romans* with him, and thence paſs'd directly into *Sicily*, that he might provide the more conveniently what was neceſſary for the *holy War*.

Henry's Death.

BUT having heated himſelf in *Auguſt* by hunting near *Meſſina*, and reſolving to ſpend the Night in the cool Air near a Fountain, that he might reſt the more agreeably, he found himſelf ſo ſtruck on his awaking with the Cold of the Night, that he was ſeized with a very acute Diſeaſe, whereof he died ſoon after. Others ſay that his Wife poiſoned him, ſhe being of *Tancred*'s Blood, and not able to digeſt the Cruelty wherewith he had treated the little Prince *William*; however he died at *Meſſina* in *Sicily* the twenty ninth of *September*, having by his great Actions ſpread the Terror of his Name as far as the Court of *Alexis* Emperor of the *Greeks*. He even pretended to render that Empire tributary to him, and had already ſent Ambaſſadors to *Conſtantinople* with an Offer of Peace, on Condition of paying Tribute, or otherwiſe to declare War. But this great Deſign proved abortive by his Death, as well as the Meaſures he had taken to extend the Reputation and Power of the Weſtern Empire in the *Levant*; but on the News of his Death, all the Troops he

he had ſent, with a Number of brave Men, forſook the War, and returned to *Europe*, leaving the *Holy Land* a Prey to the *Saracens*.

CHAP. XV.

PHILIP.

PHILIP Duke of *Suabia* was on his Way to *Sicily* when he received the firſt News of the Emperor *Henry*'s Death; and a few Days after, whilſt he was yet on the Frontiers of *Italy*, he was met by an Envoy, who was diſpatch'd to him according to the Emperor's Order, and delivered into his Hands the Crown, Scepter, Spear, and Imperial Globe, with the Will of the deceaſed, whereby he was intruſted with the Guardianſhip of *Frederick* his Son, King of the *Romans*, and the Government of the Empire till he ſhould be at Age. He was inform'd at the ſame Time that the Inhabitants of the Kingdoms of *Sicily* and *Apulia* had mutiny'd, and put moſt of the *German* Troops to the Sword; but judging that his Preſence would be more neceſſary in *Germany*, and that no Time was to be loſt, he return'd thither in all Haſte with his Forces, to endeavour to preſerve the Empire for his Nephew.

PHILIP. *He is declared Adminiſtrator of the Empire and Tutor to Frederick, Henry's Son.*

IN the mean while Pope *Innocent*, who had ſucceeded *Celeſtine*, being deſirous to take Advantage of *Frederick*'s Minority, as of a favourable Opportunity to ruin the Houſe of *Suabia*, which he and his Predeceſſors had always eſteemed

The Pope's Faction to deprive the Houſe of Suabia of the Imperial Crown.

PHILIP. steemed to be averſe to their Authority, reſolv'd at any Price to tranſlate the Imperial Dignity to another Family. For his own Part, he had ſo great an Enmity to thoſe Princes, that he ſaid either Duke *Philip* muſt loſe the Empire, or himſelf the Popedom; and accordingly he did not fail to write to the Archbiſhops of *Treves* and *Cologn*, to proceed to the Election of another Emperor, excluſive of the Houſe of *Suabia*. Nor did he omit any Thing afterwards to ſatisfy his Paſſion, and ſow Diviſions in *Germany*, even ſo far as abſolving the Princes of the Oath of Allegiance they had taken to the Emperor *Henry*, in behalf of his Son.

Some Princes of the Empire chooſe Otho *of* Saxony.

IN Compliance with the Pope's Deſires, the Archbiſhops of *Treves* and *Cologn*, aſſiſted by the Biſhops of *Paderborn* and *Minden*, with *Henry* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, *Herman* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, the Dukes of *Brabant* and *Limbourg*, the Count *de Dachsbourg*, and others, choſe *Berthold* Duke of *Seringia* King of the *Romans* at *Cologn*. But this Duke refuſing that Dignity for ſome Reaſons, they elected in his Room *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, who was then with the King of *England* his Uncle, and ſent the Counts *de Dachsbourg* and *Leiningen* to him, to give him Advice of his Election, and deſire him to return with all Speed to *Germany*.

Otho *crown'd.*

OTHO having accepted of this Honour with Joy, did not delay coming, and having aſſembled his Partiſans, with a good Body of Troops, which were reinforced by thoſe of his Brother *Henry* Count Palatine, ſeized on *Aix la Chapelle*, where the Archbiſhop of *Cologn* crown'd him Emperor. On the other hand, *Conrad* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, with the Archbiſhops of *Magdebourg* and *Bezancon*, the Biſhops of *Munſter*, *Ratisbon*, *Freiſingen*, *Augsbourg*, *Conſtance*, *Eichſtat*,

ſtat, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Brixen*, *Hildeſheim*, the Abbots of *Fulda*, *Hirchfeldt* and *Kempden*, the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, *Auſtria* and *Moravia*, the Marquis of *Rottembourg*, and ſeveral other Princes, met at *Mulhauſen*, or, as others ſay, at *Erfort*, where they confirmed the election of *Frederick*, who was not yet three Years old, and to give his Uncle *Philip* more Authority to exerciſe his Guardianſhip, choſe him at the ſame time King of the *Romans*, did him Homage, and took the Oath of Allegiance. Theſe two different Elections of *Otho* and *Philip* divided all *Germany*, and the Princes forming two Parties, each of which joined themſelves to the two Rivals, whoſe Side they eſpouſed, cauſed the Ruin of the Empire, and laid it entirely deſolate.

PHILIP. *The others elect* Frederick, *and* Philip *his Uncle King of the* Romans. 1198.

THE Pope made no ſcruple of declaring for *Otho*, but approved his Election, and even ſent a Cardinal as Legate not only to confirm it, but alſo to excommunicate *Philip*, and all his Adherents. *Otho* thus ſupported by *Rome*, and elate with the Excommunication thundered againſt *Philip*, reſolves, with thoſe of his Party, to puſh him to the laſt Extremity. Accordingly they marched againſt him, made him quit the Field in ſeveral Engagements, and at laſt reduced him to ſhut himſelf up in a Place, where they beſieged him, and thought him already taken, but he eſcaped very ſubtilly in the Night. *Otho* ſeeing himſelf thus Maſter of the Field, calls a Diet at *Mersbourg*, where he was a ſecond time crowned by the Pope's Legate, who again confirmed and approved his firſt Election.

1199. *The Pope excommunicates* Philip. *Advantages gained by* Otho. 1200. 1201. 1202. 1203. Otho's *ſecond Coronation.*

HOWEVER, *Philip* was not in the leaſt diſcouraged by his ill Fortune, but levying a conſiderable Body of Troops, by the Aſſiſtance of

Philip's *Succeſs.* 1204.

PHILIP. *France*, and divers other Princes, and following an old prudent Maxim which was ſucceſsful to him, reſolved to ruin the principal of *Otho*'s Confederates. He began then by the *Landgrave* of *Thuringia*, whoſe beſt Towns he took, and deſtroyed the Country; at the ſame time he marched againſt the *Bohemians*, who were coming to the *Landgrave*'s Aſſiſtance, and utterly routed them. This Victory changed the Face of Affairs entirely, ſo that either by Force, or otherwiſe, his moſt formidable Enemies were obliged to agree with him; and as he was a Prince of a ſweet Temper, they were in haſte to have recourſe to his Clemency, and the *Landgrave*, who was the firſt that implored it, immediately felt the good Effects thereof, which engaged him to eſpouſe his Cauſe entirely. This was *Otho*'s firſt Diſgrace; the ſecond was, that the Count Palatine, *Henry* his Brother, whom *Philip* threatened to deprive both of his Office and Dominions, left him, and went over to *Philip*'s Side; and the third was, that the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, who had preſided at *Otho*'s Election, and crowned him at *Aix la Chapelle*, did the ſame, abandoning his Intereſts, without any regard to the Oath of Allegiance he had taken, or the Pope's Excommunication. *Otho* was ſenſibly touched hereat, ſeeing he loſt ſuch powerful Supports, and that without them he could not maintain himſelf in his Dignity.

Philip's *ſecond Coronation.*

PHILIP, on the contrary, proud of his good Fortune, would, according to his Rival's example, confirm his Election by a ſecond Coronation; and as the former Emperors were crowned at *Aix*, he received the Crown there ſolemnly at the Hands of *Adolphus*, Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, before mentioned. Pope *Innocent* ſeemed to be infinitely incenſed at the Archbiſhop

biſhop of *Cologn*'s Change, and cauſed him to be publickly excommunicated by the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*; but the Sequel ſhew'd, that his Animoſity againſt the Houſe of *Suabia* was not *gratis*; he was willing (as they ſay) to fiſh in troubled Waters. For he took his time ſo well, in the middle of the Diviſions that were fomenting in the Empire, between the Head and its Members, that, while they were employed in ruining each other, he conquered and ſecured to the Church of *Rome* the greateſt Part of the Patrimony ſhe poſſeſſes at preſent, and made himſelf be acknowledged Sovereign, tho' theſe Provinces were before dependent on the Empire.

PHILIP. *The Pope foments the Diviſions in Germany for his own Advantage.*

PHILIP, without regarding what the Pope did, whoſe Policy he knew, redoubled his Care and his Forces againſt his principal Enemy, whom he obliged to quit the Field, and ſhut himſelf up in *Cologn*; there he beſieged him, and preſſed him ſo cloſe, that *Otho*, ſeeing no Safety but in Deſpair, reſolved to have recourſe to that, and to make a Sally with the Flower of his Troops, with an intention either to raiſe the Siege, or ſave himſelf by Flight, which laſt Deſign ſucceeded. All his Men were either killed or taken Priſoners, and amongſt the laſt was the new Archbiſhop of *Cologn*; as for *Otho*, he eſcaped, and fled into *Saxony*, and thence into *England*.

Philip's laſt Efforts againſt Otho.

THIS Advantage rendered *Philip* entire Maſter; he continued the Siege of *Cologn*; and, not being willing to deſtroy that fine City, took it upon Terms, and re-eſtabliſhed *Adolphus*, keeping the other always Priſoner; and as he had no more powerful Enemies upon his Hands, bent his Thoughts chiefly upon confirming his Friends in their good Intentions. Wherefore

Philip remains Maſter, and eſtabliſhes his Authority by Alliances. 1205.

PHILIP. he gave his eldeſt Daughter in Marriage to *Ottocare* King of *Bohemia*, and the ſecond to the eldeſt Son of the Duke of *Brabant*, and to others he gave large Preſents in Lands and Money. In fine, as he was naturally of a ſweet engaging Temper, he uſed them all in a manner ſo civil and generous, that he gained the Heart of every one. His Generoſity carry'd him even ſo far as to ſend Ambaſſadors to the Pope, in order to be reconciled to him; which were the more agreeably received by him, in that the Emperor thereupon ſacrificed ſeveral Provinces to him, that were Fiefs of the Empire.

Agrees with the Pope.

1206.

1207. THIS Reconciliation produced a general Peace; for the ſame Legates who, in the Pope's Name, had joined with the States of the Empire in favour of *Otho*, managed Matters ſo well in *Germany*, to ſtop the Courſe of a War ſo tedious and ſharp, that they perſuaded *Philip* to give his Daughter *Beatrix* in Marriage to *Otho*, and conſent that he ſhould ſucceed him in the Empire. The Minds of Men being calmed by this means, nothing remained for *Philip* to eſtabliſh an univerſal Peace throughout *Germany*, but to ſuppreſs ſome private Factions that ſtill diſturbed *Saxony*.

Philip at laſt agrees with Otho *by a Marriage.*

Philip's deplorable Death.

ACCORDINGLY, this Prince took a Reſolution to go thither in Perſon, and march'd with his Army; but on his arrival at *Bamberg* was ſeized with a Weakneſs which would not ſuffer him to proceed any farther; and this Indiſpoſition was the means uſed by Providence to execute the Sentence it had pronounced againſt him. He had been let Blood, and, that obliging him to keep his Chamber, diverted himſelf, after the Operation, with *Conrad* Biſhop of

1208. *Spires*, his Chancellour, and *Henry Cruchs* Count

Count *de Walbourg*, at which time the Count Palatine *Otho* of *Wittelsbach* desired to see him, and the Emperor himself, hearing his Voice, ordered him to be admitted. Hereupon he entered the Room, after conversing there some time, went out, and, taking his Gentleman's Sword, who was then waiting at the Chamber Door, pretended to play with the Broad Sword. *Philip*, not approving this Play, ordered him to desist, and told him, that was not a proper Place for him to divert himself in that manner with a naked Sword; to which he answered roughly, that it was the only proper Place, and at the same time gave the Prince a Stroke on the Throat. The Chancellor was so much terrified hereat, that he hid himself; but the Count *de Walbourg* seized upon the Palatine, who, to disengage himself, gave him a Cut on the Cheek, and escaped to the Bishop of *Bamberg*'s Palace. Whilst the Palatine and *Walbourg* were strug- 21 *June.* gling, the Emperor, who was wounded in the Jugular Veins, was suffocated in his Blood, and died immediately, without its being possible to assist him. What prompted the Palatine to this detestable Action, was, that *Philip* had promis'd to give him one of his Daughters in Marriage, and had refused him afterwards, because of his being declared infamous in a full Diet, by the Princes and States of the Empire, on Account of a Murther he had basely committed in the Court of *Bavaria*, on the Person of a Baron, who was a Man of Courage and Honour. PHILIP.

No one was unconcerned at *Philip*'s Death, because he had made himself entirely amiable by his good Qualities. He had an agreeable Countenance, and a fine Shape, though but of a middle Size; he was prudent, affable, eloquent, *Philip's Encomium.*

PHILIP. liberal, and merciful; and, tho' brave, intrepid, and fond of Glory, had nevertheleſs, out of pure Goodneſs to his People, laboured inceſſantly, as much as poſſible, to maintain Peace in the Empire, notwithſtanding all the Obſtacles the Court of *Rome* laid in his Way, to croſs ſo good a Deſign. He us'd to ſay, that it was no Shame to change any Meaſures that were ill begun. He was very powerful, rich, and Maſter of many Dominions hereditarily; but he had been obliged to ſell one part, and mortgage the other to pay his Troops; as for his Body it was carried to the Church at *Bamberg*, where it was long depoſited, till it was tranſferred to *Spires*, by Order of the Emperor *Frederick* II, his Nephew.

The Death of Philip's *Aſſaſſin.* As for the Palatine of *Wittelsbach*, they did not defer his Puniſhment; for he was condemn'd to Die by the Emperor *Otho*, and the Princes of the Empire, in a Diet held at *Augsburgh*, and his Eſtate was confiſcated; and a little after he was killed in a publick Duel by *Henry de Calate*, Marſhal of *Philip*'s Court.

CHAP. XVI.

OTHO *the Fourth.*

1208. Otho *being elected Emperor, paſs'd thro'* France *and laid a conſiderable Wager with the King* of *England*, IT has been obſerved in the beginning of *Philip*'s Reign, that when *Otho* was firſt elected King of the *Romans*, by ſome Princes of the Empire, he was with *Richard* King his Uncle by the Mother's Side.

But

But one Particular was omitted, which was, that on the News of this Election, *Richard*, having preſented him with a very conſiderable Sum of Money, adviſed him to paſs through *France*, in his Way to *Germany*, and endeavour to engage King *Philip Auguſtus* in his Intereſt. *Otho*, following this Counſel, went to *Poictiers*, where the King then was, and, being receiv'd very graciouſly, flattered himſelf at firſt with the Hopes of obtaining ſome Favour, but he ſoon found that he was deceived. For the King of *France*, (who loved the Emperor *Philip*, aſſiſted him privately, and ſaw plainly that Duke *Otho* would be obliged to yield him the Empire, by reaſon of his having but few Men, little Money, and not many Friends in *Germany*,) was deaf to all the Propoſals that were made in behalf of this Prince. He even ſaid one Day to him, as it were in Jeſt: *I hear you are elected to the Empire: 'Tis true*, anſwered the Duke, *but that muſt be as pleaſes God. Do you believe*, reply'd the King, *that you ſhall really attain to that Dignity?* For my part, *I much doubt whether all the* Germans *will approve of your Nomination; and I am ſo throughly convinced of it, that if you'll give me Choice of which of your Baggage Horſes I pleaſe, I conſent, if you are Emperor, to give you likewiſe the Choice of three of my beſt Cities, I mean* Paris, Eſtampes, *or* Orleans. *Otho* accepted the Offer, and *Philip Auguſtus* choſe the beſt Horſe with his Burthen out of fifty laden with an hundred and fifty thouſand Marks in Gold, which had been preſented him by the King of *England*, and *Otho* delivered it to him on the propoſed Conditions.

OTHO IV. *the Payment whereof he demand by Force of Arms.*

THINGS remained in this Poſture ſome Years; but *Otho* (ſucceeding the Emperor *Philip* at his Death, which was ten Years after the

OTHO IV. Wager, by Virtue of the Agreement made between them, with the Conſent of the States of the Empire, and the Imperial Dignity being confirm'd to him in an Aſſembly held for that Purpoſe at *Frankfort*) ſent a remarkable Embaſſy to the King of *France* to notify his Election, remind him of the Wager, and deſire him to perform his Promiſe, by delivering up the City of *Paris*, which he had choſen, according to the Liberty given him by their mutual Agreement.

THIS Compliment ſeemed ſomething harſh to the King; accordingly he reply'd, that Things were no longer in the ſame Condition as at the time of laying the Wager, becauſe he was then to win the Empire from his Competitor, which he, not having done, had himſelf loſt the Wager a conſiderable Time, and that this was all the Anſwer he had to make; that as for the reſt, if he had a mind to diſpute it with him, he might do it any Way he thought fit, and he would reply by the ſame.

He manages the Clergy dexterouſly.

THE Emperor *Otho*, no ways ſatisfy'd with this Anſwer, and ſtanding upon his Honour, reſolved to puſh the Thing to the utmoſt, but firſt was willing to eſtabliſh himſelf in the Empire. He had rais'd himſelf to it this ſecond Time, not ſo much in conſideration of the Right he pretended, as by his Addreſs in procuring himſelf the Votes of the Biſhops, and others of the Clergy, on his promiſing to aboliſh the Cuſtom always retained by the former Emperors; which was, to ſeize for their own Profit not only the Lands and real Eſtates, but alſo the perſonal Eſtates of the Biſhops, and other Incumbents, as Fiefs, to the Prejudice of their Heirs: I remarked this, becauſe his not keeping his Promiſe ſerved in the End as a Source of Diſcord.

As-

ASSOON as *Innocent* III. heard of the Election of *Otho*, whom he esteemed his Friend, and thought so much the more devoted to the Holy See, in that he had declared openly for him against *Philip*, the Pope sent Legates to congratulate him, and offer to crown him if he would come into *Italy*. This Offer tempted the Emperor, whereupon he called a Diet at *Haguenau*, where his Journey was resolved on; however, he did not set out till 1209, and being arrived in *Lombardy*, was received in all Places as their Sovereign. From thence he went to hold a Diet at *Bologna*, where he got great Supplies of Men and Money; and, having formed a powerful Army, marched to *Rome*, where the Pope received him very well, and crowned him, on Condition he would leave St. *Peter*'s Patrimony to the Church, that is to say, all the Countess *Matilda*'s Succession, and moreover, according to others, that he would swear Obedience to the Pope. He made this Promise with the more Readiness, and from the same Motive as he did before to the Bishops of *Germany* before mentioned, without considering the Consequences; for a little after he shew'd 'twas only to attain his Ends, and that he was not so great a Bubble as was imagined.

OTHO IV.

1209.

His Coronation at Rome.

IN a little time Fortune offered him a favourable Opportunity to declare himself; for several of his Men, who were incamped under the Walls of *Rome*, going to see the City, the *Romans* picked a Quarrel with them, and it increas'd to such a heighth, that the Citizens taking Arms, above a thousand Imperialists were killed on the spot. Hereupon the Emperor complained to the Pope, and demanded Satisfaction, but could not obtain his Desire; however, he dissembled his Chagrin at this refusal, but,

OTHO IV. but, in the end, he made it a great handle for Diſcontent, beſides his being diſſatisfy'd with the Pope for taking Advantage of the Broils in *Germany*, to make himſelf Maſter of *Apulia*, the Marquiſate of *Ancona*, and the Earldom of *Spoleto*, after firſt driving out his Officers. Wherefore he kept to himſelf his Deſign of diſcovering his Reſentment at a proper Opportunity, and, continuing to act the ſame Part, pretended to be very well pleas'd with the Pontif, ſet out from *Rome*, and, to appearance, took the Road to *Germany*. But being arrived in *Lombardy*, he marched ſtrait to *Milan*, where, meeting with a good Reception, he choſe that City for his Reſidence, and diſtributed his Troops in Quarters in the Country to paſs the Winter there.

Feint of the Emperor, who inſtead of returning to Germany, *takes up his Reſidence at* Milan.

1210. THE Spring following he took the Field, reſolving to eſtabliſh his Right and Authority in the uſurped Countries by force: God favoured his Arms, he gained his Ends after ſome Victories, and entered again into Poſſeſſion of all that had been taken from the Empire. *Innocent* III, was ſo much incenſed hereat, that he excommunicated him, giving Orders to *Sigifrid* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, to publiſh this Excommunication throughout the Empire; upon which he accordingly, both in execution of the Pope's Command, and to reſent the Emperor's not keeping his Promiſe, (of not uſing the antient Right of the *Regalia* over the Eccleſiaſticks) not only proclaimed and declared *Otho* excommunicated, and proſcribed all over *Germany*, diſcharging the Princes, States and Cities from the Allegiance and Obedience they had ſworn him, but, puſhing his Point, ſummoned the States to proceed to the Election of a new Emperor. The Diet was held at *Bamberg*, where

He reconquers what the Pope had uſurped from the Empire, whereupon his Holineſs excommunicates him and ſtirs up the States of the Empire againſt him.

where the King of *Bohemia*, the Dukes of *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*, the Landgrave *Herman* of *Thuringia*, and the other Eccleſiaſtick and ſecular Princes being met, they elected *Frederick* Duke of *Suabia*, King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, being then about thirteen or fourteen Years old, and having been proclaimed King of the *Romans* from his Infancy, at the Deſire of his Father *Henry* VI. Accordingly they immediately notified this Election to the Pope, and ſent Ambaſſadors at the ſame time into *Sicily*, to declare it to *Frederick*. OTHO IV.

THIS Revolution obliged *Otho* to abandon *Italy*, and return with all ſpeed to *Germany*, where he no ſooner arrived but he held a Diet at *Nuremberg*, whereat, amongſt others, were Duke *Henry*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, the Emperor's Brother, Duke *Henry* of *Brabant*, and the Duke of *Lorrain*, who having maturely weigh'd *Otho*'s juſt Reaſons for recovering the States and Countries uſurped by the Court of *Rome* in *Italy*, adviſed him to make War upon thoſe Princes, who, in complaiſance to the Pope, had proceeded to a new Election, contrary to all Reaſon.

THE Emperor being encouraged by the Reaſons of theſe Princes given in publick, deprived the King of *Bohemia* of his Kingdom, wherewith he inveſted his Son, who was come to the Diet to complain to the States and Princes that his Father the King of *Bohemia* had diſowned him, in divorcing his Mother the Marchioneſs of *Miſnia*, and marrying the King of *Hungary*'s Daughter. He at the ſame time declared War againſt *Herman*, Marquis of *Thuringia*, after putting him to the Ban of the Empire; whilſt *Henry* Count Palatine, *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, with ſome other Princes, attacked 1213.

and

Otho IV. and ruined the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, by his Order, which obliged that Prelate to withdraw, and take Refuge in foreign Countries.

AFTER theſe Advantages, the Emperor no longer doubted of his Re-eſtabliſhment; but, to aſſure himſelf the better of it, judged it neceſſary to weaken the main Support of the Pope, and the Princes his Partizans in the Empire: 'Twas *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, whom he had long had a Deſign upon, on account of his Wager; and the Opportunity ſeemed the more favourable, as that Prince was at War with the King of *England* his Uncle. *Otho* then joined his Forces to the *Engliſh*, carrying likewiſe what Allies he could, ſo that the Confederate Army conſiſted of near 200,000 Men; but *Philip Auguſtus* utterly routed them at the famous Battle of *Bovines*; and the defeat of unfortunate *Otho* was ſo great, that he narrowly eſcap'd. He would have regained *Germany*, but was prevented by young *Frederick*, who had been there ſome Time with a powerful Army, to receive the Empire, and had been welcomed by all the World with open Arms. Thus *Otho*, ſeeing himſelf rejected and forſaken by all the Princes in *Germany*, reſolved, in order to re-eſtabliſh himſelf, to go again into the neighbouring Provinces, where he thought ſtill to find Friends. There he levied many Troops, and joining with the Enemies of *France*, preſented Battle again to King *Philip Auguſtus* near *Tournay*: It was very bloody, and the King was in great danger, but at laſt the *French* Arms were Victorious.

Frederick *received in* Germany.

THE Emperor *Otho* eſcaped from the Fight, and finding himſelf without Refuge, ſought a Shelter in his Territories, retiring to *Brunſwick*, where he remained four Years without making

making any new Attempt; during which time he was an Example of Virtue by his Repentance, and finiſhed this unfortunate Life with great Devotion in the Year 1218.

CHAP. XVII.

FREDERICK *the Second.*

FREDERICK II.

FREDERICK II, being but nine Months old when his Father *Henry* II died, *Conſtance* his Mother had ſpared no Pains in his Education, nor to make him a great and virtuous Prince; nor was he wanting thereto by his good Temper and Wit; and, to improve himſelf the more, had learned the *Greek*, *Latin*, *German*, *French* and *Turkiſh* Languages. In particular, he followed the Steps of his Grandfather *Frederick* I, whoſe Name he bore, and whom he took for a Model. Like him, he held it for an inviolable Maxim, never to defer till To-morrow what could be done the ſame Day; imagining he had done nothing in an Affair, whilſt any Thing remained undone. He was a very powerful Prince; for, beſides the large Poſſeſſions he had by his Father and Mother, he inherited alſo the Duchies of *Suabia* and *Rottembourg* at the Death of his Uncle *Philip*, with other Territories, whereof he had taken Poſſeſſion.

Frederick's fine Education, and good Qualities.

HAVING then been invited out of *Italy* into *Germany* from the Year 1212, and the Year following being confirmed in the Imperial Dignity by the Princes aſſembled at *Mentz*, where they

FREDERICK II.

1250. *He is confirmed Emperor.*

they paid him Homage, and took the Oath of Allegiance, as well as the Imperial Cities on the *Rhine*, he was crowned in 1215 at *Aix la Chapelle* with great Magnificence; and 'twas obſerved that, in return for the Favours God had till then ſhown him, he made a Vow to go in Perſon to the War in the *Holy Land*.

1219. *Prepares to go into* Italy.

SOME Years after he called a Diet at *Frankfort*, where, having ſettled his moſt preſſing Affairs, he demanded of the Princes and States to provide for his Equipage, according to the antient Cuſtom, on account of his Deſign to go to *Rome* for his Coronation. Hereupon they immediately ſet about furniſhing him with all Things neceſſary, which being ready he ſet out for *Italy* in the Year 1220, and arrived at *Rome* in *September*, where he was crowned by Pope *Honorius* III, who ſucceeded *Innocent* III; and *Frederick*, after the example of his Predeceſſors, made great Preſents in Money, and other Things of value, out of pure Liberality, which the Popes ſince that Time would willingly have converted into a due Acknowledgment, as if the Emperors were obliged to it for obtaining their Crown. *Frederick*, after his Coronation, received the Homage and Oaths of the States and Cities of *Italy*, and, having ſettled all Things in Peace and Tranquillity, by the aſſiſtance of the Princes of the Empire who attended him, retired into his Kingdom of *Naples*.

1220. *He is crowned at* Rome.

THERE he found that *Richard* and *Thomas*, the two Brothers of the late Pope *Innocent*, with their Adherents, had made an Inſurrection, and ſeized on one Part of the Kingdom; hereupon he immediately proceeded againſt the Rebels, and cauſed the Count *Richard* to be arreſted, condemned, and ſent into Exile in the Kingdom of *Sicily*. The Count *Thomas*, and

ſome

ſome other of his Party, withdrew to *Rome*, where Pope *Honorius* received them with Joy; and ſome Biſhops and Officers of the Inquiſition being found guilty of this Revolt, were alſo driven out of the Kingdom, and deprived of their Offices and Benefices, which were ſupplied by others. FREDERICK II. 1221.

POPE *Honorius* hearing the Complaints of theſe Exiles, exhorted the Emperor by Letters and Embaſſies to re-eſtabliſh them in their Dignities and Offices; inſinuating to him, that he had raſhly aſſumed to himſelf the Office of Comptroller and Judge of the Eccleſiaſtick State, and that 'twas an Incroachment upon the Authority of the Holy See; and that if thoſe Prelates and Officers had offended him in any wiſe, he ought to addreſs himſelf to the Pope, as Head of the Eccleſiaſtical Order, to decide the Difference.

THE Emperor anſwered him, that he had been informed by the Princes of the Empire, and others, that ever ſince *Charlemagne*'s Time the Emperors and Kings had a Sovereign Authority and Juriſdiction over the Eccleſiaſtick State; that they had promoted the Biſhops and Abbots to their Dignities and Benefices, and had deprived them of them, in Caſe of Forfeiture or Miſdemeanor; that his Grandfather *Frederick*, and his Father *Henry* VI, had maintained this Juriſdiction entire; and that he, being rais'd to the ſame Imperial Dignity, reſolved to have the ſame Authority; and that therefore he neither cou'd nor wou'd reſign it to the Prejudice of the Empire, and his Succeſſors.

THAT as to his Hereditary Kingdoms, his Mother *Conſtance*, and his Predeceſſors, who had always rendered great Reſpect, and been great Bene-

FREDERICK II. 1221

Benefactors to the Church of *Rome*, had to his Reign enjoyed the ſame Prerogative over the Clergy of *Naples* and *Sicily*; and that thus the Pope had no Reaſon to endeavour to deprive him of the Rights of his Sovereignty, and to aſſume the Quality of Judge over the Eccleſiaſticks of thoſe Kingdoms.

The Emperor excommunicated.

THE *Nuntio* who was ſent to him, being returned to *Rome* with this Anſwer, the Pope held a Council or Synod, with the Cardinals and other Prelates, where they excommunicated the Emperor, put him to the Ban, confiſcated the Imperial Dignity, with all his Hereditary Kingdoms and Territories, and diſcharged the Princes and States of the Empire from the Oath of Allegiance they had taken.

The Emperor laughs at the Excommunication.

THE Emperor did not much trouble himſelf about this Excommunication, but contented himſelf with anſwering coolly, that he would ſoon go to *Rome* to thank the Pope and Cardinals; but, without loſing time, he immediately ſent a Manifeſto every where, eſpecially through *Germany*, wherein having declared his Reaſons, they were approved of by the Princes of the Empire: And, to ſtrengthen the Juſtice of his Cauſe by his Preſence, he went into *Germany*, leaving the Empreſs with his Son *Henry*, to govern the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* during his Abſence. This Time he ſpent in regulating and pacifying all Things in the Empire; and, thinking it alſo proper to ſecure himſelf a Succeſſor, he had his Son *Henry* declared King of the *Romans*, though he was then but twelve Years old. During theſe Tranſactions, the Empreſs *Mary* his Wife, who was Daughter to *Alphonſo* King of *Arragon*, dying, her loſs oblig'd him to return to *Italy*, and gave

He returns into Germany.

Birth

Birth to a Reconciliation between the Pope and him. FREDERICK II.

JOHN DE BRIENNE, King of *Jeruſalem*, being come to *Rome* to ask Aſſiſtance againſt the *Sultan* of *Egypt*, and having an only Daughter named *Yoland*, the Emperor being a Widower, he propoſed to give her in Marriage to him, with the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, (reſerving the Revenues thereof to himſelf during Life) on Condition that *Frederick* ſhould accompliſh the Vow he had made to go to the *Holy Land*. The Pope, who paſſionately deſired to ſee all the Chriſtian Princes engaged in the Recovery of the Holy Places, and who equally wanted the Emperor to be at a Diſtance, that he might be ſole Maſter of *Italy*, approved mightily of this Propoſal; and *Frederick* was immediately invited to *Rome*, for the Concluſion of this Affair. Accordingly he came, and having made Peace with the Pope, they concluded and ſigned the Articles of Marriage between him and *Yoland*, who was Heireſs to the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, in Right of her Mother; this was done, on Condition that in two Years he ſhould march with an Army into the *Levant* to recover the *Holy Land*. In compliance with this Agreement Ambaſſadors were diſpatched into *Syria*, to fetch the Princeſs, who was at *Ptolemais*, but ſhe did not arrive at *Rome*, where the Emperor waited for her, till the beginning of the Year 1225, when the Marriage was celebrated with extraordinary Magnificence, the Pope himſelf performing the Ceremony; after which, he crowned *Yoland*. But the Marriage was no ſooner conſummated, than his Holineſs reminded *Frederick*, that the time for the Performance of his Promiſe approached, and preſs'd him to prepare for his Voyage.

1222. *Reconciliation of the Pope and Emperor, on Condition of his going to the Holy Land.*

1223.

1225.

FREDERICK II.

THE Emperor endeavoured to be diſpenſed with, alledging divers Excuſes, and managed Matters ſo well, that all the Pope could do was to get a freſh Promiſe, with an Oath on the holy Evangeliſts, that in two Years from the next *Auguſt*, without any more Excuſes, he would march into the *Levant*, with ſufficient Force to carry on the War vigorouſly, conſenting to be excommunicated if he failed. But his Holineſs could not ſee the Execution of this great Deſign which he had ſo much at Heart, for he died in the beginning of the Year 1227; and *Gregory* IX, a Relation of the two Counts, who (as has been obſerved) had been proſcrib'd and baniſh'd the Kingdom of *Naples* by *Frederick*, ſucceeded *Honorius* in his Pontificate, and Maxims againſt the Emperor. In effect, he was no ſooner advanced to St. *Peter's* Chair, but he diſpatched a Legate *a Latere* to *Frederick*, to preſs him to perform his ſolemn Promiſe of going into *Syria*, and, in caſe of Refuſal on any new Pretences, to threaten him with the Excommunication to which he had ſubmitted himſelf by the laſt Agreement.

1227.

FREDERICK then, being no longer able to defer his Departure, ſeeing that ſeveral Princes, with great Numbers of Nobility, and others who were engaged in the *Croiſade*, from all the Kingdoms in Chriſtendom, were come to attend him, ordered his Fleet to be got ready with all Expedition, and ſet out from *Brunduſium*, on the 11*th* of *Auguſt*, with the moſt magnificent Equipage, and the fineſt Troops in the World. But falling ſick after three Days ſail, or the Winds being contrary, as others ſay, he was obliged to return with his Family to *Brunduſium*, contenting himſelf with ſending his Army into the *Levant*.

THE

FREDERICK II.

THE Pope, being incenſed at the Emperor's quick Return, with the Conſent of all the Cardinals, declared that *Frederick* had incurred the Sentence of Excommunication which he had impoſed upon himſelf, in Caſe he did not execute his Promiſe of going in Perſon to the *Holy Land*, and declared him incapable of the Imperial Dignity. Hereat the Emperor was ſo much incenſed, (as thinking the Cauſe for which he was returned was lawful, and more than ſufficient to excuſe him from that Puniſhment) that he ſought all imaginable means to mortify the Pope; and ſucceeded ſo well by his Addreſs, and the Power of *Frangipani*, and other rich Noblemen of *Rome*, that *Gregory*, fearing ill Treatment, was obliged to quit the City, and take Refuge at *Peruſa*. 'Twas on this Occaſion, and at this Juncture, that the Animoſity of the Factions of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins* began to appear, both at *Rome*, and in other Parts of *Italy*; the firſt of theſe eſpouſing the Part of the *Holy See*, and the other that of the Empire, having remained in Inaction ever ſince the Reign of the Emperor *Conrad*, wherein they had their Riſe.

NEVERTHELESS *Frederick* was preſs'd by his Friends to acquit himſelf of his Vow, that the Pope might no longer have any Ground for theſe Excommunications; and, on the other hand, he thought that 'twas neceſſary for him to take Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*, as belonging to his Son *Conrad*, whom he had by *Yoland* his Wife, lately deceaſed. Hereupon he again embarked in *Auguſt* 1228, and having paſs'd over into *Cyprus*, landed at *Acon*, where he no ſooner arrived but he was ſolicited by the *Saracens* to conſent to a Truce, which he concluded in 1229, for ten Years, reſerving to

1228. *The Emperor makes a Truce in* Syria.

1229.

FREDERICK II.

1229. *He returns from the* Holy Land, *and makes War againſt the Pope.*

the Chriſtians the Kingdom and City of *Jeruſalem*, where, having placed ſtrong Garriſons, as well as in other Places, he was crown'd King of *Jeruſalem*, a Title which has ſince been always retain'd by the Kings of *Sicily*. This done, he return'd to *Naples*, and found at his Arrival what he had very well foreſeen, which was, that his Holineſs had only ſent him into *Syria* to make War againſt him in *Italy*.

GREGORY had already diſown'd all that had been done in *Syria*, eſteeming the Treaty he had made with the *Sultan*, as an Act unworthy of the Chriſtian Name, whence he took a new Pretext not to abſolve the Excommunication. *Frederick* ſeeing Things in this Poſture, immediately put his Troops in a Condition to act, and retook the ſtrong Places and Towns which the Pope had made himſelf Maſter of during his Abſence, by the means of the Forces his Holineſs had rais'd for *Syria*, whither, according to his Promiſe, he was to have ſent them.

THE Emperor having thus driven out of his Dominions all the Garriſons placed there by the Pope, and having even ravag'd and pillag'd the Towns and Villages belonging to the Holy See, to the Gates of *Rome*, was adviſed by St. *Lewis* King of *France* to hearken to an Agreement: He conſented, and for this end diſpatch'd *Berthold* Patriarch of *Aquitain*, with the Biſhops *Everard* of *Saltzbourg*, *Sefrid* of *Ratiſbon*, *Sibold* of *Augsbourg*, and *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria* to *Rome*; but the Pope receiv'd them ſo coolly, and would have carry'd his Pretenſions ſo high, that they return'd without concluding any Thing. Notwithſtanding this kind of a Repulſe, *Frederick* ſent again next Year *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria*, with the Grand Maſter of the *Teutonick* Order, who had better Succeſs

in

in their Negotiation, and the Advantage to conclude a Treaty of Peace with the Pope, on Condition of the Emperor's giving 120,000 Pieces of Gold, to recompence the Church for the Plunder of its Cities. This Treaty was ratify'd on both Sides, and the Ratifications being exchang'd, *Frederick* came to the Pope at *Anagni* where he was abſolved from his Excommunication, and his Holineſs, as a Mark of his ſincere Reconciliation, entertain'd him very magnificently. FREDERICK II.

ONE would have thought this remarkable Agreement ought to have induced the Cites of *Lombardy*, (which had taken Advantage of the Diviſions between the Pope and the Emperor, to withdraw themſelves from his Obedience) to ſeek alſo an Accommodation: But, notwithſtanding all the Negotiations us'd to engage them to it, they would not hear of it, and the Emperor was oblig'd to endeavour to reduce them by Force of Arms. He ſpent five Years herein without great Succeſs, on Account of his being often diverted from it by other Affairs in the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*; he was even obliged to abandon the Enterprize, to go and remedy other Diſorders that had ſprung up in *Germany* during his long Abſence. And as this would admit of no Delay, ſo he ſet out about the beginning of 1235, with ſo much the more Eagerneſs as he was inform'd of the ill Conduct of King *Henry* his Son, and of the Practices to raiſe a Conſpiracy againſt him. He no ſooner arrived there, but he apply'd himſelf with extraordinary Care to correct theſe Diſorders, and to this Intent, in Conjunction with the Princes and States of the Empire, made ſeveral Decrees and Laws for the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and Re-eſtabliſhment of 1230. 1235.

FREDERICK II. the Civil Government and Diſcipline, both with Regard to Seculars and Eccleſiaſticks; in ſhort, he omitted nothing that could ſecure the publick Tranquillity; For this Reaſon it was that his Son *Henry* being convicted of Rebellion, and of holding ſecret Correſpondencies with ſome Princes, who had inſpir'd him with thoſe ſeditious Sentiments; the Emperor, inſtead of puniſhing, reſolv'd to remove him, and ſend him Vice-Roy into *Sicily*. Nevertheleſs he only eſtabliſh'd this good Order in *Germany*, that he might have Liberty to return to *Italy*, and once for all reduce the Cities in Alliance with *Lombardy* to his Obedience, and by this Means ſtifle the Spirit of Sedition which they diffus'd amongſt their Neighbours; wherefore he caus'd Levies to be made every where, in order to compoſe a conſiderable Army, ſuch as he ſhould not fail of Succeſs in his Deſign. During theſe Preparations he was ſollicited to marry again, and accordingly eſpous'd the Princeſs *Mathilda*, Siſter to the King of *England*. On the other hand, the Pope, apprehending the Emperor's Return into *Italy*, ſent him a *Nuntio*, a Man of Wit and Experience, to endeavour to diſſuade him from the Expedition, and accordingly he omitted nothing which he thought might induce him not to undertake it. He even propos'd to him, that if he would refer the Affair of the revolted Cities to his Holineſs, he would engage to oblige them to return to their Duty, and ſubmit themſelves to the Obedience of the Empire. But *Frederick*, judging it was a Trap laid for him, diſmiſs'd the *Nuntio* without coming to any Concluſion with him, and remain'd firm in his Reſolution.

1236. HE ſet out then for his *Italian* Expedition, and aſſoon as he enter'd *Lombardy*, ſome States return'd

FREDERICK I.

return'd to their Duty of their own Accord; but the chief Cities ſtood firm, truſting to the Succours they had received from the *Venetians*, and the Support they and their Confederates expected from *Henry* King of the *Romans*, who had ingag'd in this Party at the Inſtigation of the Court of *Rome*. Beſides this falſe Step, this Prince had continued his ſecret Practices with ſeveral *German* Potentates, that they might aſſiſt him in Caſe of Neceſſity, amongſt the reſt with the Duke of *Auſtria*, on whom the Emperor had conferr'd the Title of *King*. But this Conſpiracy was ſpread into too many Places to be unknown to the Emperor, who was ſo incens'd at his Son, on his firſt hearing it, that (as one Paſſion drives out another) it diſſipated all his Anger againſt the Pope, and even induced him to invite his Holineſs to declare againſt *Henry*, and prohibit the Princes and States of the Empire from obeying or aſſiſting him, on Pain of Excommunication. This Spiritual Authority being highly reverenced, retain'd all in their Duty; and the Emperor, for his Part, cauſing the Prince his Son to be narrowly watch'd, ſeiz'd and confin'd in a Caſtle in *Apulia*, wherein he afterwards died.

Prince Henry's Conſpiracy againſt the Emperor his Father.

THIS done, to put a final End to this Conſpiracy, he order'd the Dukes of *Bohemia* and *Bavaria* to purſue *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, an Accomplice of *Henry*'s Rebellion, till he ſhould arrive himſelf to chaſtiſe him, as he accordingly did. For having ſettled Affairs in *Italy* in the beſt Order poſſible, and left his Difference with the Pope in ſome Appearance of an Accommodation he return'd to *Germany*, enter'd the Duke of *Auſtria*'s Territories with Fire and Sword, and at laſt made himſelf Maſter of *Vienna*,

The Emperor returns to Germany.

1237.

FREDERICK II.

AFTER this Expedition the Emperor assembled the States of the Empire, where he had his second Son *Conrad* elected King of the *Romans*, who was confirm'd the same Year in another Assembly held at *Spires*; thus having re-establish'd and settled Things on that side, he resolv'd in earnest upon his Return to *Italy*, having at Heart the Revolt of the Cities of *Lombardy*, which had fortify'd themselves, on Pretence of maintaining the Privileges granted them by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.

The Emperor returns to Italy, *and is Victorious.*

HEREUPON the Emperor march'd thither with a fine and formidable Army, the Troops of the League being more numerous and stronger than before, whereupon *Padua* immediately surrender'd; but, to terrify the rest, he sack'd some Places that made Resistance, and on a sudden bent all his Powers against *Milan*, which was the Center of the League, and the Rendezvous of the *Venetians* and Confederates, who seeing their Army equal to the Emperor's, march'd out boldly to meet him. Upon this a bloody Battle was fought, the Success whereof was doubtful for some Hours, but at last Victory declared for the Emperor, their General *Petro Tiepolo*, Son to the Doge of *Venice*, and their other Commanders, being taken Prisoners, were all executed by the Hands of the Hangman. This done, he pursued his Advantage, turn'd his Arms against divers Places, burning some, and plundering others, but reserving *Milan* for the last Example of his Resentment.

1238. POPE *Gregory* being sensibly touch'd at *Frederick*'s Success, and his ill Usage of his Holiness's Officers, entered into the League with the *Venetians* and Cities of *Lombardy*, and was reconcil'd to *Rome*, whence he had been some Time absent. Assoon as he return'd, he sent a *Nuntio*

FREDERICK II.

Nuntio to the Emperor to beg him, in Conſideration of the many Favours he had received from the Holy See, to ceaſe his Violence; but *Frederick*, having been inform'd of the Pope's entring into the Confederacy, and the Aſſiſtance he had ſecretly given the League, would make him no Anſwer; which oblig'd his Holineſs to ſend three Cardinals, to whom he gave no better Satisfaction.

The Pope excommunicates the Emperor. 1239.

IN this Extremity the Pope, having Recourſe to the ſame Arms he had us'd on other Occaſions, on *Holy Thurſday*, 1239, iſſued publickly an Excommunication againſt the Emperor, ſending the Bull into *Germany* to ſow a Diviſion between *Frederick* and the Princes and States of the Empire, condemning by the ſame Bull thoſe who ſhould adhere to his Party, and remain Loyal. He alſo imagin'd to draw St. *Lewis* into his Intereſts, by ſending a Legate to give him an ill Impreſſion of *Frederick*'s Perſon and Religion, offering him at the ſame Time the Empire for Prince *Robert* his Brother. But St. *Lewis* would not be prepoſſeſs'd in Prejudice of his Ally, and on his proffering the Empire, made him Anſwer, That ſuppoſing he were tempted to receive his Propoſal, 'twas neither in the Pope's Power to confer the Empire, nor to depoſe Emperors.

He makes a publick Anſwer to the Excommunication.

WHEN *Frederick*, who was then at *Padua*, was inform'd of this Excommunication, he order'd his Anſwer to be read publickly before the whole Army by his Chancellor *Peter de Vignes*, thereby to give the Lie to the Aſperſions caſt upon him; he alſo ſent this Anſwer into *Germany*, for the Defence of his Honour and Reputation; and it was found ſo reaſonable, that all the Princes and States of the Empire remain'd firm to his Cauſe.

THUS

FREDERICK II.

He marches to Rome, *but without Succeſs.*

THUS, ſeeing there was nothing to be apprehended on that hand, he perſiſted in his Reſolution of being reveng'd once for all on the *Romans*, and with this Intention ſuſpended all other Deſigns, in order to march directly to *Rome*, thinking he had a Party there ſtrong enough to oblige the *Romans* to open their Gates to him; but the Pope by his Preaching and Exhortations kept them in his Intereſt.

Factions of the Guelphs *and* Gibelins.

IN the mean while all *Italy* became a Prey to the two Parties of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins*; the latter being for the Emperor, and the other for the Pope. Theſe Diſtinctions cauſed Diviſion and Slaughter, even in private Houſes and Families, and neither the one nor the other gave any Quarter. *Frederick* was look'd upon by the *Guelphs* as a *Mahometan*, and an Enemy of the *Chriſtian* Name; and he, for his Part, never forgave a *Guelph:* But finding that he could gain no Advantage over *Rome*, he marched towards *Naples*, taking ample Revenge of the *Guelphs* every where, not granting Quarter to any who were found with Arms in their Hands, baniſhing and impriſoning the Eccleſiaſticks, even to the Cardinals themſelves. In a Word, this Animoſity laſted till *Gregory*'s Death, which happen'd in the Year 1241, without either the Pope or the Emperor's condeſcending to yield in the leaſt to one another.

1241.

Gregory *dies, and* Innocent *ſucceeds him in his Enmity againſt the Emperor.*

AFTER the Deceaſe of *Gregory* IX, and *Celeſtine* IV his Succeſſor, who enjoy'd the Pontificate but eighteen Days, the Holy See remain'd vacant for twenty Months, during which *Frederick* often ſollicited the Cardinals to fill it up, but would not nevertheleſs releaſe thoſe whom he had impriſon'd. But at laſt, the others inſiſting on the Liberty of their Brethren, to the End they might proceed unanimouſly to the Election

lection of a Pope, he was oblig'd to consent to their Enlargement. Hereupon all of them resorting to *Anagni*, they elected *Innocent* IV, who was of the Number of those Cardinals that had express'd a great Esteem and Friendship for the Emperor; whereupon that Prince's Ministers were the more pleas'd at his Exaltation, in that they flatter'd themselves with the Hopes of a sincere Union between the Church and the Empire. But *Frederick*, being more clear-sighted than they, always told them they had no Reason to rejoice, because he should thereby lose the Friendship of a Cardinal, and acquire the Hatred of a Pope; which Prophecy prov'd true in the sequel. FREDERICK II. 24 *June*, 1243.

THE greatest Application of the new Pontif, and the Cardinals, was, to procure the Peace of *Italy*; but the Emperor resolving not to give Ear thereto, but on Condition of keeping what he possessed; and his Holiness, on the other hand, demanding the Restitution of the Cities usurp'd from the Church of *Rome*, representing to him that, without such a Restitution, there could be no sincere nor lasting Peace, all the Negotiations prov'd abortive. At last they agreed to have an Interview in the City of *Castello*, to treat and conclude on all Affairs amicably. But whether it was true, that the Pope was inform'd of the Emperor's having a Design to seize him there, as was given out by his Holiness, or whether he caus'd this Report to be spread, that he might have a specious Pretence to avoid this Interview with *Frederick*, he would not appear at the Place and Time appointed; and, being inform'd that the Emperor was very much incens'd at it, he took a Resolution to fly for Refuge into *France*, as fearing the Effects of his Resentments. He even set about *The Reason of the new Broils between the Pope and the Emperor.* 1244.

FREDERICK II. about the Execution of this Deſign immediately, and, having ſent ſecretly for the *Genoeſe* Gallies, which came to attend him at *Civita Vecchia*, he went thither with all ſpeed, and from thence to *Genoa*, whence, going to *Savoy*, he arriv'd at *Lyons* in *December* the ſame Year, 1244. There he gave Orders for the holding a general Council, on the twenty fourth of *June* 1245. following, and ſent his Bulls to the Archbiſhops, Biſhops, and Prelates of *Germany*, *Italy*, *France*, and other Kingdoms, ſummoning them thither to conſult the Welfare and Safety of the Church. Upon theſe Citations a great Number of Prelates reſorting to *Lyons*, 'twas immediately reſolv'd that the Emperor ſhould be cited to appear at the Council, to clear himſelf of what was laid to his Charge, threatning him with the Thunder of the Church, if he fail'd coming. This Citation ſeem'd ſo much the ſtranger to *Frederick*, in that his Holineſs ſet himſelf up for Judge and Sovereign; whereas from all Antiquity the Emperors had call'd the Councils themſelves, where the Pope and the Prelates paid them due Reſpect and Obedience, as to their Sovereigns; beſides he conſider'd that, if there was any Room to proceed againſt him by Courſe of Juſtice, it could only be done before the Princes and States of the Empire, both Eccleſiaſticks, and Seculars.

The Council of Lions *whither the Pope cites the Emperor.*

The Emperor inſtead of going to the Council, ſends, and is excommunicated.

HOWEVER he ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Lyons*, who ſtrongly refuted the Pope's Accuſations, and juſtify'd the Emperor ſo well, that ſome declared for him, nevertheleſs that did not hinder *Innocent*'s excommunicating him. *Frederick* being inform'd of this Sentence iſſued againſt him, ſeem'd not to value it, and indeed it appear'd by the Sequel, that he did not trouble himſelf about it; he even ſaid out of Gallantry

That

FREDERICK II.

That before this Excommunication he obey'd the Pope and the Eccleſiaſtical Laws; but ſince his Holineſs had exempted him from it, he no longer ow'd them either Reſpect or Obedience; but however he remain'd ſtill Emperor as he was before, and enjoy'd that Dignity till his deceaſe, having preſerv'd the Affection and Fidelity of beſt Part of the Princes, Nobles, and Cities of the Empire.

Some States of the Empire elect another King of the Romans, *who dies after ſome vain Attempts.*

THE Pope was ſo much chagrin'd at this Contempt, that he could have wiſh'd never to have thought on it, eſpecially ſeeing that his own Subjects would bear the Burthen of this Excommunication; however, finding himſelf oblig'd to maintain what he had done, he manag'd ſome Princes of *Germany* ſo well, that he perſuaded them to proceed to the Election of a King of the *Romans*. The three Eccleſiaſtical Electors, and the Biſhops of *Bremen*, *Strasbourg*, *Metz*, and *Spires*, with the Duke of *Brabant*, and *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, were of this Number. They aſſembled on *Aſcenſion-Day* 1246 at *Frankfort*, and, having deliberated upon this Election, declared *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, King of the *Romans*, who was ſome Time after ſirnam'd *King of the Prieſts*. 1246.

THIS Election was made in Prejudice of *Conrad* the Emperor's Son, who, as has been before obſerved, had been crown'd King of the *Romans* in the Year 1237, after the Death, and in the Room of *Henry* his elder Brother. To ſtrengthen the Party of this new Monarch, the Pope endeavour'd to procure him all Manner of Aſſiſtance, and even preſented him with 25,000 Marks of Silver to enable him to maintain the War againſt *Conrad*, whom the Emperor his Father had left in *Germany*, as his Lieutenant; inſomuch that *Henry* was in a Condition

FREDERICK II.

Condition to offer him Battle, where he gain'd a conſiderable Advantage over him. After this he made an Irruption into the Dukedom of *Suabia*, *Frederick*'s hereditary Country, and had taken *Reutlingen*, but for the Reſiſtance of the Citizens, who defended themſelves ſo valiantly, that he was oblig'd to retire. He alſo attack'd the City of *Ulm*, but was wounded in the Aſſault by an Arrow, whereof he died ſome Days after.

THE Emperor, ſeeing Things in this Poſture, reſolv'd to go to *Lyons* to juſtify himſelf in Perſon to his Holineſs, and be reconcil'd to him, whereupon he ſet out under the ſafe Conduct he had obtain'd of the King of *France*, leaving the Affairs in *Italy* under the Management of *Entius* his natural Son, King of *Sardinia*. But he was no ſooner in *Piedmont* than he heard that the Pope's Partizans had ſurpriz'd *Parma*, at the ſame Time that *Entius* was march'd out with a Part of the Garriſon to attack *Breſcia*. This News obliging *Frederick* to abandon his firſt Deſign, made him reſolve to return back into *Italy*, where he obſtinately bent himſelf upon the Siege of *Parma*, but as he found that this Place, being well provided, was vigorouſly defended, he reſolv'd to take it by Famine. Hereupon he ſurrounded it with a high Wall, and caus'd a new City to be built cloſe by it, which he called *Victory*, and which in a little Time was as well peopled as any other City in *Italy*. The Emperor, perſiſting in his Reſolution to purſue the Siege of *Parma*, ſpent many Months therein, letting his Affairs go to Ruin every where elſe, without ſtirring to redreſs them, This gave *Innocent*, and all the Partizans of the Holy See ſuch an Advantage over him, that they held an Aſſembly of ſeveral Princes of the

1247.

Empire

Empire both Eccleſiaſtical and Secular near *Cologn*, with all the Eaſe imaginable, where they elected *William* Count of *Holland* King of the *Romans*, in the Room of the Landgrave of *Thuringia*. The Cities of *Cologn*, *Mentz*, and *Strasbourg* approved of this Election; but *Worms*, *Spires*, *Landau*, *Weiſſembourg*, and the other Cities of *Suabia* and *Bavaria*, continued faithful to the Emperor and King *Conrad*, in ſpite of the Pope's Excommunications. FREDERICK II.

IN the mean while *Frederick*, being ſtill obſtinately bent upon the Siege of *Parma*, liv'd encompaſs'd with a Croud of implacable Enemies; and, as they could not work his Deſtruction by open War, they bethought themſelves of effecting it by Poiſon, taking an Advantage of an Indiſpoſition that oblig'd him to keep his Bed. In order to this, they not only corrupted his firſt Phyſician, both by Bribes and ſtrong Perſuaſions, but they alſo gain'd over *Peter de Vignes*, a Native of *Capua*, his Chancellor and intimate Confident, and by their Means 'twas reſolv'd to make him take Poiſon in a Doſe of Phyſick. But the very Day that the Draught was to have been given, the Emperor was ſecretly appriz'd of their Treaſon; wherefore, when the Phyſician came to preſent him the Cup, that Prince refus'd it; upon which *Peter de Vignes* began to beg him to take it, aſſuring him it would do him good, that himſelf had oftentimes drank the like, and found Benefit by it. *They attempted to poiſon the Emperor, but he puniſhes the Contrivers.*

THE Phyſician alſo preſſing him on the other Hand; *Frederick*, looking fixedly upon him, order'd him immediately to drink off the Half to his Health; at which Command the Phyſician being ſurpriz'd, had recourſe to Artifice, and, pretending to make a falſe Step in retiring

FREDERICK II.

ſiting back, ſpill'd half the Draught. But not being able to do it ſo dextrouſly as not to have the Trick perceiv'd, both by the Emperor and his Attendants, *Frederick* order'd him and the Chancellor to be immediately ſeiz'd; and made a Criminal, who had been condemn'd to Death, drink off what remained in the Glaſs, whereof he died that Inſtant. As there was no Need of farther Proof to convict them, the Emperor commanded the Phyſician to be ſtrangled forthwith, and cauſing the Chancellor's Eyes to be put out, deliver'd him up to the Diſcretion of the Inhabitants of *Piſa*, his mortal Enemies. But this miſerable Traytor knock'd out his own Brains, by running his Head againſt a Pillar; thus preventing, like another *Sampſon*, both their Deriſion and Revenge.

The Emperor's Camp plundered and razed.

HOWEVER Fortune, not content with threatning *Frederick*, at laſt declar'd wholly againſt him; for as he purſu'd the Siege of *Parma* ſlowly, as has been before obſerv'd, and as it uſually happens, that People grow careleſs about any thing of long Continuance, he was not enough upon his guard. The Beſieged being appriz'd hereof, form'd a Deſign to carry him off from his new City, *Victory*, where he kept both his Camp and his Court. Wherefore, till they could put this in Execution, they ſally'd out and skirmiſh'd as uſual; and the appointed Day being come, they likewiſe ſent out ſmall Parties to harraſs the Beſiegers, and draw them on to an Engagement; but as the Battle grew hot, the whole Garriſon of *Parma* ſally'd out, cut moſt Part of the Imperialiſts in pieces, and, purſuing the others, entered pell-mell into the Camp with them, and put to the Sword all they met. They would have made Reſiſtance, but were routed every where, and the Empe-

18 *Feb.* 1248.

ror

ror himſelf being ſurprized, was forced to have recourſe to Flight for his ſafety, mount his Horſe in all haſte, and make his eſcape, without Arms, to *Cremona*, during which the *Parmezans* plundered his Palace, and the Camp, and entirely deſtroyed the new City. FREDERICK II.

THE News of this Victory being ſpread throughout *Italy*, not only encouraged the Party of the *Guelphs* infinitely, and heightened the Reputation of the Legate *Gregory* of *Montelongo*, who had the Conduct of the Enterprize, but alſo very much diſheartened the *Gibelines*. As for the Emperor he indeed did not loſe Courage, but immediately levy'd as many Forces as poſſible, both thoſe who had fled with him, and the *Gibelins*, who flocked to him from all Parts. But this Blow having rendered him much leſs formidable than before, no Town that was any thing conſiderable would receive him; and, to add to his Diſgrace, being in *Tuſcany*, he heard, that *Entius* his natural Son, King of *Sardinia*, whom he had entruſted with the Command of his Troops, having marched againſt *Bologna*, had been defeated and taken Priſoner by the Inhabitants. This afflicted the Emperor the more, in that he could never get him out of their Hands, whatever Ranſom he promis'd them, inſomuch that that Prince remained almoſt twenty Years in Priſon, at the end whereof he died. Entius *the Emperor's Son defeated and taken Priſoner.* 1249.

FREDERICK, finding himſelf without Remedy, took a Reſolution to return into his own Territories at *Naples*, to reinforce his Army, raiſing Troops on all Hands; but whether he had ſome Foreſight of his Death, or whether the State of *Germany* (where his Son *Conrad* was engaged with the new King of the *Romans*, *William* of *Holland*) obliged him to think Frederick *retires into his Kingdom of* Naples. 1250.

FREDERICK II.

think of his private Affairs, he reſolved to divide his Dominions, *viz.* the Kingdoms of *Italy Naples*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Jeruſalem*, and the Duchy of *Suabia*, amongſt his Sons, that is, *Conrad* King of the *Romans* his eldeſt, *Henry*, or, according to others, *Jordan*, the next to him, *Frederick* Son to *Henry* his eldeſt Son by his firſt Wife, and two natural Sons *Entius* and *Manfred*. To the latter he gave the Principality of *Tarentum*, and the Government of his hereditary Dominions in *Italy* for ten Years; to *Entius* the Kingdom of *Sardinia*; to *Frederick*, *Auſtria*; and to *Henry* the Kingdom of *Sicily*, leaving to *Conrad* the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Jeruſalem*, *Italy*, the Duchy of *Suabia* and the Empire. He had beſides two Daughters married, one to *Albert* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and the other to the Landgrave of *Heſſe*. Some Days after he died of a Fever the 13*th* of *December*, the ſame Year, at the Age of Fifty-five.

HE was a Prince praiſe-worthy, in that he was of a firm, reſolute Spirit, lov'd Study and Glory, and was a great Warrior; however, he was ſo violent in his Revenge, and, on the other hand, ſo complaiſant to Women, that theſe two Paſſions have caſt a Blemiſh upon his Reputation.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

CONRAD *the Fourth.*

WE have already ſeen how *Conrad* was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, in the Room of his elder Brother when but eight Years old; but we did not obſerve that ten Years after his Father *Frederick* gave him in marriage *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*. Nor muſt we paſs over a Battle which he loſt againſt *Henry* of *Thuringia*, called the *King of Prieſts*; for all the Eccleſiaſticks being againſt him, he was near loſing his Life by the Treaſon of the Biſhop of *Ratisbon*, and the Abbot of St. *Emeran*; it happened after this manner: CONRAD IV.

KNIG *Conrad* had taken Poſſeſſion of the City of *Ratisbon* ſome time before, whither he retired after the Battle, and took up his Lodging with a ſmall Retinue in the Abbey of St. *Emeran*. The Biſhop, reſolving to take Advantage of ſo favourable an opportunity to perpetrate his execrable Deſign, ſent ſome truſty Soldiers in the Night to aſſaſſinate him when he was at reſt; but by good Fortune he changed his Bed that Night, and that proved his ſafety. For the Murderers killed two of his Attendants, believing *Conrad* to be one of them; and the Aſſaſſins no longer keeping any Meaſures, but only thinking to make their Eſcape, the Prince, awaking at the Noiſe, had time to regain his Army, which was encamped before the City. Conrad *eſcapes the greateſt Danger by an eream good Fortune.*

CONRAD IV.

Conrad *goes to* Italy, *and dies there.*

THE next Day he ordered the Biſhop to be ſeiz'd, and the Abbey demoliſhed, condemning him to perpetual Impriſonment, and depriving the Abbot of his Benefice. As for *Hochſels*, who had killed his two Servants, and was fled, he was cruſhed in Pieces ſome Days after by a Thunderbolt. As ſoon as *Conrad* received News of his Father's Death, which happened, as has been obſerved, in *Italy*, *A. D.* 1252, he aſſumed the Title of Emperor, and ſet out from *Germany* for his hereditary Dominions, whereof he took Poſſeſſion without any Obſtacle, all but
1251. the Cities of *Naples* and *Capua*, which had thrown themſelves under the Protection of the Holy See. This obliged him immediately to
1252. march all his Troops towards *Naples*; but, in ſpite of all his Efforts, he could not make himſelf Maſter of it, till after a Siege of eight Months. He did not poſſeſs it long, for falling Sick, after having ſeveral other Diſputes with the Holy See, he died the 22*d* of
1254. *May*, 1254, leaving only one Child named *Conradin*, by his Wife *Elizabeth* of *Bavaria*.

SOME Authors will have it that he was poiſoned by his natural Brother *Manfred*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who, taking Advantage of young *Conradin*'s Minority whom his Father had left in *Germany*, uſurped the two Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIX.

WILLIAM *of* Holland.

WILLIAM II of that Name, Count of *Holland*, Son to *Florent* IV, and *Mahaut* of *Brabant*, was elected King of the *Romans*, *A. D.* 1247, at the Age of twenty, in an Aſſembly held at the Town of *Veringia*, near *Cologn*, wherein were ſeveral Princes of the Empire, who were in the Pope's Intereſt, and declared Enemies to the Emperor, and his Son King *Conrad*. As the Count thought it of the laſt Importance for him to be crowned at *Aix la Chapelle*, which City eſpous'd *Conrad*'s Party, he made himſelf Maſter of it after a pretty long Siege, which laſted till the Year following, and was crowned there after the uſual Form; which done, he gained a conſiderable Advantage in a Battle fought between them, where the latter was defeated. WILLIAM

ON his hearing of the Emperor *Frederick*'s Death, he immediately aſſumed all the Enſigns of the Imperial Authority, the Pope himſelf confirming him in the Empire. This done, to enable himſelf the better to oppoſe *Conrad*, he took to Wife the Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Brunſwick*, whom he marry'd in the City of *Brunſwick*, on whoſe wedding Night there happened a very remarkable Accident. Two Taylors working on the Cloaths of the new married Couple near their Chamber, and careleſsly letting the Candle fall upon ſome Straw, it took

WILLIAM

Fire, and could not be extinguiſhed. The two Taylors periſhed in the Flame, and the new married Couple ſaved themſelves in their Shirt and Shift only, with ſo much precipitation, that they abandoned their Jewels, Cloaths, and all their Furniture, to the Mercy of that cruel Element.

Another Misfortune that happened to the Emperor William.

THIS unfortunate Emperor was a ſecond Time inſulted by Fortune very dangerouſly, in the Year 1254, when he was at *Utrecht*, to deliberate on Means to take a Journey to *Rome*, whither the Pope invited him to be crowned; for he was wounded by a violent ſtroke with a Stone, thrown at him by an unknown Hand, ſo that his Life was in great Peril.

A third Misfortune where this Prince loſes his Life.

AFTER this he undertook an Expedition againſt the *Friezlanders*, who were revolted, where he met with the third and laſt Misfortune; for this Prince going in *February* over a frozen Moraſs, to *reconnoitre* the Town of *Hoch-Wende*, unaccompany'd by any of his Men, the Ice broke under his Horſe, and he ſtuck in the Mire. The Garriſon, having obſerved him, ſallied out of the Town, ran to him, and kill'd him, without knowing him, carrying of his Body into the Town, where ſome Inhabitants, finding it was the Emperor, were infinitely alarmed. Wherefore they interred him ſecretly in one of the Townſmen's Houſes, apprehending the Anger of the Princes of *Germany*, for having lifted up their Hands againſt their Sovereign. Thus this young Prince ended his Life unfortunately, *A. D.* 1256.

1256. *The different Factions cauſe great Diſorders in* Germany.

IN the mean while, the Elections of the Landgrave of *Thuringia*, and the Count of *Holland*, both whereof were effected by the Intrigues of the Court of *Rome* againſt *Frederick* II, had divided *Germany* into Factions. In ſhort,

ſhort, the Diſorders there were ſo very great, that Men no longer regarded the Laws, either divine or human, but the Eccleſiaſticks were inveterate againſt the Laymen, and the ſtrongeſt oppreſs'd the weak. Some Princes and Cities had even been forced to enter into a mutual Alliance for the Security of the Highways and Commerce. This League had been agreed on between the Cities of *Mentz*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Frankfort*, *Bingen* and *Oppenheim*, from the beginning of the Year 1254; and *Lewis* Count Palatine ſeeing that theſe united Cities had been ſucceſsful in this League, which had been renewed for nine Years, enter'd alſo into it. By his example *Gerard* Elector of *Mentz*, *Conrad* Elector of *Cologn*, *Arnold* Archbiſhop of *Treves*, *Jacob* Biſhop of *Metz*, and the Abbot of *Fulda*, *Conrad Wiltgraf*, *Richard* Count of *Catzenelebogen*, *Frederick* Count of *Leiningen*, *Bertold* Count of *Ziegengagen*, *Ernich* and *Godefride Wiltgraves*, *Pappo* Lord of *Tubingen*, *Ulrick* Count of *Baor*, the Count of *Wirnberg*, *Sophia* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, *Adelaida* or *Alix* Counteſs of *Leiningen*, the Lords of *Tirceberg*, *Ulrick* of *Mintzenberg*, *Gerlach* of *Limbourg*, *Philip* of *Hennekeufelt*, *Philip* of *Falkenſtein*, the Lord of *Staremberg*, the Cup-Bearer of *Erbach*, the Steward of *Altzey*, *Henry* of *Ernberg*, *Runboſt* of *Steinbach*, the Cities of *Cologn*, *Straſburgh*, *Baſil*, *Zurich*, *Fribourg*, *Briſac*, *Colmar*, *Scheleſtat*, *Haguenau*, *Weiſſembourg*, *Neuſtadt*, *Wimpfen*, *Heidelberg*, *Lauterbourg*, *Fricdeberg*, *Wetzlar*, *Gleluhauſen*, *Marbourg*, *Altzfelt*, *Fulda*, *Mulhauſen*, *Achasfenbourg*, *Seligſtadt*, *Diebach*, *Bacharach*, *Wezel*, *Boppart*, *Anderuach*, *Bonn*, *Nens*, *Aix la Chapelle*, *Munſter*, *Bremen*, *Bravenberg*, *Hirchfelt*, and others, making together ſixty Towns, enter'd into the ſame League.

WILLIAM

The Union of ſome States for their mutual Defence, and the reeſtabliſhing of the publick Peace.

These Confederates took off the Toll which had been unjustly laid upon Rivers, and increas'd during the Troubles, and re-establish'd Peace in their Territories. But it did not continue long; which Misfortune happened thro' the Malice of those who would make their Advantage of the Disorders, as they had before done.

CHAP. XX.

RICHARD *and* ALPHONSO.

RICHARD *and* ALPHONSO.

The Crown is offered to Richard *of* England, *who accepts it, and obtains it by the Intrigues of Part of the States of the Empire.*

AFTER the Emperor *William*'s Death, the *Roman* Empire being left without a Head, the Princes often assembled to choose one, without being able to come to any Agreement; no Prince being willing to accept of that Dignity. At last *Conrad* Archbishop of *Cologn* sent into *England*, to offer it to *Richard* Duke of *Cornwal*, who accepted thereof, and accordingly went into *Germany*, though others say, that this Archbishop was himself over in *England* to present this Dignity to *Richard*. Be that true or not, 'tis certain, that the Imperial Authority was in the Hands of the Ecclesiastical Princes of the *Rhine*. This, in particular, was observed concerning this very Archbishop, that being a Prelate entirely devoted to the Interest of *Rome*, he had by his Address, since *Frederick*'s Excommunication, raised three Princes successively to the Dignity of King of the *Romans*, viz. *Henry* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, *William* Count of *Holland*, and Duke *Richard*.

'Tis

RICHARD *and* ALPHONSO.

'TIS true, as to this latter, the Archbiſhop foreſeeing the Difficulty there would be in procuring him the Imperial Crown, without the Aſſiſtance of the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, who had been detained Priſoner by *Albert* of *Brunſwick* a whole Year, ingaged *Richard*, from whom he had already had conſiderable Preſents, to pay 8000 Marks of Silver more, for the Ranſom of the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, on Condition he would aſſiſt him with his Vote and good Offices to obtain the *Roman* Scepter. Accordingly the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* being ſet at Liberty, immediately called a Diet at *Frankfort*, which was held in 1257, on the Octave of the *Epiphany*, when the Princes that aſſiſted proceeded to the Election of *Richard*. The Princes were the two Archbiſhops of *Cologn* and *Mentz*, and *Lewis* Count Palatine, with his Brother *Henry*, and ſome others who were perſuaded by the two Prelates to follow their Advice.

The reſt of the States of the Empire, chooſe Alphonſo *of* Caſtille, *who accepts of it, but can't leave* Spain.

ON the other ſide, the Archbiſhop of *Treves*, and divers other Princes, refuſing to be preſent at this Election, form'd another Aſſembly the Lent following, and gave their Suffrages for *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtille*, Sir-nam'd the *Aſtrologer*. The Archbiſhop of *Treves* had already gain'd the Votes of the King of *Bohemia*, the Duke of *Saxony*, and the Marquis of *Brandenbourg* in writing, in Favour of this King; after which they diſpatch'd the Biſhops of *Spires* and *Conſtance*, with an Account of his Election. He received them very favourably, and accepted the Crown, but being engaged in a War with the *Moors*, it hinder'd him from going at that Time into *Germany*. However, he ſent back the ſame Ambaſſadors before hand, after having treated them magnificently, ſending by them Letters,

RICHARD *and* ALPHONSO.

Letters, and Preſents to the Electors, and other Princes of the Empire.

Richard is crown'd, but not being able to ſupport the Expence, he returns to England, *where he dies.* 1258.

NEVERTHELESS they who choſe Duke *Richard*, purſued their Undertaking, and conducted him ſometime afterwards to *Aix la Chappelle*, where he was crown'd on *Aſcenſion-Day*. This Ceremony was no ſooner over, but he went to viſit ſome Towns along the *Rhine*, *viz.* *Cologn*, *Boppart*, *Wezel*, *Mentz*, *Oppenheim*, *Frankfort*, *Worms* and *Spires*, which paid him the uſual Homage, but, to uſe that Expreſſion, 'twas but a Fire of Straw. For this Prince having drain'd his Treaſure by reaſon of his great Liberality in buying the Votes of the Electors, and being likewiſe without Credit, or any Way to recover himſelf, and enable him to ſuſtain this his high Title with Honour, was oblig'd to leave *Germany*, and return to *England*, where he ended his Days in 1271.

Alphonſo *remains in his own Dominions.*

AFTER *Richard*'s Death, *Alphonſo* had undoubtedly enjoy'd the Empire in Peace, but his Troubles and Wars with the *Moors* increaſing daily, it was impoſſible for him to leave his Dominions, and take upon him the Charge of the Imperial Dignity, tho' he always retain'd the Title of Emperor. This long Delay, at laſt diſguſting the States of the Empire, occaſion'd a new Election, (whereof we ſhall make mention hereafter) which took effect, notwithſtanding the Pretenſions of King *Alphonſo*, who liv'd till the Year 1284.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXI.

An INTERREGNUM.

An INTERREGNUM.

AUTHORS are divided in their Opinions concerning the Time of this *Interregnum*; ſome of them making it laſt twenty eight Years, that is, from the Year 1245, when Pope *Innocent* IV being at *Lyons*, excommunicated *Frederick* II, till 1273, when *Rodolphus* Count of *Hapsbourg* was elected Emperor, without comprehending either *Henry Landgrave* of *Thuringia*, *William* Count of *Holland*, or *Richard* Duke of *Cornwall*, in the Number of the Kings of the *Romans*. But if we date it from the Beginning of the Year 1259, when King *Richard* left *Germany*, to 1273, when *Rodolphus* was choſen, *Germany* was but fifteen Years without a Head.

Divers Opinions concerning this Interregnum.

DURING this Time the Empire experienced what is ſaid in the ſeventeenth and twenty firſt Chapters of *Judges* to have befallen the Children of *Iſrael*, that is, as there was no King, every Man did what was Right in his own Eyes; for there was no Safety for any one throughout *Germany*, but the Strongeſt oppreſs'd the Weakeſt, without having Regard to the Conſtitution of the Empire. Theſe Diſorders were not confined to *Germany* alone, but ſpread even beyond the *Alps*, and moſt Part of the Cities and States of *Italy*, that were Fiefs of the Empire, either ſet up for Republicks, or acknowledged

The dreadful Confuſion of the Affairs of the Empire during the Interregnum. 1160.

An INTER-REGNUM.

ledged particular Perſons for their Princes and Sovereigns: In ſhort, all was in Confuſion. We have even but a very confus'd Account of theſe Times, moſt Writers contenting themſelves with deploring the unhappy State of *Germany*, without informing us of the Particulars. Wherefore we ſhall omit the Recital, that we may paſs over an infinite Number of unjuſt Acts, and Uſurpations which diſhonoured the *German* Name during this *Interregnum*. But I muſt not forget the moſt remarkable Accident that can ever happen; for it relates too much to *Germany* not to be mentioned, tho' the Scene of this Tragedy lay in States independent of the Empire: I ſay it relates too much to *Germany*, in that one ſees the laſt Prince of one of her moſt powerful Houſes end his Days after a very tragical Manner.

1261. *The War of* Naples *between* Charles *Duke of* Anjou, *and* Manfred *and* Conradin *the laſt Duke of* Suabia.

THE Emperor *Conrad* IV had left one Son, yet an Infant, who was named *Conradin*; and *Manfred*, the Emperor *Frederick*'s Baſtard, ſeeing that all the Houſe of *Suabia*, to whom the Kingdom of *Naples* belonged, was under the Government of a Child, had made himſelf Maſter of this Kingdom, and was become ſo powerful, that he gave Umbrage to *Urban* IV, which occaſioned *Manfred*'s Ruin. For the Pope, that he might not always have a Maſter ſo near him, ſent in the Year 1264, and offered the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* to *Charles* Count of *Provence* and *Anjou*, Brother of St. *Lewis*, who accepted of them. Hereupon *Urban* dying towards the End of this Year, *Clement* IV who ſucceeded him, confirm'd the Choice his Predeceſſor had made of *Charles*, and ſent into *France* to preſs him to come and take Poſſeſſion of thoſe Kingdoms.

1263.

1264.

ON

ON theſe earneſt Intreaties, this Prince immediately ſet his Affairs in Order, arm'd powerfully, and marched ſtrait to *Rome*, where he waited for his Wife *Beatrix*, and the Reſt of the Troops which ſhe commanded. Aſſoon as that Princeſs had join'd the King her Husband (for he had already been declared King in a publick Ceremony) the Pope, who was not then at *Rome*, gave Power to five Cardinals to perform the Solemnity of his Coronation. Accordingly he was crown'd with his Wife on *Twelfth-Day* 1266, on Condition of his holding his Kingdoms of the Holy See, doing Homage, and taking an Oath of Allegiance to her, and paying her Yearly the Sum of 60,000 Ducats as an Acknowledgment for his Fief. This done, he put himſelf at the Head of his Army, and being ſeconded by the *Guelphs*, who flocked over to his Party, he gained Advantages over *Manfred*. At laſt coming to an Engagement, he gave him Battle, and defeated him, and *Manfred* being kill'd in the Fight, *Charles* thus became eaſily Maſter of the two *Sicily*'s. In the mean while *Conradin* Duke of *Suabia*, being then about fifteen Years old, hearing of his Uncle *Manfred*'s Death, took upon him the Title of King of both *Sicily*'s, which belonged to him by hereditary Right, notwithſtanding *Manfred*'s Uſurpation: And being ſpurred on by the *Gibelins*, who could not bear to ſee the Party of the *Guelphs* raiſed in the Perſon of *Charles*, he reſolved to hazard all, and diſpute with him by Force of Arms a Crown to which he had ſo much Right. To this end he levied as many Troops as he could, haſten'd to *Italy* by long Marches, and paſſed the *Alps* in 1267. There he at firſt defeated one of *Charles*'s Lieutenants, and, being elate with this Victory, flattered

An INTERREGNUM.

1266.

1267.

An INTERREGNUM.

flattered himſelf with the hopes of cauſing himſelf to be proclaim'd Emperor, and this with the more Appearance of Probability, as one *Honorius* a *German*, and diſtant Relation to *Conradin*, was Senator of *Rome*. With this View he march'd towards this Capital, where he was magnificently received as Emperor by Don *Henry de Caſtille*, who had been appointed Governor by *Clement* IV. This Don *Henry* was Brother to *Alphonſo* of *Caſtille*, who had been acknowledged Emperor, and having been driven out of his native Country by ſome Intrigues, was come to throw himſelf into the Pope's Arms.

CHARLES having Advice of *Conradin*'s coming into *Italy*, and finding he muſt put all to the hazard, went into *France* to deſire Aſſiſtance, and managed Matters ſo well, that he rais'd a conſiderable Body of Forces, wherewith he re-
1268. turned into *Italy* in the Year 1268; and meeting *Conradin*, who had already made himſelf Maſter of *Sicily*, near *Alva*, judged it a favourable Opportunity to decide the Quarrel by a Battle, and ſo much the rather, in that Fortune having conducted him to an advantagious Poſt, he knew how to make the beſt of it. For leaving his beſt Troops in Ambuſh behind a little Hill, when the Battle grew hot, and had laſted above three Hours, ſo that his Men began to give Way, he immediately ruſhed out from his Ambuſcade, and charged ſo vigorouſly upon *Conradin*'s Men, who were already wearied, that he entirely routed them. *Conradin*, with *Frederick* of *Auſtria*, who accompanied him in this Expedition, and Don *Henry* of *Caſtille*, ſought their Safety by Flight, but were ſtopped by the Way, diſguiſed like Grooms, whereof *Charles* being apprized, ſent to ſeize, and put them in Priſon. But ſome time after, Pope *Clement*

Clement before his Death, having, as is ſaid, ſent him this Advice, *Conradi vita, Caroli mors, Caroli vita, Conradi mors*, he caus'd *Conradin* and *Frederick* to be beheaded the ſame Year in *Naples*, as Uſurpers, although the latter had only ſerved his Friend in a juſt War, againſt a Prince on whom he had no Dependence; and the former, according to the Rights of Mankind, had only claimed his lawful Inheritance. Thus, by the Death of theſe two Princes, the Families of *Suabia* and *Auſtria* were extinct.

CHAP. XXII.

RODOLPHUS *of* Hapsbourg, *called the* Merciful.

RODOLPHUS the firſt of that Name, Count of *Hapsbourg*, was bred up by the Emperor *Frederick* II, who held him at the Font, and *Frederick* one Day obſerving that a very famous Aſtrologer who was at his Court paid more Reſpect to the Count than any other Nobleman or Prince whatever, asked his Reaſon for ſo doing. The Aſtrologer anſwered him, that he had this Veneration for *Rodolphus*, becauſe God deſigned him for the Empire, and that it would not be in the Power of ten Heirs, which his Imperial Majeſty then had, to prevent it; becauſe they would all die young. This Prediction cauſed the Emperor to regard the Count with an evil Eye, which he perceiving, retired dextrouſly from Court, and, under a ſpecious Pretence, went to *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia*, where he for

RODOLPHUS.

RODOLPHUS.

for ſome Time exerciſed the Office of Great Marſhal, whereof he acquitted himſelf with Honour. Thence he returned to his own Dominions, and behaved himſelf with ſo much Prudence and Valour on all Occaſions, amongſt his Neighbours, that he acquired a great Authority amongſt them.

BUT 'twou'd be to be envious of Virtue it ſelf, ſhould I paſs over in Silence the remarkable Example he gave of his Piety, to which ſome have even aſcribed the Grandeur both of himſelf and his Poſterity. Being one Day a hunting, there fell ſuddenly ſuch a violent Rain that the Roads were rendered almoſt unpaſſable, at which Time meeting a Curate on foot, who was carrying the holy *Viaticum* to a ſick Perſon, he was ſo much moved at ſeeing him walking in the Dirt, that, diſmounting immediately from his Horſe, he ſaid to the good Prieſt, *What, ſhall I ride on Horſeback, and you carry my Saviour on Foot? No, no, I will never ſuffer it, 'twou'd be a great Impiety, I deſire you would mount this Horſe*; and accordingly he made him do ſo, whilſt himſelf accompanied the holy Sacrament bareheaded, and on Foot, to the ſick Perſon's Houſe. He even conducted it back to the Church, where the Curate (having given him the Benediction, being ſurprized at ſuch an admirable and uncommon Zeal, and filled with the divine Spirit) foretold him, that he and his Poſterity ſhould poſſeſs the Empire. Others aſcribe this Prediction to a *Suabian* Propheteſs; but, however it was, his Piety was rewarded.

1269. Rodolphus *his good Offices rewarded.*

'TIS alſo obſerved, that when the Count *Werner de Falkenſtein*, having been elected Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, went to *Rome* to take out his Bulls, *Rodolphus* conducted him with a ſtrong Guard to the *Alps*; and, upon receiving Advice

Advice of his Return, went to meet him at the ſame Place, and convoyed him to *Mentz*; wherewith the Archbiſhop was ſo obliged, that he promis'd he would conſtantly pray to GOD to give him an Opportunity to teſtify his Gratitude to the Count before his Death. The Archbiſhop kept his Word, and found a proper Occaſion to perform his Promiſe, in the Juncture hereafter mentioned. RODOLPHUS.

THE Empire had now been fifteen Years without a Head, that is, from the Time that the Emperor *Richard* had been obliged to abandon it, and retire to the King of *England* his Brother, for want of Means to ſupport the Imperial Dignity. *Alphonſo* King of *Caſtile*, who was alſo choſen Emperor, was detained by his War with the *Moors*: And although he continually gave them hopes that he would ſoon come and take Poſſeſſion of the Empire, yet he never made any Preparation for ſo doing. Hereupon the *German* Princes being wearied by theſe Delays, and not able any longer to bear the Confuſion that reigned amongſt them, by reaſon of the continual Uſurpations and Violences that were exerciſed by the moſt powerful over the weaker, reſolved to chooſe a Head for themſelves, and preſs'd the Elector of *Mentz* to call a Diet for that Purpoſe at *Frankfort*.

IT was accordingly held there in *October* 1273, and notwithſtanding the Proteſtations of the King of *Caſtile*'s Ambaſſadors againſt whatever ſhould be done in a new Election to their Maſter's Prejudice, and the Pretenſions of the King of *Bohemia*, and ſome other great Princes, to the Imperial Dignity, the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* managed the major Part of the Aſſembly ſo well, that he prevailed on them to prefer the Count of *Hapsburg*, whoſe Merit he extol- 1273.

RODOLPHUS.

led, to any other. The other Electors thought it more adviseable to raise some Subject of greater Quality to that Dignity, who might have larger Possessions, and consequently more Authority than he, to enable him to re-establish the Reputation of the Empire. But the Archbishop of *Mentz* answering, that to restore it to its pristine Lustre, it was more necessary to have a prudent, brave, experienced King, than a powerful and rich Prince; the Electors of *Cologn* and *Treves* made no difficulty of joining their Votes to his. The Secular Princes, especially *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, and Duke *Albert* of *Saxony*, reflecting also that Count *Rodolphus* having six Daughters to be married, all of them handsome, and well educated, might make Alliances with the chief Princes of the Empire, and even with themselves, who were both unmarried, by giving each of them one, and thereby re-establishing the Union of *Germany*, agreed likewise to the Sentiments of the Ecclesiastical Electors, and unanimously chose Count *Rodolphus*.

As he was at that Time at the Siege of *Basil*, which he had undertaken on Account of the Protection he had granted to one of the Factions in that City, which had been driven out by the contrary Party, *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nuremberg* was dispatched to him with the Advice of his Election. Assoon as he had receiv'd it he repair'd to *Frankfort*, and, having accepted of the Imperial Dignity, was conducted by all the Princes to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crowned the
1274. fifth of *January*, 1274, with the usual Solemnity.

THIS Ceremony being perform'd, the Emperor ask'd the Princes if they would not do him Homage, and take the customary Oath of Alle-

Allegiance; and they making ſome Difficulty thereat, alledging that they had not brought the Scepter, and that without it he could neither receive their Homage, nor give them the Inveſtiture of their Fiefs; *Rodolphus* taking a Crucifix off the Altar, ſaid to them, *This is the Sign of Him by whom we are ſaved, let us make uſe of this, inſtead of a Scepter.* Hereupon both the Eccleſiaſtick and Secular Princes were inveſted in their Fiefs by the Crucifix, took the Oath of Allegiance, and paid him Homage. Having thus taken Poſſeſſion of the Imperial Throne, his firſt Care was to put an end to the Rapine and Robberies that were committed unpuniſhed throughout *Germany*. He took ſuch effectual Methods for this, that he re-eſtabliſhed Peace and Safety there in a ſhort Time, demoliſhing ſixty Caſtles in *Thuringia*, which ſerv'd as a Retreat for the Robbers, and hanging ninety nine Highwaymen at one time in the City of *Erfort*.

RODOLPHUS.

He ſecures the Roads, and re-eſtabliſhes Peace, by Force and Addreſs.

A certain *Hungarian* Count had for ſome Years publickly robb'd, plunder'd, and maſſacred ſeveral Perſons; and the Emperor not judging it proper to wage War againſt a whole Country for one Man, thought it better to bring this Count back to his Duty by the Interpoſition of his Friends. Hereupon they managed Matters ſo well, that they perſuaded him to go to *Rodolphus*, giving him to underſtand, that he might do it with all the Safety imaginable; upon this he went, and was receiv'd with great Civility by the Emperor, who even did him the Honour to let him eat at his Table, and drink in the ſame Glaſs. Whereupon he ſaid theſe Words: *I no longer doubt of my Safety, ſince I have drank with the honeſteſt Man in the World.* After this good Reception, the Empe-

RODOLPHUS.

ror remonſtrating to the Count what Injury he did himſelf by ſuch wicked Actions, and he promiſing by all that was ſacred that he would amend, *Rodolphus* diſmiſſed him; but as the Count had many Enemies, he was ſet upon unawares upon the Road, and thrown into a River, whereby the Country was delivered from a notorious Captain of Robbers, without the Emperor's Word being violated.

THE States of the Duchy of *Auſtria*, whereof *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* had taken Poſſeſſion, after the Death of *Frederick* their laſt Duke, ſeeing the Emperor near them, took Advantage of that Juncture to give him Information, and complain of the Oppreſſion they ſuffered under *Ottocare*'s Government, begging him to deliver them from his Tyranny. Upon theſe earneſt Intreaties *Rodolphus* ſummoned a Diet at *Augsburgh*, whither *Ottocarus* ſent his Ambaſſadors, but upon a very different Account to what was expected. They flattered themſelves that he would pay Homage to the Emperor, which he had not yet done; but they were very much ſurprized when the firſt Ambaſſador made, on the contrary, a long Harangue, wherein he diſowned the Election of *Rodolphus*, and declared it null in his Maſter's Name. This Speech incenſed the Aſſembly ſo much, that they interrupted him, and made the Ambaſſadors quit the Diet: After which, the Princes declared *Ottocare* a Rebel to the Empire, and concluded, that he having unjuſtly invaded *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Corniola* and *Carinthia*, the Emperor ſhould reclaim his Dominions.

JUDGMENT being thus given, Ambaſſadors were diſpatched to King *Ottocarus* to acquaint him with the Reſolutions of the Diet. Hereunto he haughtily anſwer'd, That he owed no

Wages

Wages to *Rodolphus*, who was formerly his Servant; that his Queen had brought him *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, and *Carinthia* as her Dowry; that he had bought *Carniola* with ready Money; and that therefore he would keep Poſſeſſion thereof, as being lawfully his. Hereupon the Ambaſſadors returning from *Augsbourg*, and giving an Account of *Ottocare*'s Anſwer, the States reſolved to chaſtiſe him for his Diſobedience, and reſtore theſe Territories to the Empire by Force. RODOLPHUS.

THE Emperor himſelf undertook the Execution of this Reſolution, and, being reinforc'd with a ſufficicient Body of Troops, marched into *Auſtria*, accompany'd by the Archbiſhops of *Mentz* and *Cologn*, the Biſhops of *Wirtzbourg*, *Ratisbon*, and *Paſſau*, with *Lewis* Count Palatine of the *Rhine*. There he retook the Cities and Countries dependent on this Province, and put in Governors, to keep and defend them in the Name of the Empire, but as theſe Prelates grew weary of the War, and were not willing to ſee the King of *Bohemia* entirely ruin'd, they propoſed an Agreement in his Favour, on Condition he ſhould content himſelf with *Bohemia*, and *Moravia*, and hold them as Fiefs of the Empire. 1276.

OTTOCARE accepted of theſe Conditions, and going to the Emperor, his Majeſty inveſted him with theſe States, with great Magnificence. But *Ottocare*'s Wife, who was very proud, not being able to conſent to the Meanneſs, which the King her Husband had, in her Opinion, been guilty of, in ſubmitting to *Rodolphus*, who had formerly been in his Service, incens'd *Ottocarus* ſo much, adding even cutting Reproaches to her Remonſtrances, that he renounced the Peace he had concluded with the Empire, and 1277.

RODOLPHUS.

took the Field again, to reduce *Auſtria* a ſecond Time to his Obedience.

1278. *He chaſtiſes Ottocare a ſecond Time, on his breaking the Treaty of Accommodation, and transfers Auſtria into his own Family.*

THE Emperor no ſooner had Advice hereof, but he levy'd an Army without farther Deliberation, and march'd againſt *Ottocarus*, as againſt a publick Infringer of Peace, and a perjur'd Man; acordingly this King was not long before he paid dearly for his Breach of Faith. For he was kill'd in a Battle in *September* 1278, after which Victory *Rodolphus* gave *Auſtria*, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*, to Count *Albert* his eldeſt Son; and ſome Time after being at a Diet at *Augsbourg*, he inveſted him publickly therewith, by the Conſent of the Princes of the Empire, declaring him Duke of *Auſtria*, and incorporating him in the College of Princes. He alſo inveſted *Rodolphus*, another of his Sons, with the County of *Suabia*, which belonged to him by Inheritance, in Right of his Wife *Anne* Counteſs of *Suabia*.

1283.

HE never went to *Italy*, not judging it proper to compromiſe his Authority there in Perſon with the Pope; and uſed to anſwer thoſe who preſs'd him to go to *Rome* to be crown'd, that he imitated the Fox in the Fable, who, being invited with the other Animals to viſit the ſick *Lion*, ſtopt ſhort at the Entrance of his Den, and would go no farther, ſaying, that he could plainly ſee the Foot-ſteps of thoſe that had gone in, but none of thoſe that came out. That 'twas the ſame in his Caſe; and that he would take Warning by the Example of his Predeceſſors, who had indeed gone into *Italy*, but had never come back without the Loſs either of ſome of their Rights, or their Authority.

1284.

WHEREFORE he contented himſelf with ſending his Chancellor into *Italy*, to receive the Homage, and take the Oath of Allegiance of the

1285.

the Imperial Cities, in his Name: And as they refuſed to pay this Duty to a Deputy of the Emperor's, 'twas thought that *Rodolphus* ought to have endeavour'd to reduce them to it by Force; but not being in a Condition ſo to do, he choſe to come to an Agreement, and was the firſt who ſold them the Privileges and Immunities they have ſince enjoy'd. It coſt the City of *Lucca* but 12,000 Crowns, and the Cities of *Florence*, *Genoa* and *Bologna*, but 6000 each, on Condition, however, that they ſhould always remain faithful to the Empire, as being Members thereof. This Conduct caſt a little Blemiſh upon the Reputation of *Rodolphus*, and made him afterwards paſs for a covetous Prince, who made Money of every Thing. RODOLPHUS. 1286. 1287.

AFTER this, by the Conſent of the States, he order'd that the *German* Tongue only ſhould be uſed in the Courts of Judicature. and the Diets; to the End that every one might underſtand his own Affairs in his Mother Tongue. He alſo caus'd the firſt Conſtitution of the Empire to be drawn up in that Language at *Wirtzbourg*, being that of the Year 1287; and he had it renew'd at *Spires*, in 1291, with Regard to what Meaſures the Eccleſiaſticks and Secular Princes and States were mutually to obſerve to each other, as alſo with Reſpect to the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, and the Civil Government between the Vaſſals and Subjects of the Empire. *Orders that only the* German *Tongue ſhould be uſed in the Empire.*

RODOLPHUS having now reign'd eighteen Years, and finding himſelf decay'd and indiſpoſed, called a Diet in the ſame Year 1291 at *Frankfort*, where he deſired the Princes of the Empire to ſecure the Succeſſion to the Imperial Crown to his Son Duke *Albert* of *Au-* 1291.

RODOLPHUS.

ſtria, by creating him King of the *Romans*; but they never would conſent, putting him off with this Excuſe, that the Revenues of the Empire were not ſufficient for the Maintenance of two Kings. Reſenting this Refuſal, he went to *Strasbourg*, and thence ſet out on the Road for *Spires*, ſaying, without imagining he ſpoke Truth, that he was going to pay a Viſit to the deceas'd Emperors. He did ſo; and falling ſick ſome Days after at *Gemerſheim*, he died there the fifteenth of *July*, at the Age of ſixty three, and his Body was carried to be interred in the great Church at *Spires*, with the other Emperors.

The Emperor foretels his own Death.

BY his firſt Wife *Anne*, Daughter to *Albert* Count of *Hochberg*, he had ſeven Sons, and as many Daughters; but of the former there only remained *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, and *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, and Landgrave of *Alſatia*. The Daughters were *Jutte* or *Judith* Wife to *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Clemence* Conſort to *Charles* King of *Hungary*, *Mathilda* who eſpous'd *Lewis* Count Palatine, *Agnes* married to *Albert* Duke of *Saxony*, *Hedgwig* or *Avoy*, Wife to *Otho* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, *Katharine* Conſort to *Otho* Duke of *Bavaria*, and *Euphemia*, a Nun. He left no Children by his ſecond Wife *Agnes* of *Burgundy*.

His Encomium.

I ſhall make no mention here of his great Actions; one may judge of them by the happy State to which he reſtored *Germany*, which, from an extream Deſolation, and prodigious Confuſion, wherein it was involved at his Advancement to the Throne, was, by his good Conduct and Valour, become as well govern'd, and as flouriſhing, as it had ever yet been; I ſhall only take Notice of a certain free Manner, which gain'd him more Hearts than his Courage, as invincible as it was, could reduce to his Obedience.

HE

RODOLPHUS. *His free Behaviour.*

HE gave an Example of this in the War he was oblig'd to carry on when but Count of *Hapsburg*, againſt the Biſhop and City of *Baſil*, and the Abbot of St. *Gal*. As he found that he ſhould not come off with Honour but with great Difficulty, becauſe theſe three Enemies were more powerful than he, he thought it proper to diſengage the Abbot of St. *Gal* from their Party. To this Intent he went to dine with him, without giving him any Notice, and there ſpeaking of their Difference, they agreed it with the Glaſs in Hand, without any Mediators; and he even perſuaded the Abbot to aſſiſt him againſt the others. Beſides this he was very affable, and had always ſome pleaſant Raillery in his Mouth.

ONE Day, two Deputies of the ſame City coming before him, to remonſtrate to him the Neceſſities of their Inhabitants, he obſerv'd that one of them had grey Hairs, and a black Beard, and that the Hair of the other was black, and his Beard grey; whereupon, after hearing them, he ask'd the Reaſon of ſuch Patchwork. As they were very much ſurpriz'd at the Queſtion, they deſired the Emperor to give them Time to reply, which he granting, with an Aſſurance that this Buſineſs ſhould be diſpatch'd if they gave a punctual Anſwer, they return'd the next Morning, and reſolv'd it in theſe Terms: *My Beard* (may it pleaſe your Majeſty) *is turn'd grey ſooner than my Hair, becauſe having always made it my Study to provide for my Mouth, that Care has chang'd it.* The other ſaid, *that he brought his Hair into the World with him, but he had no Beard till ſome Years after, that therefore his Hair being the eldeſt, it was reaſonable that ſhould be grey firſt.*

BUT

RODOLPHUS.

His Sagacity in doing Juſtice.

BUT this Emperor's predominant Virtue was his particular Zeal to adminiſter Juſtice himſelf, whereof he gave divers Examples, amongſt others this, which happen'd one Day at a Diet at *Nuremberg*. A rich Merchant made his Complaint to him, that having entruſted his Landlord with his Purſe wherein were about two hundred *German* Florins, and demanding them again, his Landlord denied the Truſt, becauſe he had not Witneſſes. This the Merchant back'd with ſo many Circumſtances, that *Rodolphus* believed him, and ſaid he would conſider of it. The Landlord was Rich, one of the chief Men of the City, and it could not be proved upon him. A little after ſome Deputies from the City of *Nuremberg* came to make ſome Remonſtrances to the Emperor, and the Landlord happen'd to be amongſt them; whereupon *Rodolphus*, in a familiar Way, ſaid to him, amongſt other Things: *You have a very fine Hat there, let us make an Exchange.* The Landlord, very much rejoiced at the Honour, conſented, gave his Hat immediately to the Emperor, and took his, which done, *Rodolphus* order'd the Deputies to wait, and went out of the Room, as if about other Buſineſs; in the mean Time, he order'd another Citizen to go in the Landlord's Name to his Wife, and demand a Purſe wherein was the Merchant's Money, and, as a Token, to ſhew her his Hat. The Landlady, believing the Citizen upon that Token, delivered him the Purſe, which was brought to the Emperor, who at the ſame Time had ſent for the Merchant to appear before him, and, aſſoon as he enter'd the Chamber where the Landlord was, order'd him to approach, and ſpeak for himſelf. The Merchant renew'd his Complaint concerning the Purſe, and the Landlord for his Part

avers

avers he was not intruſted with any, offering even to confirm it by Oath; but the Emperor ſhewing him the Purſe, he ſtood confounded, and remain'd Speechleſs; whereupon he delivered the Money to the Merchant, and ſentenced the Landlord to pay a heavy Fine. RODOLPHUS.

RODOLPHUS was uſually very plain in his Cloaths, and when, as has been obſerv'd, *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia* did Homage to him for that Kingdom, and *Moravia*, acording to the Treaty concluded between them, the Emperor was only dreſs'd in a grey looſe Coat, tho' *Ottocarus* was in a very magnificent Habit. In this Garb he ſat in his Tent, and received the King in the Sight of all his Army, who were ſurpriz'd to ſee a Prince, in ſuch a rich Dreſs, at the Feet of an Emperor, who was only cloathed like a common Soldier. *The Extream Modeſty of* Rodolphus *in his Cloaths.*

IN fine, to the End of his Days, he obſerv'd, in all his Actions, a Conduct worthy of a great Prince.

CHAP. XXIII.

ADOLPHUS *of* Naſſau.

SEVEN or eight Months after the Death of *Rodolphus*, the Princes of the Empire met at *Frankfort*, to elect an Emperor, and *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, Son to *Rodolphus*, ſollicited them to obtain their Votes; it being the uſual Cuſtom to chooſe that Perſon of the deceas'd Emperor's Family who was capable of receiving the Crown. But *Adolphus elected, to the Excluſion of* Albert *of* Auſtria.

Gerard

ADOLPHUS.

Gerard Elector of *Mentz* manag'd Matters with ſo much Addreſs, in Favour of Count *Adolphus* of *Naſſau*, his Relation, that that Nobleman carried it from *Albert*.

THE Archbiſhop, to compaſs this Deſign, had conferr'd privately with the Electors, one after another; and, knowing they had all Enemies, he made 'em ſeverally believe all the Votes were for giving the Empire to that Prince who was hated by each of them; and thus dexterouſly ſowing an Apprehenſion in the Minds of all of them, they conjur'd him ſeparately to elect whomſoever he pleas'd, rather than the Perſon who, as he had told them, was propos'd. Hereupon, he nam'd *Adolphus*, to the Surpriſe of all the others, who were for *Albert* of *Auſtria*, whom they thought even the Elector of *Mentz* would himſelf have choſen.

1292. *His Manner of governing.*

ADOLPHUS then was proclaim'd Emperor the twentieth of *May* 1292; but altho' he was endued with all the Qualities of a great Prince, he was not rich enough to ſupport the Imperial Dignity, with his own Patrimony alone, without other Aſſiſtance. On the other hand, as he was a better Soldier than Politician, he paid too much Deference to the Counſels of his Officers, and did not ſet Value enough upon the Advice of the Princes of the Empire, which alienated the Minds of moſt of them, inſomuch that they afterwards eſpous'd the Duke of *Auſtria*'s Party.

1293. *League between the Emperor and the King of* England, *againſt* France.

THE Kings of *France* and *England* were then engaged in a ſharp and bloody War, on Account of ſome Provinces to which each pretended excluſive of each other; and the King of *England* imagining the Aſſiſtance of the Empire might be of great Service to him, propos'd to *Adolphus*, that if he would aid him with Troops to retake what

what the King of *France* detain'd from him, he would come in Perſon into *Germany* with Men and Money, to aſſiſt the Emperor to recover the Territories which *France*, as he ſaid, uſurp'd alſo from the Emperor. This Offer was received by *Adolphus* with the more Joy, upon the propos'd Conditions, as it was accompany'd with a good Sum of Money, which he immediately employ'd in levying a formidable Army. ADOLPHUS.

THE *French* King being appriz'd of the League made between the Emperor and *England*, endeavour'd to put himſelf in a Condition to oppoſe them, and, in order to that, had recourſe likewiſe to the Aſſiſtance of the *Germans*, and engag'd *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria* in his Party, who ſaid, on this Occaſion, That there was no more Diſhonour in being Penſioner to the King of *France*, than to the King of *England*. *The King of* France *gains over* Albert *Duke of* Auſtria *to his Party.* 1294.

HOWEVER, the Mony received from *England*, inſtead of being advantagious to the Affairs of *Adolphus*, ruin'd him entirely; for his moſt affectionate Friends, and, amongſt others, the Elector of *Mentz*, being incens'd at his not giving them a Share of this Subſidy, as likewiſe at his not conſulting them upon his moſt important Affairs, which he always undertook of his own Head, changed their Friendſhip into Hatred, and form'd underhand a Deſign to diſpoſſeſs him of the Empire. 1295. 1296.

THE Emperor being informed of theſe Intregues, and knowing that Duke *Albert* had declared himſelf the Chief of his Enemies, deſign'd to have march'd againſt him with the Army he had rais'd with the *Engliſh* Money, with Intention to ſubdue *Albert*, before he went to the Aſſiſtance of the King of *England*; but he was preſs'd upon ſo hard by the *Engliſh*, that he was at laſt forced to leave *Germany* free, and

ADOLPHUS.

and march towards *Alſatia*, to make a Diverſion in their Favour. In the mean while Duke *Albert*, having rais'd a conſiderable Number of Forces, obſerv'd all the Emperor's Steps, and took the ſame Rout, during which the Elector of *Mentz*, by the Advice of the other Princes of the Empire, invited Duke *Albert* to come to *Mentz*, with a Promiſe of electing him King of the *Romans*. Accordingly he went, and arriv'd there at the ſame Time as the Electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenbourg*, who were no better ſatisfy'd with the Government of *Adolphus* than the others, and yet leſs with his Undertaking this War, and divers other Affairs of the Empire, of his own Caprice, and without their Advice: Whereupon they deliberated together, and reſolv'd to depoſe *Adolphus*, and chooſe Duke *Albert* Emperor. This Reſolution being taken, they met on the twenty third of *June* 1298, in the ſixth Year of *Adolphus*'s Reign, and elected *Albert*; and as he was incamp'd without the City with his Army, the Electors went to him, to notify his Election, wiſhing him all manner of Proſperity, promiſing to aſſiſt, protect, and maintain him againſt all Oppoſers.

1297.

1298.

A Battle between the two Competitors, wherein Adolphus *is kill'd.*

ADOLPHUS being inform'd of this Election, rais'd the Siege he had laid to *Ruffach* in *Alſatia*, and march'd to *Spires*, where he encamp'd with his Troops, which were reinforc'd with thoſe of the Count Palatine *Rodolphus*, Duke *Otho* of *Bavaria*, with the Cities of *Spires*, *Worms*, and ſome others, that continued faithful to him till his Death. *Albert* advanced alſo with his Army, each of them being determin'd to decide by Force of Arms who ſhould enjoy the Imperial Crown. In fine, they fought on both ſides with great Courage, between *Geinheim* and the Cloiſter of *Roſendal*, where *Adolphus* and

Albert

ADOLPHUS.

Albert meeting, engaged Hand to Hand. Hereupon the Emperor, attacking the Duke with infinite Valour, ſaid: *This is the Place where You muſt yield me both the Empire and your Life*; upon which the Duke anſwer'd very briskly, *That is as* GOD *pleaſes*, and at the ſame Time gave him a Cut acroſs the Face, which made him fall from his Horſe to the Ground, where ſome other cut his Throat. Hereupon Duke *Albert* immediately put a Stop to the Slaughter, and gave Quarter to all; the Count Palatine, and the Duke of *Bavaria*, making their Eſcape to *Heidelberg*, and thence to *Bavaria*.

As for *Adolphus*, his Body was interr'd in the Cloiſter of *Roſendal*, or (as others ſay) in the Cloiſter of *Frawenfelt*; the Emperor *Albert* not ſuffering him to be buried at *Spires*, with the other Emperors, tho' he was afterwards carry'd thither by the Order of the Emperor *Henry* of *Luxemberg*,

CHAP. XXIV.

ALBERT I.

THE Emperor *Albert* I, call'd the *Triumphant*, on Account of his Generoſity, his Courage, and the many Battles he had gain'd over his Enemies, was alſo nam'd the *One-ey'd*, becauſe that having drank ſome Poiſon in his Youth, which had almoſt coſt him his Life, and the Phyſicians hanging him up by the Heels to make

1298. *He is confirm'd in the Empire by a Diet.*

ALBERT I. make him vomit, he could not escape so well, but that he lost one of his Eyes.

THO' he had already been elected King of the *Romans*, before his gaining the Victory over the Emperor *Adolphus*, he was apprehensive of their contesting his Election, because the Electors of *Treves*, and the Palatine, did not assist thereat. Wherefore immediately after that Battle, he summon'd all the Electors to *Frankfort*, and delivering the Crown into their Hands, desired them to proceed to a new Choice, which they did, and nam'd him unanimously on the ninth of *August*, after which they conducted him to *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crown'd the twenty fourth of the same Month. The Solemnity of this Coronation was so famous, and the Concourse to see it so great, that the Duke of *Saxony*, the Emperor's Brother-in-Law, and several other Persons, were stifled in the Croud.

ALBERT being thus establish'd, sent to *Rome*, to demand the Confirmation of his Election of Pope *Boniface* VIII; but his Holiness, being prepossess'd with Chagrin, on Account of this Prince's rising on the ruins of his Friend *Adolphus*, would not at first hearken to it, saying, That they could not set him upon the Throne without his Consent. But his ardent Desire to be reveng'd on *Philip* King of *France* at last induced him to confirm *Albert*'s Election, and even to offer him the Crown of *France* in *Philip*'s Prejudice. *Albert* thank'd him for this Offer; but represented to him that he could not ingage in a Quarrel of that Importance without being assured of some Assistance from his Holiness to carry on the War. But the Pope declaring that he would not contribute in the least to it, the Thing went no farther, and the Emperor

ALBERT I.

Emperor to be beforehand with *Boniface*, and prevent his ſowing Diſſention between the King of *France* and him, thereby to ruin them with more Eaſe, enter'd into a Negotiation with that Prince, which ſucceeded. *Philip* and he had an Interview at *Vaucoleurs*, where they renewed the antient Leagues between *France* and the Empire, and, to make their Agreement more firm, treated of the Marriage of *Rodolphus Albert's* Son, with *Blanch Philip's* Daughter, which however was not accompliſh'd till the Year following.

The Emperor cauſes his Wife to be crown'd, and declares his Son Duke of Auſtria.

IN the mean Time the Emperor ſummon'd a Diet at *Nuremberg* on St. *Martin's* Day, when the Eccleſiaſtical Electors attended, as didlikewiſe the King of *Bohemia*, the Elector Palatine, and divers other Secular Princes of the Empire. There he cauſed his Wife *Elizabeth*, Daughter to the Count of *Tirol*, to be crown'd, and conferred the Duchy of *Auſtria* on *Rodolphus* his eldeſt Son, creating him and his Succeſſors Dukes of *Auſtria*.

'TIS obſervable that he publiſh'd the Statutes concerning the Offices of the Electors of the Empire, and their Function, and that they were accordingly perform'd there by thoſe who were there preſent. At the breaking up of the Aſſembly *Albert* (taking into Conſideration the Conduct of the Eccleſiaſtical Electors, and ſome other Princes, who had taken Poſſeſſion of the Cuſtoms, and other Revenues, that formerly were ſet apart for the Maintenance of the Emperors, which they likewiſe increaſed, as they thought fit) commanded them to reſtore the Toll on the *Rhine*, to its antient Footing, on Pain of lying under Diſgrace. To this they anſwer'd, that they enjoy'd theſe Revenues in the ſame manner as their Predeceſſors had before them, with-

1299. *Recovers the Rights belonging to the Empire, from the Princes that uſurp'd them.*

ALBERT I. out being disturb'd either by the Emperors, or Kings of the *Romans*, and that they hop'd to have been maintain'd in those Rights, whence they could not recede.

HEREUPON *Albert* complain'd to the Pope
1303. of this Answer, by *Peter* Bishop of *Basil*, but, his Holiness turning a deaf Ear to all his Remonstrances, the Emperor saw that he should be oblig'd to have Recourse to Force, to do himself Justice. To this Intent, by his Friends Advice, he declared his Dissatisfaction to the Ecclesiastical Electors, summoning them before the Princes and States of the Empire at *Mentz*, to answer to the Accusations made against them, according to the Custom of those Times.

THE Electors regarded this Citation but little, and retiring to the Elector Palatine before him, as a Competent Judge, form'd a Complaint against *Albert* himself, for having kill'd *Adolphus* without Reason, thereby eluding the Emperor's Demand; but he did not suffer them to play upon him with Impunity. For he made War upon these four Electors, beginning with the Palatine, and reduced them all to Reason one after another, which lasted the Years 1301, 1302, 1303. Thus they were oblig'd to restore the Duties of the *Rhine* upon the antient Foot, to the Emperor's Content.

IN one Thing he committed a great Error, that is, in treating the *Swiss* with so much Ri-
The Swiss begin to recover their Liberty. gour, that the Cantons of *Ury*, *Schweitz* and *Underwalt* rose up in Arms against his Officers, drove them out, entered into a Confederacy together for ten Years, and shew'd the other *Swiss* the Way to recover their Liberty.

THE Affair he had most at Heart was, to satis-
1304. fy his ardent Desire of translating the Kingdom of *Bohemia* into his own Family; for *Wenceslaus*

ceſlaus, Son to King *Wenceſlaus*, having ſucceeded his Father in the *Bohemian* Throne, his Conduct was ſo irregular, that he was aſſaſſinated by his own Subjects, and died without Children. This leaving the *Bohemians* at Liberty to proceed to an Election, they choſe *Henry* Son to the Count of *Carinthia*, and *Tirol*, Couſin German to *Albert*; but the Emperor alledging a previous Agreement, made with the Family of *Wenceſlaus*, levy'd a conſiderable Army, and march'd into *Bohemia*, with an Intention to ſettle his Son *Rodolphus* in the Throne. *Henry*, not daring to wait his coming, quitted his Pretenſions, and as *Rodolphus* had then loſt his firſt Wife *Blanch*, Daughter to the *French* King, the Emperor made him marry *Iſabella* the Widow of *Wenceſlaus*, and this ſerv'd to eſtabliſh him in Poſſeſſion of the Crown; but he did not enjoy it long, for he died ſuddenly in 1306. ALBERT I. 1305. 1306.

HIS Death created new Diviſions in the Kingdom, for ſome recall'd *Henry* Count of *Carinthia*, who had been diſpoſſeſs'd by *Albert*, and others elected *Frederick* the Emperor's ſecond Son, and Brother to *Rodolphus*. Then *Albert* who before had got the Start of *Henry*, was diſappointed himſelf, for he found *Henry* ſo well eſtabliſh'd, that he was oblig'd to return without being able to effect any Thing, but laying the Country of *Bohemia* waſte. Nevertheleſs 'tis obſerv'd that both in this Expedition and others he had fought twelve Battles in Perſon, and gain'd them, and it was theſe Exploits which acquired him the Sir-name of *Triumphant*, as had been before obſerv'd. 1307.

HE did not expreſs leſs Zeal with Reſpect to the other Territories that fell into his Power, than he did in making himſelf Maſter of *Bohemia*; he had by his Wife *Elizabeth* eleven

ALBERT I. Children, all living, ſix Sons and five Daughters; and he endeavour'd to procure them all poſſible Advantages, this being what he moſt vehemently deſir'd, and accordingly it coſt him his Life, which happen'd thus:

His inordinate Deſire to agrandize his Children proves fatal to him.

THE Emperor, after the Death of his Brother *Rodolphus* Duke of *Suabia*, and Landgrave of *Alſatia*, who left only one Son, caus'd his Nephew to be brought to Court, and took upon himſelf the Adminiſtration of his Dominions, as his Governor. But Duke *John* being paſs'd his Minority, had often ſollicited the Emperor very earneſtly to reſtore his Patrimony to him, or at leaſt Part of it; which *Albert* had deferr'd granting, on ſeveral Pretences, putting off the young Prince from Time to Time, without doing him Juſtice, as if he only ſought an Opportunity to appropriate it to himſelf for his own Children, as was ſuſpected by many.

THIS Suſpicion was increas'd by the Intrigues he had us'd to get *Bohemia*, and the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, where he had Recourſe to Force, as he did likewiſe to get Poſſeſſion of ſome other States whereof he made himſelf Maſter; which Conduct gain'd him the Averſion and Reſentment of ſeveral Princes. They even ſometimes rally'd the young Duke *John*, calling him a Duke without a Duchy, and this Affront touch'd him very ſenſibly; but he had the Preſence of Mind to ſeem not to regard it.

1308. ON the firſt of *May* 1308, the Emperor coming to *Baſil*, to take the Air, Duke *John* hop'd he might there obtain ſomething for his Intereſt; to which end he employ'd *John* Biſhop of *Strasbourg*, whom he had prevail'd on to ask the Favour of the Emperor, that he would reſtore him ſome Caſtles of his Patrimony, with their Dependencies. Upon this Prelate's Perſuaſion

ſuaſion *Albert* anſwer'd, That he would make his Nephew a Colonel, and employ him in the *Bohemian* War, which being over he would content him. At this Anſwer the young Duke was ſo enrag'd, that he could not ſuppreſs what he thought it imported: *I ſee very plainly*, cry'd he aloud, *that he who robs me of my Birthright, will alſo rob me of my Life*; this ſaid, he went immediately to find three of his Friends, with whom he had plotted to rid his Hands of the Emperor, in Caſe he could not obtain Juſtice, and reſolv'd no longer to defer the Execution of this execrable Deſign. ALBERT I.

HEREUPON he took his Time, when the Emperor after the Entertainment having in Gallantry crown'd all his Attendants with Flowers, ſet out on the Road to *Rhinfelden*; and being arriv'd at the River *Rhus*, near *Schafhauſen*, he went into a Boat with only Duke *John*, and his three Friends; the Emperor's Son, with the reſt of the Retinue, waiting on the Bank-ſide for the Return of the Boat. *Albert* having croſs'd the River, and walking alone in a Field new ſow'd, Duke *John* with his three Friends, *Rodolphus* of *Warth*, *Walter* of *Eſchebach*, and *Ulrich* of *Palm* coming up to him, the firſt gave him a Cut with his Sword in the Throat, *Warth* wounded him in the Breaſt, and *Palm* clove his Head and Face aſunder. The Emperor's Son and Attendants ſaw this Maſſacre from the other ſide of the River, without being able to go to the Aſſiſtance of the Perſon aſſaſſinated, for want of a Boat, whereupon the Murtherers made their Eſcape.

As for Duke *John* he lay a while conceal'd, ſometimes in one Place, ſometimes in another, but was at laſt ſeiz'd in *Italy*, where he had taken Refuge, and periſh'd in Priſon, his Duchy of

ALBERT I. *Suabia* being ſeiz'd and confiſcated for the Uſe of the Duke of *Auſtria*, *Palm* lay hid in a Nunnery, where he died ſome Time after, *Eſchebach* turn'd Cowherd in a Village in the Country of *Wirtemberg* for 35 Years, at the End whereof he diſcover'd himſelf upon his Death-bed, and *Warth* was taken, drawn, and broken on a Wheel. They built a Cloiſter nam'd *Koningsfelt* at the Place where *Albert* was kill'd, whence his Body, after having been ſome Time depoſited there, was transferr'd to *Spires*, near his Predeceſſors. He had an extream Averſion to Flatterers and Detractors, uſing to ſay that he lov'd three Sorts of Perſons in the World, Women of Honour, Churchmen that fear'd GOD, and brave Men.

CHAP. XXV.

HENRY *the ſeventh.*

The King of France *aſpires to the Empire by means of the Pope.*

AFTER *Albert*'s Death, the Juncture of Affairs made it apprehended that the Electors would not agree very ſoon together, and that the Obſtacles they laid in the Way, to retard the pitching upon a Perſon to fill the vacant Throne, might be of ill Conſequence. For *Philip* the *Fair*, King of *France*, aſpir'd to the Empire, and that he might attain it the more eaſily, reſolv'd to take a Journey to *Avignon*, where Pope *Clement* then was, and treat perſonally with him: 'Twas ſaid that the King had rais'd him to the Popedom, on Condition

dition that, in Recompenſe, he ſhould aſſiſt him in his turn to obtain the Empire. HENRY VII.

The Pope diffident of the King of France.

Hrs Holineſs being appriz'd of the Deſign of the Viſit which *Philip* intended him, was in great Pain how he ſhould come off with Honour; for as he was oblig'd to keep in *France*, on Account of the Commotions in *Rome* and *Italy*, he could not ſee any fair Pretence to refuſe what the King deſired of him, but he knew alſo that it was not in his Power to grant it; that the Imperial Crown was at the Diſpoſal of the *Germans*; and that, tho' the Popes had by their Bulls arrogated to themſelves the Right of conferring it, it was only verbally, and not in Effect.

BESIDES this the Pontif conſider'd that, if on this Occaſion he ſhould aſſume to himſelf this Right, it would be to run a Riſque of making the *Germans* explain themſelves, and deprive the Court of *Rome* in plain Terms of this Pretenſion, becauſe they would maintain themſelves in their Rights; as alſo that they might apprehend that, if the King of *France* ſhould reſtore the Imperial Dignity to his Family, he might alſo recover the antient States, Rights, Prerogatives, and Pretenſions which *France* formerly had in the Empire.

ADD to this, that his Holineſs was not ignorant of a Thing known to every one, *viz.* that *Philip* had been in no ways content with the Court of *Rome*, ſince the Injury he had received from Pope *Boniface* VIII, who, to mention it *en paſſant*, had ſet himſelf up for a Maſter over the King of *France*, by exhorting, or rather commanding him, by his *Nuntio*'s, after a very imperious Manner, and on Pain of Excommunication, to make War againſt the *Turk*, for the Recovery of the Kingdom of *Jeruſalem*. But *Philip*, firſt impriſoning the *Nuntio*'s, con-

HENRY VII.

ven'd the Eccleſiaſtical and Secular Eſtates of the Kingdom, to know of them whether they would acknowledge the Pope, or him for their lawful Prince, and whether his Holineſs could deprive him of the Crown, and give it to any other.

HEREUPON they unanimouſly concluded that they ow'd Obedience to the King, as their natural Prince, and that 'twas neither in the Power of the Pope to confer, nor take away Kingdoms; that his Kingdom was not of this World, and that his Authority extended only to Spirituals. In Conſequence of this Declaration the King prohibited his Subjects carrying any Money to *Rome*, on any Account whatever.

CLEMENT V, who ſucceeded *Bennet* XI, ſucceſſor to *Boniface* VIII, being in this Quandary, Cardinal *Nicholas Prat* adviſed him to diſpatch *Nuntio*'s underhand (as he inſtantly did) to the *German* Electors, to preſs them to elect an Emperor, and declare that, in Caſe they did not proceed ſpeedily to a Choice, the Imperial Dignity would be in Danger of reverting from *Germany* into *France*, and that in order to facilitate this Election, he propos'd *Henry* Count of *Luxemberg* to them, as a Perſon of Virtue, and Merit.

Henry of Luxemberg choſen Emperor.

IN Compliance with the Pope's Advice, the Electors immediately met at *Frankfort*, and concluded on this Election about the Beginning of *Advent*, ſending to inform Count *Henry* of *Luxemberg* thereof; whilſt on the other hand King *Philip*, being acquainted with it, as he was on the Road to *Avignon*, return'd back to the ſame Place whence he ſet out. The Count was very much ſurpriz'd to hear that the Electors had conferr'd on him that high Dignity, as thinking himſelf not powerful enough to ſupport it; however he accepted it with many Acknow-

Acknowledgments, and was crown'd at *Aix* on *Twelfth-Day* 1309. That Ceremony being over he went along the *Rhine* to receive the Homage and Oath of Allegiance of the Princes, Lords, and Cities, and the ſame Year ſummon'd an Imperial Diet at *Spires*, whither the Electors and other Princes came in great Numbers, with the Deputies of the Cities. HENRY VII. 1309.

ELIZABETH, Daughter and Heireſs to the deceas'd *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, and a Daughter of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, was alſo at this Aſſembly, becauſe ſhe had been contracted to *John*, the Emperor *Henry*'s Son; but as the Marriage was deferr'd, ſhe reſolv'd either to have it conſummated, or know the Reaſons why it was not concluded. The Count *John* of *Luxemberg* was ſeventeen Years old, and the Princeſs four Years elder than he, of a ſtrong Conſtitution, and well made; but ſome Rumours having been ſpread derogatory to her Honour, the Emperor deferr'd from Day to Day the Conſummation of the Marriage, on divers Pretences.

Henry's Son married to the Heireſs of Bohemia, who gives the Lye publickly to thoſe who had aſpers'd her Honour.

THE Princeſs, on the other hand, being very much ſurpriz'd at theſe Delays, us'd her utmoſt Endeavours to diſcover the Cauſe; and, being inform'd of it, reſolv'd to go into the Emperor's Antichamber, where, in Preſence of her Ladies and Women, ſhe undreſs'd herſelf to her Shift, and preſenting herſelf very reſpectfully, in that Condition, before *Henry*, addreſs'd him thus: *Sir, I have been inform'd that your Imperial Majeſty has had ſome Suſpicion of my Conduct, and that this was the Reaſon that has delay'd my Marriage with the Prince your Son; I have always been ſuch an Enemy to Immodeſty, and it is ſo certain that no Man ever touch'd my Body, that I have taken the Liberty to come to tell you, that this Suſpicion*

HENRY VII.

picion, which I have never merited, afflicts me to that Degree, that I can't leave this Affair in the Condition it is at present. Wherefore I humbly beg your Majesty, to do me the Favour to send for Matrons or Midwives, to confound this Calumny, which was design'd to do me such an ill Office with your Majesty.

THE Emperor being much astonish'd at her knowing the Mystery, ask'd her Pardon, and gave her Hopes that the Marriage should be consummated assoon as possible, however the Princess remain'd stedfast in her Resolution of being justify'd, and *Henry* being no longer able to refuse it, was oblig'd to cause some Ladies of Quality, and Midwives to come from the City, who attested upon Oath, that the Princess was a Virgin. Immediately after this Justification, the Emperor caus'd the Nuptials to be solemniz'd with great Magnificence, in Presence of the Electors, and other Princes and Lords of the Diet. This done, the new-married Couple went by his Order into *Bohemia*, attended by divers Princes and Noblemen; and after their Departure *Henry* caus'd his Expedition into *Italy* to be resolv'd on in the same Diet, having a sufficient Number of Troops granted him, according to his Desire, for that Purpose.

1310. *The Count of* Wirtemberg *put to the Ban of the Empire.*

DURING the Reign of the Emperor *Albert* I, Count *Everard* of *Wirtemberg* had begun to molest the Imperial Cities of *Suabia*, and continued to persecute them even after his decease, wherein he acted with so much Violence, that they were oblig'd to complain to the Diet at *Spires*. The Count being cited thither to answer thereunto, came with so many Forces, that the Emperor and other Princes took Umbrage thereat, and endeavour'd to terminate the Affair by fair Means; but he rejected the Proposal, and retired without hearkning

ning to any Accommodation. On this Refusal *Henry* put him to the Ban of the Empire, and resolv'd with the States to levy a Body of Troops, in order to make use of Force to reduce him to his Duty. The Lord of *Winsberg* had a Commission to raise this Army, and also to command it; and in a little Time he made himself Master of almost all the Count's Dominions. Hereupon the Count, giving Way to his ill Fortune, made his Escape secretly to the Marquis of *Baden*, where he waited the Emperor's Death with Patience, after which he reconquer'd his Territories without Difficulty. HENRY VII. 1311.

The Emperor goes into Italy *with a Design to re-establish the Rights and Authority of the Empire.*

As after *Frederick* II's Death in 1250, none of his Successors had been in *Italy*, the Rights of the Empire were lost and buried in Oblivion; every Nobleman set himself up for a Sovereign, and the two Parties of the *Guelphs* and *Gibelins* had never before been so inveterate against each other. Pope *Clement* V, who kept at *Avignon*, during these Troubles, and to whom *Henry* was partly oblig'd for his Election to the Empire, press'd him to march into *Italy* to disperse the Sedition; the *Gibelins*, who were Imperialists, conjur'd him also to hasten his coming, to support them against their Enemies. Wherefore the Emperor, not being able to defer his Expedition, got the States of the Empire to consent to it. Hereupon leaving his Son *John* King of *Bohemia* his Lieutenant in the Empire, he march'd to *Italy*, with all the Troops that had been granted him two Years before. He was likewise accompany'd by the Dukes, *Leopold* of *Austria*, and *Rodolphus* of *Bavaria*, with *Baldwin* Archbishop of *Treves*, the Bishop of *Liege*, the Counts of *Savoy* and *Flanders*, and other Lords of the Empire, with the Militia of all the Imperial Cities. 1312.

POPE

HENRY VII.

The Pope arms himself against this Expedition.

POPE *Clement*, tho' from the beginning of *Henry*'s Reign, he had never ceas'd ſolliciting him to come to *Rome*, chang'd his Mind aſſoon as he ſaw him on the Road, with a ſufficient Force, to re-eſtabliſh the Imperial Sovereignty and Authority in *Italy*. Hereupon he enter'd into ſecret Negotiations on all ſides to thwart his Deſigns; and, in order to put himſelf in a Condition to oppoſe him, committed the Government of *Rome* to *Robert* King of *Apulia* or *Naples*, (with whom he had enter'd into a League againſt the Emperor) who ſent in his ſtead his Brother Prince *John* as Governor, with a good Body of Troops, and at the ſame Time, made a Confederacy with the Cities of *Florence*, *Bologna*, *Sienna*, *Lucca*, *Cremona*, *Padua*, *Breſcia*, and ſome others, all of which being provided with ſtrong Garriſons, and all Sorts of Ammunition and Proviſion, put themſelves in a Poſture to reſiſt the Emperor.

Diviſion of the Citizens of Rome.

As for *Rome* the Citizens were all in Confuſion, thoſe of the *Colonna*'s Party, and their Adherents were for the Emperor, and had ſeiz'd upon St. *John de Lateran*, the Amphitheatre, and ſome other principal Places. Theſe aſſum'd the old Title of *Gibelins*; and the others who were leagu'd with Prince *John*, were call'd *Guelphs*, and made themſelves Maſters of the Capitol, the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, *Adrian*'s Mole, and the *Vatican*. *Henry*, according to the Cuſtom of his Predeceſſors, had diſpatch'd Envoys towards the Cities of *Italy*, to give them Notice of his coming, with Orders to have the Proviſions, and other Neceſſaries in Readineſs for his Court, and for his Troops.

The Emperor reduces moſt of the Cities of Italy.

THE City of *Milan*, and other Places of *Lombardy*, received the Emperor with Joy, and paid him a conſiderable Sum of Money upon

on

on the annual Arrears, and the City of *Cremona*, being the firſt that reſolv'd to oppoſe him, he took it by Force, and oblig'd it alſo to pay the Arrears that were due; but *Parma*, *Vicenza*, and *Piacenza* agreed with him on reaſonable Conditions. *Padua* paid 100,000 Crowns, and received one of the Emperor's Colonels as Governor of the City; the *Venetians* preſented his Majeſty with a conſiderable Sum of Money, and an Imperial Crown of Gold embelliſh'd with Diamonds, and a Chain of Silver gilt, exquiſitely wrought. *Breſcia* made ſome little Reſiſtance, but was oblig'd, as well as the reſt, to contribute to the Expences of the War. From hence *Henry* having received the Iron Crown at *Milan*, and appointed a Governor there, as well as at *Verona*, *Parma*, and *Mantua*, march'd directly to *Genoa*, where he was magnificently received, and entertain'd by that City. HENRY VII.

IN fine, on his arrival at *Piſa*, he there met the Expreſs ſent him by the *Colonna's*, who were of his Party, begging him to advance with all Speed to *Rome*, which he did, and took it Sword in Hand. There he caus'd himſelf to be crown'd on the firſt Day of *Auguſt*, in St. *John de Lateran's* Church, by three Cardinals who reſided there in the Pope's Name, and were oblig'd to perform that Ceremony, in ſpite of the ſecret Intrigues of his Holineſs himſelf, who was averſe to it. Before his Coronation the Emperor us'd to allow thoſe Cardinals who came to viſit him the Honour of dining at his Table; but after that Solemnity he would no longer permit any of them to ſit with him. On his Departure from *Rome* he appointed the Count *de Bouchet*, and *Stephen Colonna* Governors, who a little after triumph'd over the *Guelphs*, and reduc'd all the City under his Power. *Reduces* Rome, *and is crown'd there.*

FROM

HENRY VII.

FROM *Rome Henry* return'd to *Piſa*, whither he ſummon'd all the Princes of *Italy*, and order'd them to pay him regularly, for the future, their annual and uſual Tribute, after which, having deliberated with them upon the Acts of Hoſtility which *Robert* King of *Naples* had committed againſt the Empire, he caus'd him to be cited before him, as a Feudatary thereof on Account of his Kingdom, and, on his refuſal to appear before him, put him to the Ban, on the twenty fifth of *April* 1313, confiſcating his Kingdom, and giving it to *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, who was in the Emperor's Intereſts. The Pope, not being willing to ſee his Ally entirely ruin'd, wrote very urgent Letters to *Henry*, to incite him to an Agreement; but they had a contrary Effect, for they were dictated in ſuch Terms, as ſeem'd as if 'twas a Lord who treated with his Vaſſal, even ſo far, as that his Holineſs ſaid, that the Emperor was bound to him by his Oath of Allegiance. *Henry*, enrag'd at theſe Letters, ſent for Notaries, and proteſted, by a publick Declaration, that neither himſelf nor any of his Predeceſſors had ever been dependent on any one; whereby it ſeem'd that the Pope took the Oath the Emperor made at his Coronation, for an Oath of Allegiance. But it was quite otherwiſe, as *Henry* made him ſenſible; for he only ſwore to be Protector and Defender of his Holineſs, and the Holy See, which is the ſame Oath as all Kings take when they ſwear to protect and defend the Church.

The King of Naples *put to the Ban of the Empire.* 1313.

The Pope and Emperor embroiled together.

ACCORDINGLY the Emperor left nothing undone to ſhew his Reſentment againſt the Pope, and, in order to put the Sentence paſs'd againſt *Robert* more eaſily in Execution, he join'd his Forces with thoſe of *Frederick*, King of *Sicily*, and caus'd *Robert*'s Dominions to be attack'd

The Emperor's Expedition againſt Robert *King of* Naples.

attack'd both by Sea and Land. But reſolving to be in Perſon at this Expedition, altho' already very much indiſpos'd, and being advanced as far as *Buenconvento*, he there terminated both his Exploits, and his Life, for he died there of Poiſon, the twenty fourth of *Auguſt* 1313, and his noble Projects, for the Re-eſtabliſhment of the Imperial Authority in *Italy*, died with him. His Succeſſors took the ſame Care of his Funeral Pomp, as he did of his Predeceſſors the Emperors *Albert* and *Rodolphus*; for he caus'd the Body of the firſt to be carried from *Konigsfelt* to *Spires*, and that of *Rodolphus* to be alſo tranſferr'd from *Roſendal* to *Spires*, interring them both in the great Church with a Royal Magnificence, attending it himſelf, and being accompany'd by ſeveral other Princes and Noblemen.

HENRY VII.

CHAP. XXVI.

LEWIS *the Fifth of* Bavaria, *and* FREDERICK *the Third of* Auſtria *called the* Fair.

THE Diſorders and Dangers which had already begun to interrupt the Commerce in *Germany* during the Life of *Henry* VII, increas'd after his Death to ſuch an Exceſs, that certain Cities upon the *Rhine* were oblig'd to unite themſelves together, with the Prince Palatine *Rodolphus* Duke of *Bavaria*. He ſign'd the

Diſorders in the Empire during the Interregnum.

Lewis V. and Frederick III.

the Act of Confederacy the ſame Year 1313; both in his own Name, and in that of his Brother *Lewis*, to protect himſelf from Robbers and their Abbettors, or Relations, who undertook to revenge the Death of ſuch as were puniſh'd, and even dar'd attempt upon the Inhabitants of the Cities where they were executed. This Confederacy was to ſubſiſt till the Election of an Emperor, and the *Interregnum* laſted from the fourteenth of *Auguſt* 1313, when *Henry* died, to to the eighteenth of *October* 1314, during which *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, and Duke *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, both Couſin-Germans; and Grandſons to the Emperor *Rodolphus*, made Intereſt for the Empire, by the Aſſiſtance of their reſpective Friends.

1314.

The States dividing, choſe two Emperors at the ſame Time, Lewis *of* Bavaria, *and* Frederick *of* Auſtria.

In fine, *Peter* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Baldwin* Archbiſhop of *Treves*, who was alſo Count of *Luxemberg*, and Brother to the Emperor *Henry* VII, and *Henry* of *Virnberg* Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, with *John* King of *Bohemia*, Son to the ſame Emperor *Rodolphus*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria* his Brother, *Volmar* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, *Rodolphus* Son to *Albert* II, Duke of *Saxony*, and *Eric* Son to *John* III, Duke of Lower *Saxony*, arriv'd at *Frankfort* on the *Mein*, in the beginning of *October*; but when they came to deliberate upon the Choice of an Emperor, the Electors were divided. Thoſe of *Mentz*, *Treves*, *Bohemia*, and *Brandenbourg* declared publickly for *Lewis* Duke of *Bavaria*, who was then in the very City of *Frankfort*, and the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, the Count Palatine, and Duke of *Saxony*, for *Frederick* Duke of *Auſtria*, whoſe Quarters were at *Saxenhauſen*, on the other ſide of the River. Hereupon *Lewis* ſet out immediately for *Aix la Chapelle*, where he was crown'd by the Archbiſhop

ſhop of *Mentz*; the reſt of the Electors not being able to go there, continued at *Bon*, where the Elector of *Cologn* crown'd Duke *Frederick*: Thus *John* King of *Bavaria* was excluded from the Imperial Crown; but we ſhall ſoon ſee it upon the Head of his Son *Charles* IV. LEWIS V. and FREDERICK III.

THE two Emperors being thus crown'd, us'd their utmoſt Endeavours to gain the Imperial Cities, and procure themſelves all the Advantage they could poſſibly to the Prejudice of each other. This Diſpute, which had almoſt caus'd the total Ruin of all the States of the Empire, laſted till *Michaelmas* Day 1322, when the Emperors came to a general Battle near *Muldorf*, with each of them an Army of 30,000 Men; for before that they contented themſelves with harraſſing each other, without coming to any deciſive Engagement, but only ruining the Country by their Quarters. *The Diſpute of the Emperors cauſes the Ruin of the Empire.* 1315. 1318. 1320.

THEY fought with great Obſtinacy, and when *Frederick* thought he had gain'd the Victory, having put his Enemies to Flight, an experienced Captain of *Lewis*'s Party, nam'd *Scupperman*, rally'd the Fugitives ſo readily, and lead them on ſo briskly to the Charge, that it appear'd that their Flight was but a Feint, the better to take their Advantage: This Stratagem gain'd *Lewis* the Battle. The firſt Priſoner that was brought him, was Duke *Henry*, *Frederick*'s Brother, wounded to Death; then the Burgrave of *Nuremberg* preſented him the Emperor *Frederick* himſelf, who after having fought with ſurprizing Valour, and kill'd fifty Men with his own Hand, had ſurrender'd himſelf to him, finding himſelf abandon'd by all his Men. The Emperor *Lewis*, ſeeing himſelf Maſter of *Frederick*'s Perſon, immediately gave Orders to his Troops to give over the Purſuit of their 1322. *The two Emperors come to a Battle, where Frederick is taken Priſoner.*

Enemies, and ſecured his Priſoner in the Caſtle of *Tranſvirz*, where he ſtaid three Years.

LEWIS *alone.*

LEWIS V. MOST of the Princes of the Empire who had eſpous'd *Frederick*'s Party, ſeeing it entirely ruin'd by this compleat Defeat, and the Impriſonment of their Leader, reconcil'd themſelves to *Lewis*, and acknowledg'd him for the lawful Emperor; and they who made a Difficulty of ſubmitting to him were oblig'd to it by Force. But his Reſentment appear'd more manifeſtly againſt *Rodolphus* Count Palatine his Brother, who had favoured *Frederick*'s Election, and ſtill upheld his Party; for he drove him out of his Dominions, and conſtrain'd him to retire into *England* with his Family, where he died in extream Poverty. But his Children were recall'd after his Death, and *Lewis* reſtor'd them to their paternal Eſtate, but nevertheleſs he made the Electoral Dignity alternative between them and himſelf, on Condition however that they ſhould enjoy it firſt.

BY the Conſent of the Princes and States of the Empire, he alſo appropriated to his Family the Marquiſate of *Brandenbourg*, vacant by the Death of *Wolmar* II, and *John* IV his Brother, who died a few Days after him, and was the laſt of the Marquiſſes of *Brandenbourg*, of the Poſterity of *Otho* I, Count of *Anhalt*. Inſomuch that, ſeeing he had nothing to apprehend from *Germany*, he no longer put himſelf in Pain about pacifying Pope *John* XXII, who was his declar'd Enemy, and had us'd his utmoſt Endeavours to render his Election void.

THIS

THIS Pontif, however, did not ceaſe traverſing him all that lay in his Power, being, beſides his own Inclination thereto, ſtrongly ſollicited to it by the Princes *Leopold*, *Otho*, and *Albert*, Dukes of *Auſtria*, *Frederick*'s Brothers, who left no Stone unturn'd to dethrone *Lewis*. His Holineſs was not wanting herein, but, to diſpoſe Things for that Purpoſe, order'd a Bull to be drawn up, whereby he declared that the Imperial Dignity had been a Fief of the Holy See, from the Time that the *Roman* Empire had been transferr'd from the *Greeks* to the *Romans*, in the Perſon of *Charlemagne*. LEWIS. V.

TO prove this, he alledg'd this Reaſon, that from that Time it was ordain'd, that the Election of an Emperor ſhould not be valid till it had been approv'd of, and confirm'd by the Pope, who was the Father or Prince of all *Chriſtendom*; and that the Prince elected ſhould not aſſume the Title of Emperor till his Election had been ſo ratify'd. He added, that the Empire being vacant by Death, or otherwiſe, the Pope alone was to take Care of it, and have the Adminiſtration of Affairs during the *Interregnum*, and even during the Conteſt of the two Competitors, neither of them being able to call themſelves Emperor till that Title ſhould be adjudg'd them by his Holineſs, and they had taken the Oath of Allegiance to him, as Vicar or Lieutenant to him who is Emperor of Heaven and Earth: Farther, that as it belongs to the Soul and Underſtanding to command and govern, and to the Body to ſubmit to their Orders and obey, ſo in *Chriſtendom* frail and periſhable Things ought to be ſubject to thoſe that are Celeſtial and Eternal, the Profane to the Sacred, and the Corporeal to the Spiritual: And that this is accompliſh'd when the Pope, by his

LEWIS V. own Authority, acts in both Capacities, when the Church governs, and when the Empire and all its Powers were ſubject, and humbled themſelves to its Laws.

HENCE he concluded, that ſince the Princes of *Germany* were divided after the Death of *Henry* VII, and had elected two Princes, both of whom pretended to the Crown, it was his Right to adjudge it to one of the Competitors, and govern the Empire in the interim. Wherefore, as *Lewis* had incroach'd upon his Authority, he commanded him, by Virtue of the Power given him by Heaven, to quit the Imperial Dignity, lay aſide all the Functions of an Emperor, and prohibited him from ever more pretending to it without the Pope's expreſs Permiſſion and Command; enjoining moreover all Patriarchs, Biſhops, Prieſts, Lords, and Communities, to forſake him, and refuſe him any Obedience.

THE Emperor ſeeing this Bull, ſummon'd an Aſſembly of all the moſt learned Perſons in *Germany*, whether Eccleſiaſticks, Doctors of the Civil Law, or Councellors, to examine it, and deliver their Thoughts thereupon. They unanimouſly anſwer'd, that it was unjuſt, unreaſonable, contrary to the Chriſtian Religion, and that he ought to appeal to a general Council. *Lewis* comply'd with this Opinion, and having made his Proteſtations againſt the Bull, and anſwer'd it Article by Article, reproaching the Pope that he was himſelf a Favourer of Hereſy, ſince he would aboliſh the Sovereign Authority of Princes, which was eſtabliſh'd by GOD himſelf, he notify'd his Appeal with all the Formalities requiſite in the like Caſes. But the Pope was ſo offended thereat, that he immediately proceeded to his Excommunication.

THIS

LEWIS V.

THIS News coming to the Ears of the Princes and States of the Empire, oblig'd them to meet at *Ratisbon*, where 'twas resolv'd to beg the Emperor to give Orders that the Imperial Dignity should not be trod under Foot, and the *German* Liberty be thus reduc'd to Slavery. 'Twas also determin'd there, that the Pope's Procedure should be held as abusive and null, and that they, who should have regard to those Bulls, should be punish'd as Disturbers of the publick Tranquillity, and Enemies of the Empire. Hereupon his Holiness, finding that the Pretence he had made use of for the Excommunication of *Lewis* shock'd all the *German* Princes, thought it proper to have recourse to another: Wherefore he declared him a Heretick, and a Favourer of Hereticks, and issued out the Excommunication against him on this Account, after which he gave Orders to *Leopold* Duke of *Austria*, *Frederick*'s Brother, to assemble some Princes and Noblemen to execute the Sentence. The Archbishop of *Mentz* oppos'd this, but at the same Time he desired the Emperor to consider that *Germany* had never been so well united but the Popes had found means to disturb its Repose by their Artifices; and that he could not defend himself against them any Ways better than by agreeing with his Enemies, especially the Princes of *Austria*.

HEREUPON *Lewis* follow'd the Archbishop's Advice, and causing such Proposals of Peace to be made to *Frederick*, as he was willing to consent to, it was agreed between them that he should be set at Liberty, on Condition he would renounce his Pretensions to the Imperial Dignity during *Lewis*'s Life. This Treaty was punctually executed, and the Reconciliation of the two Princes was concluded at *Mourpach*,

LEWIS V. where they communicated together, and *Frederick*, to give a certain Proof of the Sincerity of his Intentions, promis'd *Lewis*, by an authentick Deed, that none of the Houſe of *Auſtria* ſhould ever pretend to the Imperial Crown, when they knew any of the *Bavarian* Family aſpired to it.

THIS Peace gave *Lewis* Leiſure to think of the Affairs of *Italy*, which he reſolv'd to apply himſelf to in good Earneſt, with a View not only of cauſing himſelf to be crown'd at *Rome*, but to ſtrengthen the *Gibelins* Party againſt the Pope, and the King of *Naples*, who had ſent a conſiderable Army, compos'd almoſt wholly of *French* and *Gaſcons*, to the Relief of the City of *Florence*, then beſieg'd by *Caſtruccio*, in the Emperor's Name. The *Gibelins* had valued the Thunder of his Holineſs no more than *Lewis*; it had only animated them the more to maintain their own Party, and ruin that of *John*, ſupported by the *Guelphs*, and King *Robert* their Head. Beſides, the *Romans* had driven the Pope's Creatures from the City, and ſent boldly to tell him to come and reſide at *Rome*, threatning otherwiſe to ſet their Affairs in Order themſelves; and hearing that he had no Intention to ſatisfy them, they reſolv'd to preſs the Emperor to haſten with all ſpeed into *Italy*, and no longer defer coming and being crown'd at *Rome*.

Lewis reſolves upon his Expedition into Italy, *and ſets out.* 1327.

HEREUPON *Lewis*, ſeeing it a proper Juncture to undertake the Expedition, ſummon'd a Diet at *Spires* in 1326, where, upon the Remonſtrances he made of the general Situation of Affairs, the Princes and other States granted him both Troops and Money for his *Italian* Expedition. He ſet out then accordingly, and in the beginning of the Year 1327 arriv'd at *Trent*, where the Heads of his Party, the Deputies

ties of Cities, and ſuch as were Diſaffected to the Pope reſorted to him, to receive him as the Deliverer they had ſo long deſired and expected. Being arrived at *Milan*, with the Empreſs his Conſort, he was there crown'd King of *Italy*; then advancing the next Year towards the City of *Rome*, the Governor and Senators came out to meet him, received him with great Pomp, and crown'd him at St. *Peter*'s Church, with the Imperial Diadem, in Preſence of the Empreſs, with the uſual Ceremonies, and univerſal Applauſe of the Noblemen and People. LEWIS V. Jan. *ſeventeen* 1328.

THE Emperor ſtay'd at *Rome* nine Months; during which he regulated all Things, and reſtor'd Peace to *Italy*; in the mean while the Pope, for his Part, again publiſh'd his Bulls of Excommunication and Depoſition againſt him, and would in no ways hear of an Agreement, unleſs *Lewis* would reſign the Sovereign Authority, and, as a private Man, ſubmit to whatever Sentence it ſhould pleaſe him to pronounce, with regard to his Election; In ſhort, he treated him ſo injuriouſly, that, loſing all Patience, it oblig'd him to reſolve on proceeding to the Choice of another Pope.

To prepare the Way for this Election, he call'd together a numerous Aſſembly at *Rome*, on the fourteenth of *April*, where he depos'd *John*, on Pretence of his being a Heretick, and having deſerted his Church, prohibiting all the Subjects of the Empire to acknowledge him as Pope. The twenty third of the ſame Month he made a Law, enjoining all Biſhops, and his Holineſs expreſsly by Name, not to be abſent from their Sees longer than three Months, nor above two Days Journey, without the Conſent of their reſpective Chapters; ordering alſo, that, in Caſe they had been thrice ſummon'd home, and

LEWIS V. did not obey, they ſhould no longer be acknowledg'd as Biſhops, but that they ſhould proceed to a new Election, in the ſame manner as in Caſe of Demiſe. And on the twenty-eighth of *April*, according to a Law made the fourteenth, whereby he condemn'd all declared Hereticks to Death, he paſs'd Sentence of Death againſt *John de Cahors* ('twas thus he call'd Pope *John* XXII) as being convicted of manifeſt Hereſy, and of high Treaſon, for having incroach'd upon the Rights of the Empire, turning out the Deputies eſtabliſh'd by the Emperor, and ſupplying their Places with others, by his own proper Authority.

He creates another Pope, in John's Abſence.

LEWIS regarding theſe Steps but as the Preludes to his Vengeance, aſſembled all the moſt conſiderable Perſons, either in his Court, or *Rome*, and, cauſing a Cordelier, call'd Father *Peter de Corvaria*, to come near him, placed him on his left Hand, in a Chair ſomething lower than his own, where, asking the Aſſembly thrice if they would chooſe this Father *Peter* Pope, and they anſwering, *Yes*, he inveſted him with the Papacy, by putting a Ring on his Finger, and a Cope over his Shoulders. Then placing him on his right Hand, in a pontifical Chair, he ſaluted him Pontif, by the Name of *Nicolas* V, took him by the Hand, and led him into St. *Peter*'s Church, where the new Pope celebrated Maſs, and gave the Papal Benediction to the People. Some Days after, *Lewis*, to give his Holineſs more Authority, was again crown'd by his Hand, the Solemnity being perform'd on *Whit-Sunday*.

THE Emperor alſo reſolv'd to recover the Imperial Rights and Territories, which *Robert* King of *Naples* and *Apulia* had uſurp'd by *John*'s Order; but having given that Prince Time to put

put himſelf in a Poſture of Defence, he was oblig'd to change his Deſign. Wherefore, eſtabliſhing the beſt Order he could in the City of *Rome*, partly by the Conſent of the Inhabitants, on the Hopes he gave them to return and reſide there aſſoon as he had regulated Affairs in *Germany*, he went to paſs ſome Months at *Piſa*, where the new Pontif follow'd him, and *Lewis* renew'd the Sentence pronounced againſt Pope *John*.

1329. *Returns to* Germany.

THIS done, he ſet out on his Way towards *Germany*, where he arriv'd in the End of the Year 1329, and found ſo much Buſineſs upon his Hands, that he could think no more of *Rome*. His Enemies, who cut out this Work for him, were not ignorant thereof; and the *Romans* themſelves ſeeing he did not return, whatever Intreaties they made, chang'd their Inclinations on a ſudden, recall'd the Cardinal Legate, and the *Guelphs*, and put themſelves under *John*'s Government, without any farther Reflexion. *Nicholas*, on the other hand, finding himſelf forſaken, took a Reſolution to retire from *Piſa*, go to *Avignon*, and ſubmit himſelf to the Pope's Diſcretion; whereupon his Holineſs gave him his Palace for his Priſon, where *Nicholas* ended his Life three Years after.

The Romans *change their Minds, and the Anti-Pope is reconcil'd to the Pope.*

1334. *Pope* John *dies, War between the King of* Bohemia *and the Emperor, who gain a Victory over him.*

JOHN XXII did not long ſurvive him, for he died the Year following, on the fourth of *December* 1334, and was ſucceeded by *Bennet* XII. But *John*'s Spirit ſtill ſubſiſted in the Factions he had fomented againſt the Emperor; for *John* King of *Bohemia*, elate with the Hopes given him by *France* and *Rome*, of ſetting the Imperial Crown on the Head of his Son *Charles* of *Luxembourg*, had ſtrengthen'd himſelf with the Alliance of the Kings of *Hungary* and *Poland*. He had alſo levy'd a conſiderable Army, with Deſign

LEWIS V. Deſign to carry the War into the Heart of *Bavaria*; but *Lewis* putting himſelf in a Condition to march againſt him, harraſs'd him in ſuch a manner, that he was oblig'd to come to a general Battle. The Fight was bloody and obſtinate for a long Time; but at laſt the *Bohemians* were utterly put to the Rout, with all their Auxiliaries; however, this Defeat neither diſheartned them, nor daſh'd the Hopes of their King, who depended upon the Friendſhip and Aſſiſtance of the *French*. Hereupon he concerted new Meaſures with the King of *France*, unto whom he diſpatch'd his Son *Charles* on this Account; and the Emperor, to break them, bethought himſelf of making a League, as he accordingly found Means to do, with *Edward* King of *England*, againſt the *French*.

1337. *The States defend the Rights of the Empire againſt the Pope's Pretentions.*

NEVERTHELESS, he left no Stone unturn'd to regain the Affection of the Holy See, in the Perſon of *Bennet*; but that Pontif reſolving not to hear of any Reconciliation, for fear of diſobliging the King of *France*, both the Eccleſiaſtical and Secular Princes of the Empire met together, declared the Empire independent of the Pope, and *Lewis* of *Bavaria* lawful Emperor, without having any Occaſion for either the Conſent, Approbation, or Confirmation of the Holy See. This done, they ſent to deſire his Holineſs to annul the Sentences of his Predeceſſor, and declared to him that in Caſe of Failure, they would provide againſt them another Way.

THE Pope refuſing to give the States of *Germany* this Satisfaction, the Emperor ſummon'd a Diet at *Frankfort* the eighth of *Auguſt* 1338, where that celebrated Conſtitution was made, in Form of Law, whereby the Independence of the Empire was eſtabliſh'd to Perpetuity.

THE

THE Year following, *Lewis*, puſhing his Point, took off the Interdict ſent by *John* XXII by his own Authority; driving out of the Churches ſuch as were refractory, which Severity at laſt made all obedient. But whilſt the Emperor was thus employ'd in abridging the Pope's Temporal Authority in *Germany*, his own went to ruin in *Italy*, and all was at Rack and Manger, when *Bennet* happen'd to dye at *Avignon*, the twenty fifth of *April* 1342, and *Clement* VI, a *Frenchman* by Nation, and Archbiſhop of *Rouen*, was choſen in his Stead. This new Pontif, by his Bulls of the twelfth of *April* 1343 renew'd all the Sentences of Excommunication iſſued by *John* XXII, and *Bennet* XII againſt the Emperor, and even ſtrove to excite all *Italy* againſt him.

LEWIS V.

Lewis takes off the Pope's Interdict, and re-eſtabliſhes Affairs by his own Reſolution. 1342.

Freſh Troubles between the Pope and the Emperor. 1343.

HEREUPON *Lewis*, whom one may truly call a Martyr to the *Independency*, as *Henry* V had been to the *Inveſtitures*, reſolving to manifeſt his Innocence to all *Europe*, ſought the Pope's Friendſhip, even during the height of his Perſecution; and accordingly, in the Year 1344, ſent a famous Embaſſy to treat of his Reconciliation. But the Conditions preſcrib'd the Ambaſſadors were ſo very unreaſonable, that they could proceed no farther therein; whereupon they return'd to *Germany* to make their Report thereof. 1344.

THE Emperor, having ſeen theſe Articles, ſhew'd himſelf a better Politician than the Pope, who had given them in Writing; for, ſending Copies thereof to all the States of the Empire, they caus'd ſuch a general Indignation in all the States of the Empire, and at the ſame Time gain'd *Lewis* ſo much Favour, that all the Princes and States aſſembling at *Frankfort* in *September* 1345, the Articles being read publickly 1345.

LEWIS V. lickly, were rejected, as an Outrage committed againſt the Honour of the Empire; and a ſecond Embaſſy was order'd to be ſent to his Holineſs, in the Name of all the States, to beg him to retract theſe Articles, or that otherwiſe they would themſelves take ſuch Meaſures as they thought proper on that Account.

THE Pope, more enraged than ever, that they did not ſubſcribe implicitly to his Deſires, thunder'd out freſh Excommunications the Year after, againſt *Lewis* and his Adherents, without regarding the Requeſt made to him from that Prince in particular, to moderate thoſe Articles. He even puſh'd the Matter farther, being himſelf ſpurr'd on by *Philip* of *Valois* King of *France*, who, altho' he had made Peace with the Emperor, was not diſpleas'd at finding him Employment: For he tamper'd with as many Princes as he could, to ſecure himſelf of their Suffrages, and prevail on them to proceed to the Election of another Emperor.

1346.

Charles of Luxembourg elected by the Pope's Intrigues.

AS all theſe good Offices were in Favour of *Charles* of *Luxembourg*, Son to *John* King of *Bohemia*, who was one of the moſt conſiderable Voices in the Electoral College, and they were aſſured of that of *Baldwin* Archbiſhop of *Treves*, Uncle to the ſaid King of *Bohemia*, they only endeavour'd to gain the other Votes. *Clement* had excommunicated *Henry* of *Wernebourg*, Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, becauſe he was in the Emperor's Intereſt; wherefore he was at no Trouble in having Count *Gerlac* of *Naſſau*, Canon of *Mentz*, at his Devotion, whom he had promoted to that Archbiſhoprick.

THE Suffrage of *Walderan* of *Juliers*, Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, was bought for 8,000 Marks in Silver, and *Rodolphus* Duke of *Saxony* had 2,000 given him for his. Theſe were the Princes

ces, who, meeting at *Rentz*, near *Coblentz*, elected *Charles* of *Luxembourg*, Marquis of *Moravia*, King of the *Romans*, who, not having it in his Power to be crown'd at *Cologn*, becauſe that City would acknowledge no other Emperor but *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, was crown'd at *Bon* in the ſame Year by the new Archbiſhop of *Mentz*. LEWIS V.

THE other Princes and States of the Empire continued firm and faithful to *Lewis*, annull'd this Election, and united themſelves yet more ſtrongly to that Prince; neither did his good Fortune ſtop there; for he had the Happineſs to hear that his Son *Lewis*, Marquis of *Luxembourg*, had attack'd *Charles* the new King of the *Romans* ſome Time after in *Tirol*, and defeated him. Thus he reign'd to the End of his Life, belov'd and eſteem'd by all his Subjects. *The other Princes continue faithful to the old Emperor, who gains a Victory over the new One.*

WHAT made him the more belov'd, was, that he did not frequent the Imperial Cities, to have his Court maintain'd at their Expence, as was uſually done by his Predeceſſors; but contented himſelf with going thither at the Time of holding Diets, and when the Neceſſity of his Affairs requir'd it. He took great Pleaſure in his own Duchy of *Bavaria*, and diverted himſelf more in hunting than in any other Exerciſe, but it coſt him his Life; for on the 11th of *October*, the Year following, being in purſuit of a Bear, he fell from his Horſe, being ſeiz'd, as was believ'd, with an Appoplexy, and receiv'd ſuch a Contuſion, that he died, having but juſt Time to recommend himſelf to the Divine Mercy, and was buried at *Munich*.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXVII.

CHARLES *the Fourth.*

His Birth and Education.

THIS Prince, Son to *John* King of *Bohemia*, Count of *Luxembourg*, and Grandſon to *Henry* VII, was born at *Prague* the fourteenth of *May* 1316, and was nam'd *Wenceſlaus* at his Baptiſm; but his Father ſending him into *France*, in 1323, to King *Charles* the *Fair*, who was married to *Mary* of *Luxembourg* his Siſter, and Aunt to *Wenceſlaus*, the King and Queen of *France*, who were the more fond and tender of him, as they had no Children themſelves, caus'd him to be call'd *Charles*, on his receiving Confirmation, which Name he retain'd. They alſo provided him excellent Tutors, under whom he learn'd the *Latin*, *French*, and *Italian*, beſides the *German* and *Bohemian* Tongues, which were natural to him.

AT the Age of ſeventeen, his Father inveſted him with the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, which he govern'd with ſo much Reputation, that he was advanced to the Throne of *Bohemia* after his Father's Death with little Difficulty; and the leſs, in that the Year before he, by the Pope's Perſuaſion, was thought worthy of being choſen King of the *Romans* by ſome Electors and Princes aſſembled at *Rentz* on the *Rhine*.

AFTER

CHARLES IV.

AFTER his Father's Deceaſe, he prepar'd immediately to renew the War, and having rais'd a conſiderable Army, took the Rout towards *Bavaria*, to take his Revenge of the Emperor *Lewis*; but hearing, on his March, of that Emperor's Death, he ſaid immediately with a Sigh, *Praiſe be to* GOD, *who, in the Wonders of his Providence, has ſaved me the Effuſion of Chriſtian Blood, and remov'd the Occaſion of taking revenge of my Enemies.*

Is acknowledg'd by the Emperor.

UPON this News, he directed his March towards the Territories of the Empire, and caus'd himſelf to be acknowledg'd King and Emperor of the *Romans*, by the Cities of *Ratisbon*, *Nuremberg*, and twenty four other Imperial Cities on the *Rhine*. After this he return'd to *Prague*, the Capital of his Kingdom of *Bohemia*, where, in the following Year 1348, he began to build the new City of *Prague*. Aſſoon as he was retir'd into *Bohemia*, the Electors (*viz.*) *Henry* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Robert* Count Palatine, *Lewis* Marquiſs of *Brandenbourg*, and *Eric* Duke of *Saxony*, who did not aſſiſt at his Election, met together, and choſe *Edward* King of *England* Emperor; but he not caring to accept of that Dignity, thank'd the Electors, and deſired to be excus'd; which obliging them to a new Choice, they nam'd *Frederick* Landgrave of *Thuringia*, who, being afflicted with the Gout, was eaſily perſuaded by *Charles* to renounce the Imperial Dignity, in Conſideration of 10,000 Marks in Silver.

1348.

Some States chooſe other Emperors, and laſtly Gunther *of* Schwartzembourg.

HOWEVER, theſe Electors, not being at all diſhearten'd, at laſt elected *Gunther* Count of *Schwartzembourg*, a brave Nobleman, and a Perſon of Merit: He accepted of the Honour, on Condition that the Electors ſhould conduct him to *Frankfort*, and cauſe him to be there publickly

1349.

CHARLES IV.

lickly proclaim'd Emperor, which they ſolemnly promis'd. He exacted this of them, becauſe he had reaſon to apprehend that the Magiſtrates and Burghers of that City would take Advantage of an antient Privilege, which was to refuſe Entrance to any King of the *Romans*, or Emperor, who ſhould be choſen but by one Part of the Electors, eſpecially whenever there was another nam'd by a contrary Party, or, when the Electors being divided among themſelves, one Party had nam'd one, and the other Party another. For in theſe Caſes the City would not receive either, till one of them had decided the Quarrel with his Competitor by Force of Arms; and 'twas not till then that the Inhabitants would open their Gates to the Conqueror.

ACCORDINGLY the Electors, in Performance of their Promiſe, aſſiſted Count *Gunther* to raiſe an Army ſufficient to force the City to open its Gates, in Caſe of a Refuſal; which happening, as was foreſeen by the Count, he beſieg'd it, and at the End of two Months the Citizens thought themſelves oblig'd to receive him; becauſe the Emperor *Charles* had not attempted to raiſe the Siege, which was a Sign he confeſs'd himſelf vanquiſh'd.

Gunther *poiſoned.*

DURING the Count's Stay at *Frankfort*, he was indiſpos'd, and, upon taking a Purge wherein Poiſon had been mix'd, loſt the Uſe of his Limbs; hereupon he was ſo earneſtly ſollicited, during his Sickneſs, to give up his Election, in Conſideration of 22,000 Marks of Silver, that he conſented, and dying a Month after, was honourably buried by the Emperor *Charles*, who was preſent.

THIS done, he chaſtized the City of *Frankfort*, for having received *Gunther*, and as a Puniſhment

Puniſhment, depriv'd her of her Privileges and her Fair, and transferr'd it to *Mentz*, without having any Regard to her pretended Rights. However, ſome Time afterwards he reſtor'd her to the ſame Rights and Privileges, as likewiſe to her Fair, in Conſideration of a Fine of 20,000 Marks in Silver. However, aſſoon as he ſaw himſelf deliver'd from his Competitors, to leave no Room to doubt of the Validity of his Election, he gain'd over the Electors who had not aſſiſted thereat, inſomuch that it was confirm'd by them, and he was crown'd, not at *Aix*, on Account of the Plague that then raged there, but in another City, reſolving to be crown'd at *Rome* aſſoon as he could undertake that Expedition.

1354. Charles *crown'd in* Germany.

THE Year following, the Affairs of *Germany* permitting him to paſs the *Alps*, he ſet out on his March, and arriving fortunately at *Rome*, was there received with the utmoſt Magnificence, by the Legates, Senators, the Pope's Deputies, and the *Roman* Clergy and People, as had been agreed between him and *Innocent* VI, after which he was there crown'd on *Eaſter-Day*, with his Empreſs *Anne* Princeſs Palatine, by the ſame Legates. This Ceremony being perform'd, he bent his Thoughts wholly upon returning to *Germany*, according to the ſame Agreement between the Pope and him.

1355. *Crown'd alſo at* Rome.

ON his Return, he found the Empire full of Troubles, which proceeded from the Princes having an Opinion of their being upon an Equality with each other. As 'twas obſerv'd that this Pretenſion to Equality had taken its Riſe from the Election of the Emperors, the Forms whereof had never been digeſted into Writing, and the Number of Electors being neither fix'd, nor appropriated to any certain Princes, more

He endeavours to root out the Troubles of the Empire.

CHARLES IV. than the reſt, inſomuch that the principal States call'd themſelves Electors, becauſe they had all a Right to elect, the Emperor apply'd himſelf wholly to ſettle Matters ſo well, that they ſhould no more fall into the like Confuſion on that Account.

1356. *Inſtitution and Publication of the Golden Bull.* HEREUPON he called a Diet at *Nuremberg*, in *January* 1356, where the Electors, with other Princes, Counts, Lords, and Deputies of the *Hans* Towns, aſſembled in great Number. Herein 'twas not only reſolv'd to reduce, into the Form of Conſtitutions, ſeveral Cuſtoms which had never yet been digeſted, or drawn up in Writing, and were increas'd by divers wholeſome Regulations that were uſeful, and conducive to the Publick Good, but they alſo made the famous Edict call'd, the *Golden Bull*, (which was thus term'd on Account of its golden Seal, then nam'd a Bull) concerning the Form and Ceremony of electing Emperors, the Number of Electors, their Functions, Rights, Privileges, and all that had Relation to the general Government of the Empire.

OF thirty Articles whereof it conſiſted, but three and twenty were then paſs'd, which the Emperor, by the Conſent of all the Princes and States of the Empire then preſent, cauſed to be read and publiſh'd in his Preſence, as he ſat on his Throne, with the Crown on his Head, and veſted with all the other Imperial Ornaments. Then, towards the latter End of the Year, he held another Diet at *Metz*, wherein he added the other ſeven Articles, which 25 *December* were alſo publiſhed in Preſence of the ſame Electors, Princes, and States of the Empire, the Cardinal of *Alba*, and *Charles* the eldeſt Son of *France*, Duke of *Normandy* and Dauphin of *Viennois* his Nephew. And becauſe this is a pragma

pragmatical Sanction, which is obſerv'd to this Day, we have inſerted it at the End of this Work, to ſerve for a more particular Inſtruction.

CHARLES then having obſerv'd all the Formalities neceſſary for this Edict, to make it a fundamental Law of the Empire, began to have it put in Execution, by the Service he deſired of the Electors, and others, in a magnificent Entertainment which he made the next Day.

THE Emperor and Empreſs, veſted in their Imperial Ornaments, having firſt heard a ſolemn Maſs, accompany'd by all the Prelates, and Princes, went to the Place where the Entertainment was prepar'd for them. This was in the Middle of the Market-Place, where the Table was ſpread upon an Aſcent, rais'd on Steps for that Purpoſe. Aſſoon as their Imperial Majeſties were placed, the three Eccleſiaſtical Electors (*viz.*) *Lewis* Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, *Connon* Archbiſhop of *Treves*, and *Frederick* Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, came on Horſeback as Arch-Chancellors of the Empire (the firſt being Arch-Chancellor of *Germany*, the ſecond of the *Gauls*, and the third of *Italy*) with each of them a Seal hanging about their Necks, and a Letter in their right Hands. After them came alſo the four Secular Electors on Horſeback, firſt *Wenceſlaus* Duke of *Saxony*, carrying in his right Hand a Silver Peck full of Oats, as Arch-Marſhall of the Empire, and as 'twas likewiſe his Office to place the Princes, each of them according to their Rank, he rang'd his Colleagues in their reſpective Places. Next *Otho* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, alighting from his Horſe, held the Water, for the Emperor and Empreſs to waſh, in a gold Baſon and Ewer; then *Robert* the *Red*, Count Palatine, diſmounting, carry'd up the

CHARLES IV.

golden Diſhes to the Imperial Table; after him *Wenceſlaus* Duke of *Luxembourg* and *Brabant*, the Emperor's Nephew, repreſenting his Imperial Majeſty as King of *Bohemia*, quitting his Horſe, ſet a golden Flaggon of Wine on the corner of the Imperial Table, and preſented Wine to the Emperor in a golden Cup. After the Electors rode the Marquis of *Miſnia*, and the Count of *Schwartzembourg*, both great Huntſmen, blowing the Horn, follow'd by their Huntſmen, and their Hounds, and kill'd a great Stag, and a large wild Boar before the Emperor. After Dinner his Imperial Majeſty, having preſented the Electors, and Princes, with Gifts of great Value, diſmiſs'd them, and broke up the Diet.

1357. Charles *increaſes his patrimonial Dominions.*

THIS done, *Charles*, returning into *Bohemia*, bent all his Thoughts upon accumulating Treaſure, and extending the Frontiers of his hereditary Kingdom, which he look'd upon as his only real Patrimony, and whereunto he had already added *Sileſia*, a Fief of *Poland*, and *Luſatia* a Fief of the Empire. Not only ſo, but, to enrich himſelf yet more, he ſold new Privileges to divers Cities, and alſo increas'd the Rights and Authority of other States, in Conſideration of a Sum of Money; in ſhort, he neglected no Opportunity, but even prevented thoſe who offer'd to give, ſell, mortgage, or alienate the Imperial Territories for his Profit, as if he had held an Intelligence with Foreign Princes to weaken it.

Sells Privileges to the Cities and other States.

NOT but he was otherwiſe a very good Prince; for altho' the *Germans* had no great Reaſon to praiſe him, becauſe he did not perform any thing to which he was oblig'd for the Dignity of the Empire, yet they could not deny but he had very uncommon Qualities

Amongſt

Amongſt the reſt, he was a perfect Maſter of ſeveral Languages, and a great Admirer of Learning, and Men of Letters. Of this he gave an exemplary Proof, in Founding the Univerſity of *Prague* in 1361, upon the ſame Model as that of *Paris*, having taken Copies of the Statutes from thence, during the Time of his ſtudying there. He expreſs'd a great Averſion to Ambition, and the Pomp and Pride of Churchmen, which was exceſſive at that Time; and when the Biſhops did not endeavour, as much as lay in their Power, to reſtrain this Licence, he reprimanded them publickly, and obliged them to it. CHARLES IV. 1361.

HE was very careful of the Adminiſtration of Juſtice, aſſiſting often himſelf at the Imperial Tribunal, and doing Juſtice himſelf to every one; But, on the other hand, he was inexcuſably negligent with Reſpect to the Affairs of *Italy*, where all things were in the laſt Confuſion. He had ſold the Dependencies of *Lombardy*, with the State of *Milan*, to Duke *Sforza*, in Conſideration of a large Sum of Money; and, as his own private Intereſt was not concern'd therein, had taken no Care about recovering the Cities of *Padua*, *Verona*, *Vicenza*, nor the other Demeſnes of the Empire, with their reſpective Juriſdictions, the Poſſeſſion whereof the *Venetians* had by degrees appropriated to themſelves, and enjoy'd them peaceably. However, as 'twas repreſented to him, that it was his Intereſt not to ſuffer all the Imperial Demeſnes and Rights in *Italy* to be uſurp'd, without oppoſing it in ſome Manner, he reſolv'd to go to *Avignon*, to make a League with *Urban* V, and ſome other Princes of *Italy*, againſt *Barnaby* Tyrant of *Milan*, and ome others.

CHARLES IV.

1365.

HE was receiv'd there very honourably by the Pope, and, during his Stay, Matters were tranſacted between them with many Teſtimonies of Friendſhip, inſomuch that the Emperor aſſiſted in his Imperial Robes at a ſolemn Maſs which the Pope celebrated on *Whit-Sunday*; after which he went to *Arles*, and was there crown'd King of that City, as ſome ſay, by the Archbiſhop, or, according to others, by his Holineſs himſelf. This done, *Charles* return'd to *Avignon*, where the League was concluded between him, the Pope, and divers *Italian* Noblemen, againſt the Uſurpers of the Church's Patrimony, and the Imperial Dominions in *Italy*. And as 'twas reſolved by this Treaty that he ſhould, aſſoon as poſſible, levy a Number of Troops to march againſt theſe Uſurpers, and their Adherents, and reduce them to Reaſon, his Holineſs granted him the Tenths of the Revenues of the *German* Clergy, to enable him to ſupport the Expences of the War.

HOWEVER, he did not undertake this Enterpriſe till three Years after, or thereabouts; ſo little did he regard what concern'd the Empire beyond the *Alps*. To give an Authentick Proof hereof, one need only relate what certain Hiſtorians ſay of him, *(viz.)* that for one ſingle Dinner given him by *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* V the *French* King, at *Ville neuve d'Avignon*, he yielded up the Sovereignty of *Dauphiné* (which had been reſerv'd to the Empire, by the Gift made by *Humbert*, the laſt *Dauphine* of the *Viennois*) to the Crown of *France*.

THIS done, *Charles* return'd to *Bohemia*, where, having ſettled the Affairs of that Kingdom in good Order, and put himſelf in a Condition to march into *Italy*, to ſatisfy the preſſing Intreaties

ties of *Urban* V, who was then at *Rome*, in Compliance with the Treaty ſign'd by them at *Avignon*, he ſet out thither with an Army, and join'd his Holineſs in *October*. Then, having had ſome Conferences together, he enter'd *Lombardy*, and ſeeing that all his Efforts againſt the Viſcounts, and other petty Tyrants, were vain, made a Peace with them, which was confirm'd by the Pope, but not to the Credit of either of them. After this he ſtaid ſome Time in *Etruria*, and having ſqueez'd great Sums of Money from divers Cities, and even *Florence* it ſelf, not to moleſt them, retir'd to *Bohemia*, where he remain'd till 1376, without doing any thing that deſerves Mention; for his whole Buſineſs was to fill his Treaſury, that he might ſecure the Empire to his Son *Wenceſlaus*.

CHARLES IV.

1376.

ACCORDINGLY, the ſame Year, returning into *Germany* for that Purpoſe, he manag'd Matters ſo well, and employ'd his Money to ſuch Advantage, that, in Conſideration of 100,000 Ducats paid to each of the Electors, they elected *Wenceſlaus* King of the *Romans*, tho' then but fifteen Years old. However, that he might not wholly exhauſt his Treaſure, he mortgag'd the Toll on the *Rhine* to ſome of them, which we ſee to this Day in the Hands of the Electors, whoſe Dominions are adjacent to that River, and ſold Cities to others. *Boppart* and *Oberweſel*, were ſold to the Elector of *Treves*; *Kaiſerlauter*, *Oppenheim*, *Obernheim*, and *Ingelheim*, to the Elector Palatine; and ſome others to the Duke of *Auſtria*; which made divers ſay, that he had weaken'd the Empire, and pull'd the Eagle's Feathers.

IN fine, *Charles* IV having caus'd his Son *Wenceſlaus* to be acknowledg'd Emperor in ſome Imperial Cities, return'd to *Prague*, where he

CHARLES IV. 1378. *He dies.*

died the twenty ninth of *November* 1378, after reigning about thirty one Years, from the Deceaſe of *Lewis* IV his Predeceſſor. He was four times married, but had no Children by his two firſt Wives, *(viz.) Blanch* Daughter to *Charles* Count of *Valois*, and Siſter to *Philip* King of *France*, and *Agnes* Daughter to *Rodolphus*, Count Palatine. His third Conſort was *Anne*, Daughter to *Boleſlaus*, Duke of *Swenitz*, by whom he had *Katharine*, Wife to *Rodolphus* IV, Duke of *Auſtria*; and *Wenceſlaus*, who was Emperor after him. His fourth Wife, was *Elizabeth* Daughter to *Boguſlaus* V, Duke of *Stetin*, who was Niece, or Grand-Daughter, to *Caſimir* King of *Poland*; by whom he had firſt *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*, afterwards Emperor; and *John*, Duke of *Gorlis*, with ſeveral Daughters. He died with this Reputation, that he was a good Prince, and a bad Emperor,

CHAP. XXVIII.

WENCESLAUS.

The little Merit of Wenceſlaus *the Remiſneſs of his Government, and his bloody Temper.*

THE Emperor *Wenceſlaus* enter'd upon the Government of the Empire, and the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, at the Age of eighteen; but was endued with ſuch vicious Qualities, both of Body and Mind, that it might be ſaid he could not have had worſe: And if one may be allow'd to found any Prognoſtick of a Man's future Actions by his firſt Eſſays, one might have judg'd by his what was to

to be expected from his Reign. His Cruelty was in a manner foretold, by his cauſing his Mother's Death at his Birth: as was alſo the Filth wherewith he profan'd the Font, by piſſing therein at his Baptiſm: and his Ordure wherewith he profan'd the Altar, when ſat upon it at the Age of two Years, in order to be crown'd King of *Bohemia*; a Preſage of the vile Crimes wherewith he ſully'd his Reign. WENCESLAUS. 1379.

ALL his Actions were but one continued Series of Debaucheries, Cruelty, and Baſeneſs; after his Father's Example, he ſold all the Imperial Rights that remain'd undiſpos'd of in *Germany*; and ranſom'd the Cities and Provinces that had been alienated by the late Emperor, to confirm them in their Privileges. He alſo paſs'd blank Patents, to be fill'd up at the Pleaſure of the Purchaſers; whence the moſt Powerful, Rich, and the greateſt Reprobates, took Occaſion to oppreſs the Weak, the Poor, and the Men of Probity.

THIS they did with ſuch Impunity, that there was neither any Safety for Commerce, or Order, or civil Government in the Empire; this caus'd Troubles, and civil Wars, which arm'd the Cities of *Suabia*, and the *Rhine*, againſt their Neighbouring Princes, the chief whereof were the Count Palatine, the Count of *Wirtemberg*, and the Duke of *Auſtria*. The Electors, and other Princes and States, being weary'd out with all theſe Diſorders, and with ſeeing *Germany* without a Leader, having likewiſe Information of the Alienations of the Imperial Territories, made by *Wenceſlaus*, to raiſe Money for his own Advantage, ſent an Embaſſy to him at *Prague*, in 1383, to deſire him to take up his Reſidence in the Empire. On hearing their Propoſal he made them this Anſwer: *Our dear Ambaſſa-* 1380.

WENCESLAUS. 1383. *The States of the Empire take notice of the Extravagancies of* Wenceſlaus.

Ambaſſadors! All the World knows that we are Emperor; if there be any one in the Empire, who deſires to ſee us, he may come to Bohemia, *and have all manner of Liberty of Acceſs.* This Anſwer ſeem'd ridiculous to the Ambaſſadors; but however they could not obtain any other, tho' nevertheleſs they were very handſomely entertain'd.

THE Electors were very much ſcandaliz'd at the Succeſs of this Embaſſy, and the Contempt *Wenceſlaus* ſhew'd of their Advice, inſomuch that, finding there was nothing to be hop'd from him, they were forc'd themſelves to take Care of the Affairs of the Empire. Moſt of them interpos'd between the Diſputes which ſeveral States had with their Neighbours, and 'twas with great Difficulty they brought them to an Agreement; ſo violent was their Animoſity.

As to *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria*, Son to *Albert* the *Wiſe*, he thought with the Troops he had levy'd, wherewith he had form'd a conſiderable Army, that he was ſtrong enough to reduce the *Suiſs* again under his Government, whence eight Cantons had already withdrawn themſelves. But, venturing to offer them Battle, he loſt both that and his Life, and thereby gave them an Opportunity entirely to ſhake off the Yoke of their Princes, and their Subjection to the Empire, which entic'd the reſt of the Cantons to do the like.

THINGS were in this Poſture in *Germany*, without *Wenceſlaus* giving himſelf any manner of Trouble about them, he continued always in *Bohemia*, where, by the little Care he took of Affairs, or to prevent what might diſturb the publick Tranquillity, he ſuffer'd the * firſt Seeds of *Wickliff*'s Hereſy to be ſown in that

* *Some Notice was taken of this, and the following Reflections on the Dawn of the* Reformation, *in the* Preface.

Kingdom,

Kingdom, which happen'd thro' the Means of a *Bohemian* Gentleman who had ſtudy'd in *England*. This Gentleman had brought over the Books of that Arch-Heretick, and communicated them to ſeveral Perſons, even to the Maſters of the Univerſity at *Prague*, amongſt whom was *John Hus*, who imbib'd the Venom, and afterwards diffus'd the Poiſon every where. WENCESLAUS.

IN the mean while, *Wenceſlaus* plunging himſelf into all Sorts of Debauches, both with Wine and Women, render'd himſelf more and more deſpicable to his Subjects; but at laſt he drew their Hatred on him, by the extraordinary Taxes wherewith he loaded them, and by his Cruelty, which he exercis'd indifferently upon all Sorts of Perſons; to which he was ſo much accuſtom'd, that he made no Scruple of keeping Company with the common Executioner, whom he call'd his Friend, nor of beheading the Magiſtrates of *Prague*, without any Form or Proceſs. 1393.

THE chief Lords of *Bohemia*, finding that his Exceſſes and Cruelties increas'd daily, judg'd it proper to put a Stop to them, and could think of no better Method, than to confine him, according to the Advice of his own Brother, *Sigiſmund*, King of *Hungary*. Hereupon, they put him into a cloſe Priſon, whence he made his Eſcape after four Months, and fled to one of his Fortreſſes; but not mending his Conduct, they retook him, and had him carefully guarded, ſometimes in one Caſtle, and ſometimes in another. Nevertheleſs, he again got away, and regaining Poſſeſſion of the City of *Prague*, by the Means of ſome Noblemen his Friends, he re-aſſum'd his Authority, and maintain'd himſelf therein, on Condition of leading a more regular Life. 1396.

HOWEVER

WENCESLAUS. HOWEVER, this did not oblige him to take more Care of the Affairs of the Empire than before, excepting in what related to his own private Intereſts, or any Thing that could yield him any Profit. As he neglected no Opportunity with reſpect to this Point, he received the Embaſſy very agreeably that was ſent him by *John Galeas*, Count *de Vertus*, Nephew and Succeſſor to that *Barnaby*, the Viſcount, who, as has been ſaid, had got Poſſeſſion of the Duchy of *Milan*, and ſeveral other Cities, as *Piacenza*, *Cremona*, *Pavia*, *Lodi*, *Breſcia*, *Bergamo*, *Vercelli*, *Novarra*, *Tortona*, and others of the *Milaneze*, and *Lombardy*, that were Fiefs of the Empire.

THE Subject of this Embaſſy was, to purchaſe of him the Lordſhip and Regalities of all thoſe Territories, with the Title of Duke of *Milan*, which he ſold him, in Conſideration of a large Sum of Money, without the Conſent of the Electors and Princes of the Empire; which was one of the Cauſes why ſome Time after they reſolv'd in good Earneſt on his Depoſition. For they ſaw that he made it his Study to diſmember the Empire for his own ſordid Intereſt, at a Time when the Schiſm then reigning divided it already but too much, and the *Turks*, taking Advantage thereof, had, on every Occaſion, gain'd ſuch ſignal Advantages over the *Chriſtians*, which were follow'd by the famous Victory won by *Bajazet* in 1396, near *Nicopolis*. But at laſt the Electors, after many Delays, thinking the publick Safety depended on their no longer deferring to chooſe an Emperor capable of re-eſtabliſhing, protecting, and maintaining the Imperial Dignity, met by the Advice of Pope *Boniface* IX, at the Caſtle of *Laenſtein* on the *Rhine*, in the Archbiſhoprick

biſhoprick of *Treves*, declared *Wenceſlaus* incapable of the Empire, and depos'd him. The Sentence of this Depoſition was pronounced and publiſh'd the twentieth of *Auguſt* 1400, with a Revocation of all the Rights, Exemptions, Privileges, and Demeſnes ſold, or mortgag'd by his own particular Authority, without the Conſent of the Princes and States of the Empire. 'Twas then ſaid, that if *Charles* and *Wenceſlaus* had never been Emperors, the Empire had never been reduced to the deplorable Condition wherein it then was, both by the prodigious Preſents the Father had made to aggrandize his Son, and by the Son's ſquandering his Treaſure and Poſſeſſions, to wallow in Sloth and Debauchery. WENCESLAUS 1400.

THE Electors at the ſame Time proceeded to the Choice of a new Emperor, and nam'd *Frederick*, Duke of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenbourg*, an experienc'd and brave Prince; but divers Authors ſay, that the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* caus'd him to be aſſaſſinated by Count *Waldec*, as he was on the Road to *Frankfort*, to take the Imperial Crown: Hereupon, the Electors ſubſtituted *Robert* Count Palatine in his Stead, who was elected on the tenth of *September* the ſame Year.

WENCESLAUS ſeem'd inſenſible on receiving the News of his being depoſed; they even report that he ſaid theſe Words; *We are glad to be diſcharged from the Burthen of the Empire, in Hopes we may apply our ſelves the better to the well governing our Kingdom.* Accordingly, during the nineteen Years he reign'd afterwards in *Bohemia*, his Subjects found his Conduct more reaſonable and prudent than before. One muſt alſo do him this Juſtice to own, that he apply'd himſelf very ſeriouſly to ſuppreſs the Sedition that *John Hus*, Profeſſor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Prague*, had rais'd by his new Tenets,

WENCESLAUS.

Riſe of the Schiſm of John Hus.

Tenets; but he had not the Satisfaction to ſee his Care take much Effect, becauſe he had let this Doctrine take too deep Root. In fine, this poor Prince died of an Apoplexy, in the Year 1419, at the Age of fifty ſeven, after reigning twenty two Years as Emperor, and fifty five as King of *Bohemia*.

CHAP. XXIX.

ROBERT.

He is elected and confirm'd.

THO' *Robert*, or *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, call'd the *Short* and the *Debonair*, had been elected Emperor with the uſual Forms, by all the Electors at his Camp near the *Rhine*, the *Saturday* after *Lady-Day*, and afterwards crown'd and confirm'd by the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, in his Metropolitan Church, the People of *Aix* would not ſuffer him to be crown'd in their Church, on Pretence they were not diſcharg'd from their Oath of Allegiance to *Wenceſlaus*; but, in Reality, out of their Affection to that Prince: Accordingly, they were put to the Ban of the Empire, and miſus'd, till they had done Homage to *Robert*, and taken the Oath to him. The Inhabitants of *Nuremberg* were more fortunate; for they were diſcharg'd from their Oath of Allegiance, in Conſideration of ſome Pieces of *Bacharac* Wine which they preſented to *Wenceſlaus*.

AFTER his Advancement, the new Emperor bent all his Thoughts upon redreſſing the Diſorders

ROBERT.

Diſorders and Diviſions that had ariſen in the Empire, during the Reigns of *Charles* IV, and his Son; as likewiſe, on reclaiming the States alienated by them. With this Intent he ſummon'd a Diet at *Frankfort*, the firſt Year of his Reign, where he deliberated with the Electors, Princes, Lords, and Deputies of Cities, upon the Means to re-eſtabliſh Order, Tranquillity, and Safety in the Empire; whereupon they drew up divers Acts, which were put in Execution.

Robert ſtudies to heal the Breaches made in the Empire by the two former Emperors.

As the Electors, on their pronouncing the Sentence of Depoſition againſt *Wenceſlaus*, had alledg'd, among other Articles, that he had created *John Galeas*, who was but Governor of *Lombardy*, Duke of *Milan*; and that this new Duke, not ſatisfy'd with this Advantage, aim'd at withdrawing theſe Countries from the Imperial Juriſdiction, and at rendring himſelf Maſter of *Florence*, *Mantua*, *Bologna*, with other Cities and Territories, by Force of Arms, with Intent to incorporate them with his Duchy; *Robert* was oblig'd immediately to raiſe an Army, to re-eſtabliſh the Affairs of *Italy* in their priſtine State.

1401. *Paſſes into* Italy, *with Deſign to reduce* Galeas *by force of Arms, but in vain.*

HEREUPON, he advanced, by long Marches, and incamp'd before the City of *Breſcia* in the Duchy of *Milan*; but *Galeas*, having a good Body of Horſe, had the Advantage over the Imperialiſts in every Skirmiſh, and had ſo harraſs'd and weaken'd them, that altho' the Archbiſhop of *Cologn*, and Duke *Leopold* of *Auſtria*, came the ſame Year to his Aſſiſtance, with a conſiderable Re-inforcement, they were forc'd to return to *Germany*, with what Troops remain'd, without having done any Thing conſiderable.

BESIDES, they were conſtrain'd thereunto, becauſe the other States of *Germany* did not proceed

ROBERT. ceed with the ſame Vigour as them, but had been ſeduced by the Elector of *Mentz*, who (not content with hindring his Eccleſiaſticks from paying the Tenths to the Emperor, which the Pope had permitted him to raiſe, for the *Italian* Expedition) had alienated almoſt all their Minds from him. Hereupon, the Year following, *Robert* was oblig'd to return back into *Germany*, without having gain'd any Advantage in *Italy*, either againſt *Galeas* Duke of *Milan*, or, in Favour of the Pope, againſt *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, who, ſome Years after, took the City of *Rome*, and drove out his Holineſs.

The Emperor returns to Germany, *and dies.* 1410.

WHEN *Robert* was arriv'd in *Germany*, he apply'd himſelf wholly to put an End to the Diſorders that reign'd there, in which he had Succeſs; however, in the Year 1410, there aroſe another Miſunderſtanding between him and *John* Elector of *Mentz*, on Account of a Caſtle which the latter had built at *Hochſt*, contrary to the Emperor's Will. Hereupon, *Robert* had recourſe to Arms, and advanced with his Troops to hinder him by Force, but was prevented by a Sickneſs, which ſeiz'd him with ſo much Violence at *Oppenheim*, that he died there the eighteenth of *May* the ſame Year, and was buried at *Spires*, or, as others ſay, at *Heidelberg*.

SOME Authors ſay, and not without Appearance of Probability, that *Jodocus*, Marquis of *Moravia*, was elected Emperor after *Robert*'s Death, and that he liv'd but ſix Months; but that, not having Leiſure to get himſelf acknowledg'd, he was not reckon'd amongſt the Emperors.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXX.

SIGISMUND.

SIGISMUND, Son to the Emperor *Charles* IV, and Brother to *Wenceſlaus*, before his Advancement to the Imperial Dignity, had reign'd twenty ſeven Years in *Hungary*, after the Death of his Father-in-Law *Lewis*, to whom he ſucceeded. And as his great Qualities, and good Conduct in the midſt of the many Traverſes he met with in the Government of his Kingdom, oblig'd the Princes of the Empire to prefer him to all others, 'twill not be amiſs to mention it here tranſiently, and even to relate after what Manner he came to that Crown. SIGIS-MUND.

THIS Prince had been ſent very young to the Court of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, who had but two Daughters, *Mary* and *Hedwig*, Heireſſes to his Kingdom. The youngeſt of theſe had been promis'd to *Jagello*, great Duke of *Lithuania*, to whom ſhe was afterwards married, and he attain'd to the Kingdom of *Poland*; but *Mary* the eldeſt was contracted and deſign'd for *Sigiſmund*. For this Reaſon *Lewis* had him educated with great Care, and caus'd him to be acknowledg'd as Succeſſor to his Kingdom, aſſoon as his Marriage with *Mary* ſhould be accompliſh'd. But before that Ceremony could be perform'd, *Lewis* died in the Year 1383, and *Mary* took upon her the Government of the Kingdom, under the Regency of her Mother *Elizabeth*, and

SIGISMUND.

by the Advice of *Nicolas Gare*, Count or great Maſter of the Palace, becauſe *Sigiſmund* was not yet married to *Mary*, as being but fifteen Years old.

Broils in Hungary *during* Sigiſmund's *Minority.*

THIS Miniſter exercis'd an abſolute Authority, under theſe two Queens; and became ſo arrogant, that he no longer remember'd there was a GOD, who gives Wiſdom and Prudence to govern People and States, and muſt be conſtantly invok'd to obtain his Grace. He began then to behave with ſuch ill Conduct, that, by his malicious Practices, he render'd the Grandees, and principal Noblemen of the Kingdom, ſuſpected to the Queens, and even incens'd theſe Princeſſes againſt them. In fine, having caus'd a general Averſion to their Government, the States, unmindful of their Duty, ſent the Biſhop of *Zagabria* ſecretly to *Charles de Duras* King of *Naples*, a Relation of the young Queen's, to offer him the Crown of *Hungary*. This Prince received the Propoſal very agreeably, notwithſtanding the earneſt Intreaties of the Queen his Wife, and his moſt faithful Servants, who begg'd him to refuſe it; and having ſettled the Affairs of *Sicily* in proper Order, prepar'd immediately to ſet out for *Hungary*.

THE Queen *Elizabeth*, being inform'd of theſe Intrigues, and that *Charles* was on the Road to take Poſſeſſion of the Kingdom, with Deſign to marry his Son *Ladiſlaus* to *Mary*, thereby the better to ſecure the Crown in his Family, endeavour'd, by all poſſible Means, to defeat his Projects. Wherefore, firſt, ſhe haſten'd the Conſummation of *Sigiſmund*'s Nuptials with *Mary*; and becauſe he was not yet ſtrong enough to wage open War with *Charles*, made him retire immediately after into *Bohemia*.

IN

SIGIS-MUND.

IN the mean while, towards the End of the Year 1386, *Charles* arriv'd at *Offen*, which was then the Reſidence of the *Hungarian* Court; and the Queens, having recourſe to all imaginable Diſſimulation, received him very honourably, and, in all Appearance, join'd their Conſent to the Inclination the *Hungarians* had diſcover'd to declare him their King. He was no ſooner acknowledg'd as ſuch, but he took upon him the Adminiſtration of Affairs, and bent all his Thoughts upon his Coronation, which Ceremony was perform'd the laſt Day of the ſame Year, with great Magnificence. But it happen'd, on this Occaſion, as it almoſt inevitably does in all popular Reſolutions, that have no other Foundation but Paſſion; for the Nobility and People, growing ſoon weary of *Charles*'s Government, began to change their Tone, and ſpeak publickly in Praiſe of the two Queens.

THE Queen *Elizabeth* (who amus'd *Charles*, with the Aſſurance that *Sigiſmund*, who continued ſtill in *Bohemia*, would yield him up the Kingdom, by a Treaty they would conclude together) obſerving this Alteration in the Nobles and Populace, thought it proper to take Advantage of this Opportunity, inſomuch that ſhe reſolv'd to rid herſelf of the new King; and this was the Expedient concerted, to crown their Enterprize with Succeſs. The Queens, *Mary* and *Elizabeth*, with the Palatine *Gare*, invited the new Monarch to their Apartment in the Palace, to communicate to him a Letter relating to the Ceſſion of the Kingdom, which they pretended to have received from *Sigiſmund*.

ACCORDINGLY, *Charles* went thither immediately, ſat down without the leaſt Miſtruſt by the Queen *Elizabeth*, and was follow'd ſoon after by the Palatine, accompany'd with a Man

SIGISMUND.

who was privy to the Plot, and who, going behind the King, clove down his Head to his Eyes; however, that poor Prince did not dye till ſome Days after. This done, *Elizabeth*, thinking ſhe had diſpers'd *Charles*'s Faction by his Death, re-eſtabliſh'd herſelf in her former Authority, few daring to diſcover any Regret for this Murther, it being done with the People's Concurrence.

A ſtrange Outrage committed by the Intendant of Croatia *upon the two Queens of* Hungary.

NEVERTHELESS, this Aſſaſſinate did not go unpuniſh'd; for ſome Time after, the Queens going into lower *Hungary*, with the Palatine *Gare*, and their ordinary Retinue, *Hiornard*, Intendant, or provincial Judge of *Croatia*, who had been advanced to that Poſt by *Charles* King of *Naples*, being inform'd of the Tragedy, form'd a Deſign to ſurprize the Murtherers. With this Intent he gather'd together a conſiderable Body of Men, lay in Ambuſh near the Paſſes, and the Court falling therein, were ſurrounded.

HEREUPON the *Croatians* maſſacred the Palatine, as well as the Perſon that clove the King's Head, and all the Palatine's Servants, tho' they defended themſelves very valiantly; neither did they treat the Queen-Mother *Elizabeth* with leſs Inhumanity; for, to oblige her to give an Account why ſhe committed this Aſſaſſination, they pull'd her out of her Coach, and dragg'd her by her Hair before the Provincial Judge. There, with very moving Reaſons, ſhe gave him to underſtand that King *Charles* had treated the Queen *Mary* with Deriſion and Contempt, and had unjuſtly diſpoſſeſs'd her of her Kingdom; after this ſhe fell upon her Knees, ask'd him Pardon for the Murther, and at the ſame Time begg'd him to remember the Favours he had received from her deceas'd Husband *Lewis*, and repay them on this Occaſion. Queen

Mary

SIGISMUND.

Mary alſo deſir'd the ſame Favour on her Knees; but neither the one nor the other could prevail, for ſhe was caſt into a diſmal Dungeon, and the Queen-Mother *Elizabeth* was miſerably drowned in the Rivulet of *Boſeth*. Theſe were the Fruits of her Miniſter's violent Counſels, whoſe Paſſion ſhe had ſo blindly follow'd.

Sigiſmund marches into Hungary againſt the Rebels.

SIGISMUND, having received Advice, and the Particulars of this Cataſtrophe, immediately march'd ſtrait for *Hungary*, with a conſiderable Army, which he had rais'd by Degrees, and was received there with open Arms, with the unanimous Conſent of the Nobility, and other States of the Kingdom. *Hiornard* was not a little diſmay'd at his Arrival; for he might eaſily imagine that his Crime would not go unpuniſh'd; however, to endeavour to diſperſe the Storm that threaten'd him, he thought proper to abate a little of his Rigour, and, for this Reaſon, had for ſome Days caus'd the Queen *Mary* to be removed into a handſom Chamber, and treated according to her Quality. Then he viſited her himſelf, and propoſing to her to let her return to *Hungary*, if ſhe would give him an Aſſurance of his Life, his Office, and Eſtate; ſhe received the Offer with ſo much Joy, that ſhe promis'd upon Oath that ſhe would regard him as her Father, if he would grant her that Liberty. Upon this tender Promiſe, the provincial Judge ſent her back, and had her convoy'd by his Troops to *Offen*, where King *Sigiſmund* her Husband waited for her, and ſhe was received with publick Rejoicings and Acclamations.

Sigiſmund being crown'd King of Hungary, puniſhes the Parricides.

SOME Days after, the States of *Hungary* being met at *Croon-Weiſſembourg*, crown'd *Sigiſmund*, then but twenty Years old; which done, the King bent all his Thoughts upon the Means to

SIGISMUND.

to revenge the Cruelty exercis'd upon the Queen his Mother-in-Law. The Queen, his Conſort, had indeed promis'd and ſworn that ſhe would never puniſh this Parricide; but ſhe had not ſworn it in the King her Husband's Name, becauſe 'twas not in her Power to make ſuch a Promiſe; wherefore he reſolv'd to chaſtize this Tyrant, and make an Example of him, to keep others in Awe. Hereupon he ſent Men into *Croatia*, who ſeiz'd the provincial Judge, and his Accomplices, and conducted them to the City of *Five Churches*, or *Funfkirken*. There *Sigiſmund* condemn'd this Judge to have his Hands ty'd behind him, be drawn through all the Streets, torn with red hot Pincers, quarter'd, and his four Quarters to be hung up in the Streets: As for his Accomplices, they were all beheaded.

The Queen of Hungary's *Death, whereat* Sigiſmund *is ſo concern'd that it puſhes him on to ill Counſels.*

SOME Years after, *Sigiſmund*, returning from *Walachia*, was inform'd on the Road, that the Queen his Conſort was dead of a ſhort and violent Sickneſs, with which News he was ſo touch'd, that he ſtaid ſome Time in *Offen*, as a Place of Retirement. At laſt, whether this Grief had renew'd another, or whether they had given any new Cauſe, he could no longer diſſemble his Reſentment againſt the Authors of the Reſolution taken at the beginning of the Revolt, to call King *Charles* from *Italy*, and crown him King of *Hungary*, to the Prejudice of him, and the Queen *Mary*. He was the more incens'd againſt them, in that he ſaw them go and come unpuniſh'd, with all the Liberty imaginable, without ever asking him Pardon. He reſolv'd then to have them ſecretly ſeiz'd, without taking Advice of his Council thereupon; and he gave this Commiſſion to Colonel *George Weidaſſen*, who put it in Execution, without

out conſidering what pernicious Conſequences might enſue. SIGIS-MUND.

A prudent Prince ought never to undertake any Thing of Importance, for his own private Intereſt, till he has firſt conſulted his Miniſters; becauſe their Opinions being ſeverally examin'd, the one correct the other, and at the ſame Time moderate his Paſſion. But to proceed; this Colonel, having rais'd a good Number of Troops, on Pretence of going to viſit the Lower *Hungary*, by Chance met theſe pretended Criminals, who being under ſome Apprehenſion of his coming, had already form'd a Body, and taken the Field. Hereupon he ſurrounded them in the Night, took them Priſoners, clap'd them in Irons, and ſent them to the King at *Offen*. Being brought before his Majeſty to give an Account why they had been guilty of ſuch an Offence, they would not ſo much as pay him any Reſpect, and diſdain'd even to make the leaſt Anſwer to any Queſtion ask'd them; ſuch Indifference did they ſhow for the Danger that threaten'd them.

WHEREUPON, *Sigiſmund* was ſo incens'd at their Haughtineſs, that he immediately order'd them all to be beheaded upon the Spot. They were in all thirty two Noblemen, each of whom had deſerv'd highly of the State by their Services: Amongſt the reſt was *Stephen Contus*, one of the chief of the Nobility. This Hero deſpis'd Death with ſo much Reſolution, that he would not ſuffer the Hangman to behead him the common Way, but would have him cut off his Neck by the forepart. This barbarous Execution touch'd ſeveral Princes and Lords, and ſo far alienated their Minds from him, that they took up Arms againſt him one after another, and decry'd him every where as a Tyrant.

SIGISMUND.

He is unſucceſsful againſt the Emperor of the Turks.

BAJAZET, *Sultan* of the *Turks*, ſeeing *Hungary* thus divided, and being undoubtedly call'd in by the Malecontents, thought the Opportunity ſo favourable, that he judg'd it proper to take Advantage thereof. Whereupon, in the Year 1396, or, according to others, in 1393, he began this bloody War, which prov'd ſo fatal to *Hungary*, by the Loſs of *Nicopolis*; and *Sigiſmund*, reſolving to defend that Place at the Head of above 100,000 Men, was defeated, and loſt the greateſt Part of the *Hungarian* Nobility, which weaken'd the Kingdom extreamly. After this terrible Diſaſter, inſtead of applying himſelf to the Re-eſtabliſhment of Affairs, he gave himſelf up to his Pleaſures; upon which ſeveral Governors of Provinces, and other Lords, began to abhor him more and more, till at laſt, in the Year 1410, they diſcover'd themſelves breaking out into great Complaints of his ill Conduct, in the Adminiſtration of the Affairs of the Kingdom.

His Debauches make his Subjects revolt, and ſeize his Perſon.

THEIR evil Intentions went even to this Extremity, that they ſeiz'd on his Perſon, and committed it to the Cuſtody of two Brothers nam'd *Garris*, whoſe Father had been one of the thirty two that were executed. Being miſerably treated in Priſon, he would ſometimes ſigh, and ſay, That he was a fine Example of Fortune's Inconſtancy, it neither being in his Power to live or dye. But as he was well made, and had naturally the Gift of Perſuaſion, he prevail'd with ſo much Addreſs on the Mother of the two Brothers who were his Keepers, that ſhe undertook to deliver him. Upon this, ſhe conſulted thereupon with her Sons, and remonſtrated to them, that Outrages committed againſt the Perſon of a Sovereign, were uſually attended with fatal Conſequences, and that 'twas

Sigiſmund's Addreſs in getting out of Priſon.

expoſing

SIGISMUND.

expoſing themſelves to very great Danger, both from the Populace, who are always changeable, and his Succeſſors, who take ſuch Injuries as done to themſelves.

AFTER this, ſhe repreſented to them the Honour and Advantage they might promiſe themſelves and their Families, if they would ſet the King at Liberty; and, in fine, perſiſting in her Importunity, ſhe puſh'd Matters ſo far, that ſhe made them waver in their Reſolutions; inſomuch that *Sigiſmund*, having ſworn to her and her Sons, that he would regard them as his Brothers, and, in Recompence, would inveſt them with *Moravia*, he was releas'd by them, and conducted by their Troops into *Moravia*, whence he went into *Bohemia*.

He arms and returns to Hungary, *where he amends his Conduct.*

HEREUPON, he immediately rais'd a conſiderable Army, and re-enter'd *Hungary*, where he made the Provinces pay him due Obedience, without meeting with any Reſiſtance. As to the two Brothers who deliver'd him, he kept his Word to them, and, in ſhort, behav'd himſelf with ſo much Goodneſs and Clemency, the reſt of his Days, both to his Friends and Enemies, that he regain'd the Friendſhip and Love of his Subjects in general. The Experience he had learn'd, at his own Expence, had render'd this Maxim familiar to him; *That whoever, neither knows how to pardon, nor to ſeem not to ſee what he does ſee, is not Maſter of the Art of governing.*

HIS Reputation extended even to the neighbouring States, inſomuch that the *Germans* thought they could not chooſe a more accompliſh'd Prince, on whom to confer the Imperial Crown; however there was ſome Diſpute about his Election. Out of five Electors, whereof the Electoral Aſſembly conſiſted, three indeed gave their Votes for him; but the other two, who were

SIGISMUND. were the Archbiſhops of *Cologn* and *Mentz*, refus'd him their Suffrages, reſerving them for *Jodocus* Marquis of *Moravia*; and they manag'd Matters ſo well, that, preventing the Publication of *Sigiſmund*'s Election, they made that of *Jodocus* paſs for Valid and Legal. However, that Prince dying a few Months after, without having ever been acknowledged Emperor by the other States of the Empire, *Sigiſmund* was choſen unanimouſly, or, to ſpeak more properly, confirm'd Emperor, by all the Electors, in the Year 1411.

1411. He was then, according to moſt Accounts, in *Hungary*, where, having Advice of this good News, he reſolv'd, in order to anſwer the great Opinion they had conceived of him, to apply himſelf principally to two Points *(viz.)* to re-eſtabliſh the Affairs of the Empire, and to put an End to the Schiſm, which had reign'd in the Church upwards of thirty Years. Accordingly, he began, by ridding his Hands of the Electorate of *Brandenbourg*, in Favour of *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurembourg*, of the Family of the Counts of *Hohenzollern*, a Prince of great Merit, from whom the preſent Electors of *Brandenbourg* are deſcended. This he ſold to him for 400,000 Florins, reſerving, nevertheleſs, to himſelf, and his Brother, the Right of Redemption, on re-imburſing the ſame Sum, on Condition of its reverting in Default of Heirs Male.

Some Time after, he had a Diſpute with the *Venetians*, concerning ſome Territories in *Dalmatia*, which oblig'd him to march that Way; and having put an End thereunto, he advanc'd, on divers Pretences, as far as *Lombardy*; but particularly, that he might have more Convenience to conclude the Negotiations he had already

ready enter'd into with *John* XXIII. The Intention of theſe was, to agree upon the calling a general Council, thereby to root out the Schiſm then made by three pretended Popes, and eſtabliſh a ſolid Peace in the Church. SIGISMOND.

To this Intent, he had divers Conferences with the Legates ſent him by *John*, who came himſelf to him at *Piacenza*, whence they went afterwards to *Lodi*, where the calling of a Council was finally reſolv'd on. Hereupon, the Bulls were diſpatch'd the ninth of *December*, for the meeting to be at *Conſtance* on the firſt of *November* following. 1413.]

IN the mean while, *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, contrary to an Alliance ſince made with the Pope, had a third Time taken Poſſeſſion of *Rome*, with Deſign, not only to uſurp all St. *Peter*'s Patrimony, but even all *Italy*. After ſome Stay in that City, he march'd into *Tuſcany*, with a powerful Army, becauſe he had a Grudge againſt the *Florentines*, and Pope *John*, who was withdrawn to *Bologna*; but, on the eighth of *June*, 1414, he was ſeiz'd at *Peruſa* with a violent Diſtemper, caus'd by Poiſon, which oblig'd him to retire to *Naples*, where ſome Months after he died. [1414.

HIS Death, leaving *Italy* entirely in Peace, gave Pope *John*, the Cardinals, Archbiſhops, and Biſhops of that Nation, full Liberty to go to *Conſtance*; and accordingly his Holineſs went thither on the eighth of *October*, and there waited the meeting of the Aſſembly. In the mean while, *Sigiſmund*, being return'd to *Germany*, in order to be crown'd Emperor, before his going to the Council, ſtopping at *Spires*, for ſeveral Affairs that required his Preſence, ſign'd on the eighteenth of *October*, in that City, the Paſſport, under whoſe Protection *John Hus* went

SIGISMUND. went to *Conſtance*, to give an Account of his Tenets to the Council; after which *Sigiſmund* went to *Aix*, where he was crown'd the eighth of *November*.

THIS Ceremony was no ſooner perform'd, but he ſet out for *Conſtance*, with the Empreſs his Conſort, and a very ſplendid Court, where he arrived on the twenty third of *December* in the Evening. On the Morrow, he aſſiſted at the Midnight Maſs, which Pope *John* celebrated Pontifically, and ſerved thereat, performing the Deacon's Office in the *Imperial Dalmatick*, as is uſual on ſuch Occaſions. In the firſt Seſſions, which was held the ſixteenth of *November*, the ſecond was put off till the ſecond of *March* the Year following, to the End that the Emperor, who was then expected, might be preſent thereat. The appointed Day being come, the Fathers of the Council were employ'd in deliberating upon Expedients to put an End to the Schiſm, and re-eſtabliſh Union in the Church. In order to this, they could find no better Method, than to make the three that had been elected renounce the Papacy; and they even prevail'd on *John* XXIII, 1415. who preſided at the Council, to agree to it. Accordingly, he promis'd authentically, that he would abdicate, when *Angelo Corario*, call'd *Gregory* XII, and *Peter de Luna*, nam'd *Bennet* XIII, did the ſame.

HE had hardly made this Promiſe, when the Emperor aroſe from his Seat, went and threw himſelf at his Feet, and thank'd him for ſo Chriſtian an Action; as did alſo the Patriarch of *Antioch*, in the Name of all the Council. But *John* repenting, ſome Days after, of having enter'd into ſuch an Engagement, fled to *Conſtance*, whence he eſcap'd that Night in a Diſguiſe,

guiſe, and retir'd to *Switzerland*. This, after ſeveral Proceedings, oblig'd the Council, in the twelfth Seſſion, to pronounce the definitive Sentence of his Depoſition, prohibiting all Chriſtians to acknowledge him as Pope; ordaining likewiſe, that they ſhould not proceed to the Election of any Pontif for the future, without the Deliberation and Conſent of the Council; neither ſhould they again elect, either him that was then depoſed, *Angelo Corario*, or *Peter de Luna*. SIGISMUND.

JOHN, finding himſelf thus preſs'd upon, choſe rather to give way to Force, than, by reſiſting, make himſelf liable to meet with worſe Treatment; accordingly, when the Sentence was notify'd to him, he ſwore he would never act contrary to it, renounced the Papacy freely, and at the ſame Time laid down all the Marks of that Dignity. After his Example, *Corario* ſent a Legate, ſome Days afterwards, to the Emperor and the Council, to make likewiſe a Renunciation of the Popedom, which was done in the fourteenth Seſſion.

IN the following Seſſion, the Fathers of the Council thought it proper to bring the Affair of *John Hus*, and *Jerome* of *Prague*, upon the *Tapis*. The former, as has been before obſerv'd, had extracted his new Doctrine from the Writings of *Wickliff*, an *Engliſhman*, and a famous Heretick; and having infected ſeveral in the Univerſity of *Prague*, and other Places, had acquir'd an infinite Number of Followers. Particularly, he had inſtill'd it ſo ſtrongly into *Jerome* of *Prague*, a Maſter of Arts, one of his Pupils, that he eaſily prevail'd on him to join with him, and preach publickly againſt the Pope's Supremacy. His Holineſs hearing hereof, caus'd them both to be ſummon'd to *Rome*; but they refus'd to go; but *Troubles ariſe on Account of the Hereſy of* John Hus.

SIGISMUND. but nevertheleſs, they appear'd, upon receiving afterwards another Citation to juſtify themſelves at the Council of *Conſtance*.

His Execution. *John Hus* came, relying upon the Emperor's Paſſport, and endeavour'd to give an Account of his Doctrine in Preſence of the Pope, and the Fathers of the Council; but nevertheleſs, he was arreſted Priſoner ſome Days afterwards; and, in ſhort, his Proceſs was made. Hereupon, he was convicted of having publickly taught thirty Articles, which were either heretical, ſeditious, or ſcandalous; wherefore, he was by the Council declared ſeditious, and a Favourer and obſtinate Defender of the Hereſiarch *Wickliff*, as alſo a harden'd Heretick; and, as ſuch, after being degraded, he was deliver'd over to the Secular Judge, who condemn'd him and his Writings to be burnt: accordingly, they proceeded to his Execution on the ſixth of *July*.

WHEN he arriv'd at the Place appointed, his Sentence was read to him, and publickly pronounced, according to Cuſtom; after which, he was ty'd to a Stake, and ſurrounded on all ſides by Wood and Straw. Then the Duke of *Bavaria*, and Count *Papenheim*, approaching the Pile, before Fire was put to it, exhorted him to recant; but, far from that, he would have harangu'd the People, perſiſted in proteſting his Innocence, and inveigh'd againſt the Emperor and Fathers of the Council; whereupon, the Duke retired, and order'd the Executioners to do their Duty.

SOME Proteſtants of *Germany* have made him a Prophet, by making him ſay, when upon the Pile, *You now burn a Gooſe* (for that is the Signification of *Hus* in the *Bohemian* Tongue) *but, in a hundred Years, a Swan will ariſe*

out

out of his Aſhes, which you will not burn. They pretended that he meant *Luther* by the Swan; but the whole is but a Fiction, and a Story made at Pleaſure. SIGIS-MUND.

AFTER this Execution, the Council reſum'd the Affair of *Peter de Luna*, who perſiſted obſtinately in reſolving to retain the Papacy; whereupon, the Emperor offer'd to go in Perſon into *Arragon*, where he had fled for Refuge, to induce *Peter*, by the Mediation of *Ferdinand* King of *Arragon*, to make his Renunciation, in the ſame Manner as *Corario*, without waiting the laſt Reſolutions of the Council. His Journey was reſolv'd on in the 17th Seſſion; and he ſet out three Days after, accompany'd with twelve Deputies from the Council, both Prelates and Doctors. Accordingly, he arriv'd at *Perpignan*, where all Things were tranſacted with *Peter de Luna* by Negotiation, the Reſult whereof was ſent to the Council; but in the End this Reſult had not all the Succeſs that was expected from it.

THIS done, that he might omit nothing that wou'd contribute to eſtabliſh the Peace of the Church amongſt Chriſtian Princes, and particularly the Kings of *France* and *England*, he viſited King *Charles* VI, by whom he was magnificently entertain'd at *Paris*: He alſo made a Tour into *England*, but the Truce he propoſed between the two Crowns was never ſign'd. On his Return to *France*, he was ſollicited by *Amadeus* VIII, Count of *Savoy*, to erect his Earldom into a Duchy; whereupon, he granted him the Letters of Erection, which were dated from *Chamberry*, 19 *February*, 1416. 1416.

NOTWITHSTANDING *Sigiſmund's* Abſence, the Fathers of the Council went on with their Affairs, and were then upon *Jerome* of *Prague*, who, to avoid receiving a like Sentence with

John

SIGIS-MUND. *John Hus*, had publickly abjur'd *Wickliff's* Hereſy the Year before in full Council. But falling again into the ſame Errors, he was condemn'd in the twenty firſt Seſſion, as an obſtinate *Relapſe*, and deliver'd over to the ſecular Judge, who caus'd him to be burnt alive. On *Sigiſmund's* return to *Conſtance*, they proceeded againſt *Peter de Luna* for Contumacy; and, in the thirty ſeventh Seſſion, held the twenty ſixth of *July* 1417, the Definitive Sentence of his 1417. Depoſition was pronounced and publiſh'd. After this, the Emperor's greateſt Care was to have a Pope elected; and accordingly *Odo*, or *Otho Colonna*, a *Roman*, was propoſed, and elected on St. *Martin's* Day; whence he took the Name of *Martin* V. This Election was made with the Approbation of all the World. After this, they diſpatch'd all the other Affairs that remain'd to be regulated by the Council; and, in fine, this illuſtrious Aſſembly broke up in the 47th Seſſion, which was held the 22d of *April*, 1418.

THE Decrees of the Council were no ſooner 1418. publiſh'd, than *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia* ſet about putting them in Execution againſt the *Huſſites*; with this Intent he expreſly forbid their aſſembling to receive the Communion under both Kinds. But moſt Part of the Inhabitants of *Prague* were ſo exaſperated thereat, that, having forced the Town-Houſe, they threw both the Burgo-Maſter, and thoſe who had aſſiſted at the publiſhing the Prohibition, out at the Windows; during which the reſt of the People received thoſe, who were caſt into the Streets, upon Pikes and Halberds.

A religious Zeal ſet on Flame is attended with Conſequences too well known; wherefore, 'tis unneceſſary to enlarge upon the Particulars of all the Wars wherewith *Bohemia* was afflicted, from

from that very Moment, till the Emperor was constrain'd both to grant them Peace, and Part of what was desired for Liberty of Conscience, and the Exercise of their Religion. Only we shall mention that *Sigismund*, having succeeded *Wenceslaus* in the Kingdom of *Bohemia* in 1419, and being crown'd in 1420, was oblig'd (in order to reduce these Rebels) to employ the Army he had design'd against the *Turk*. But he could not compass his End; and they, growing more insolent by the frequent Advantages they had gain'd over their Prince, under the Conduct of *John Zisca* their Captain, put all to Fire and Sword in such Places as would not espouse their Party; and they exercis'd enormous Barbarities and Cruelties, particularly against the Ecclesiasticks, without sparing either the Churches, or the Altars. SIGISMUND. 1419. 1420.

THESE Outrages, which continually increas'd, oblig'd the Emperor to arm the whole Empire against them; whereupon he enter'd *Bohemia* with a considerable Army, being attended with several great Princes, as the Duke of *Saxony*, the Marquis of *Brandenbourg*, and the Archbishop of *Treves*, who would accompany him in Person. Notwithstanding all these Forces, both the one and the other were defeated, more by a panick Terror, than by the Arms of the *Hussites*, whose continual Victories at last forc'd *Sigismund* to offer such honourable and advantagious Conditions to *Zisca*, that he had the Assurance to go to meet him, to conclude with him in Person the Agreement that had been propos'd to him; but *Zisca* unfortunately dy'd of the Plague on the Road. This Death made some Alteration in the Affairs of the *Hussites*; but nevertheless they still seem'd very resolute, and express'd a great deal of Zeal for the Advancement of the 1424.

SIGISMUND. Common Cauſe; even ſo far as to cover a Drum with the Skin of their deceas'd Captain, in order to march and fight, even after his Death, under his Command.

'TWAS about this Time that the Knights of the *Teutonick* Order, who were dependent on the Empire, degenerating from the Virtue of their Predeceſſors, loſt a good Part of *Pruſſia*, whereof the *Poles* depriv'd them, after having defeated them in ſeveral Engagements. This was the Beginning of the Ruin of thoſe Knights, in that Country, notwithſtanding ſome Recruits which *Sigiſmund* continued to ſend them, in the midſt of the great Troubles this Order was involv'd in againſt the *Huſſites*. They had then enter'd *Sileſia*, and having divided their Army
1430. into three Bodies, attack'd *Hungary*, *Poland*, and *Auſtria*, at the ſame Time, putting all to Fire and Sword; ſo great was their Rage againſt the Catholicks. Pope *Adrian*, being appriz'd of their Progreſs, ſent Orders to Cardinal *Julian*, Legate *a Latere* to *Sigiſmund*, to preſs the *German* Princes to enter into the *Croiſade*, which had been decreed againſt the Hereticks. The
1431. Legate accordingly publiſhed it anew the twenty firſt of *March* at *Nuremberg*, where *Sigiſmund* had aſſembled the Electors, and other Princes, both Eccleſiaſticks and Seculars, moſt Part of whom engaged themſelves therein voluntarily. And, to the End that every one might contribute proportionably, the Emperor, by their Conſent, made a Regulation, which is the firſt Rule that was ever made for the Contributions, which every Prince or State ſhould furniſh in Money or Soldiers, not only for that preſent Occaſion, but alſo for all others relating to the Empire.

ACCOR-

SIGIS-MUND.

ACCORDING then to this Regulation, theſe Princes prepar'd for the War, and that with ſo much the more Ardor, as they were again incited thereto by new Exhortations from the ſame Legate, in the Name of *Eugene* IV, who ſucceeded after the Death of *Martin* V, who died the twentieth of *February* that ſame Year. Hereupon they levy'd an Army of 40,000 Horſe, and as many Foot, the Command whereof was given by the Emperor to *Frederick* Marquis of *Brandenbourg*. The Legate, entring *Bohemia* with all his Troops, fell at firſt vigorouſly upon the *Huſſites*; but, upon the Approach of the Enemies Army, they were ſeiz'd with ſuch a panick Fear, that they betook themſelves to Flight, without the Legate's being able to ſtop them, either by Remonſtrances, or otherwiſe. Their Flight was ſo precipitated, that they abandon'd all their Baggage, and Riches, among which the Enemies found the Legate's Croſs, with all his Veſtments, whereof they made execrable Raillery.

THIS Expedition being ſo unfortunate, the Cardinal *Julian* went to *Baſil*, to hold a Council, which had been ordain'd for the Affairs of the Church, in Compliance with the Decrees of the Council of *Conſtance*; during which *Sigiſmund*, having ſettled Things in *Bohemia* as well as lay in his Power, paſs'd the *Alps*, and went to *Milan*. There he received the Iron Crown on the twenty fifth of *November*, from the Hands of the Archbiſhop, with the Ring, the naked Sword, the Scepter and the golden Apple. This done, he uſed his utmoſt Endeavours to accommodate the Differences between Pope *Eugene* and the Council; and having ſucceeded therein ſo far that the Pope confirm'd the Council, he bent his Thoughts on going to *Rome* to be crown'd. 1432.

SIGISMUND

ACCORDINGLY, a few Days after he ſet out, and as he drew near, his Holineſs ſent out ſeveral *Roman* Cardinals, Prelates, and Noblemen, with moſt of the Clergy and People, to meet him; who all conducted him into the City with great Magnificence. There he was received by the Pope with great Ceremony, at the Steps of the *Vatican* Church, and admitted to kiſs his Mouth and Feet, and on *Whitſunday* his Holineſs crown'd him, and ſaluted him with the Title of Emperor *Auguſtus*. *Sigiſmund* having reſided ſome Time at *Rome*, ſet out for *Ferrara*, and from thence to *Mantua*, which he erected into a Marquiſate, in Favour of *John-Francis de Gonzaga*, who was Poſſeſſor thereof, and gave him for Arms thoſe of the Empire. This done, he went to *Baſil*, where the Fathers of the Council were employ'd in treating with the Deputies of the *Huſſites*, and finding Means to reconcile them to the *Romiſh* Church. They had then aſſum'd the Name of *Taborites*, on Account of the City of *Tabor*, which *Ziſca* had built to ſerve him for a Place of Refuge.

1433.

1434.

DURING theſe Tranſactions, the Emperor being inform'd that the *Huſſites* were divided among themſelves, and that the Barons and Nobility could not bear the Tyranny of thoſe who call'd themſelves *Taborites*, but had ſeparated from them, reſolv'd to march that Way, that he might the better take Advantage of their Diviſion. Beſides this, he found that the Council had continual Diſputes with the Pope, which could not be accommodated, by Reaſon the Council were of Opinion that they were Superior to his Holineſs in all Things, whoſe Thoughts were quite different: Wherefore his Majeſty determin'd to return to *Germany* the Year following.

ON

ON his Arrival at *Ulm*, he received Information that the *Taborites*, who had ſeveral Months been employ'd at the Siege of *Pilſna*, which had always continued ſteadfaſt in the *Romiſh* Religion, had been utterly defeated by the Barons of *Bohemia*, before-mentioned, who were join'd by the Catholicks. Hereupon he took Advantage of this Juncture, to reconcile both the one and the other to himſelf; and he manag'd Matters ſo well by the Ambaſſadors he ſent them, that they acknowledg'd him as lawful Heir to his Brother *Wenceſlaus*; and being advanced as far as *Ratisbon*, where he held a general Diet of the Empire, the Deputies of the *Bohemian* States, with the Remainder of the *Taborites*, came thither and acknowledged him as their King. SIGISMUND.

HEREUPON he us'd his Intereſt with the Deputies of the Council, to facilitate their Reconciliation to the Church; and after various Negotiations and Diſputes, he appointed an Aſſembly at *Iglave*, in the Dioceſe of *Olmutz*, where the ſame Deputies of the Council met, as well as the *Bohemians*. There all Things were regulated by an Act made the fifth of *July* 1436, which was ſeal'd both with the Signet of the Emperor and the Deputies, to render it more authentick. Conformable to this Act, the *Bohemians*, having proteſted in Preſence of the Emperor and all his Court, that they would for the future be obedient to the Church of *Rome*, were abſolv'd from the Excommunication, and other Cenſures that had been iſſued againſt them; being at the ſame Time introduc'd into the Church by the Deputies of the Council. 1436.

BUT the Emperor, reſolving to eſtabliſh a ſolid Peace in that Kingdom, and judging that

SIGIS-MUND. Eccleſiaſtical Revenues, which had been uſurp'd during the Wars, might ſerve as a Pretence to diſturb it, and create new Diſorders, made an Agreement with the Head Noblemen upon that Account; whereupon they own'd themſelves the more oblig'd to him, as the Deputies of the Council would not conſent thereunto. As a farther Teſtimony of their Acknowledgment, they conducted him to *Prague*, where they receiv'd him magnificently, and crown'd him on the twenty fourth of *Auguſt*; after which the Barons and Deputies of the Cities did Homage, and took the Oath of Allegiance to him.

SOON after his Coronation he again began to uſe Violence, to oblige ſome of the Heads of them to abjure their Religion, which Proceeding, in ſome Meaſure, reviv'd the *Bohemians* Hatred againſt him; inſomuch that *Sigiſmund*, not being able to live amongſt a People whom he did not love, reſolv'd at the latter End of his Life to give himſelf ſome Reſt, and, in order to that, to retire to *Hungary*. But as, in his Way thither, he would go to ſee his Daughter who liv'd at *Znaim* in *Moravia*, he died there
1473. the ninth of *December* 1473, at the Age of ſeventy, full of Glory, both for his good Qualities of Mind and Body, and his great and good Actions.

He was of a fine Shape, Liberal, and Learned, a Lover of Men of Letters, and Maſter of ſeveral Languages; and, what is uncommon in a Sovereign Prince, a mortal Enemy to Flatterers, uſing ordinarily to ſay, That they were not only real Ravens, but were worſe than them, becauſe thoſe Birds only pick'd out the Eyes of dead Men, whereas the Flatterers peck them out of living Men.

HE

HE was firſt married to *Mary* Daughter to *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, and a ſecond Time to *Barbara-Elizabeth*, Daughter to *Herman* Count of *Cilley*, by whom he had *Elizabeth* Wife to *Albert* of *Auſtria*, his Succeſſor in the Empire, and the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. SIGISMUND.

The End of the Firſt VOLUME.



INDEX of the FIRST VOLUME.

A

ADRIAN I, Pope; his Reception of *Charlemagne*, 18, 23. His Death, 38.

Adrian IV, elected Pope, 225. His Interview with the Emperor *Frederick* I, 226. Embroiled with the Emperor, 227. Another Broil, 229. The Pope's Death, *ibid.*

Adolphus of *Naſſau* choſen Emperor, excluſive of *Albert* of *Auſtria*, 313. His Manner of governing, 314. A League between this Emperor and the King of *England* againſt *France*, *ibid.* *Albert* of *Auſtria* his Competitor, 316. He is vanquiſh'd in a Battle, and loſes his Life, 317.

Albert I, Duke of *Auſtria*, elected Emperor during the Life of *Adolphus*, 316. Gives *Adolphus* Battle, and gains it, where *Adolphus* is kill'd, 317. Nam'd the *One-ey'd*, *ibid.* Is confirm'd in the Empire by a Diet, 318. Takes Precautions with the King of *France* againſt the Artifices of *Rome*, 319. Interview between theſe two Princes, *ibid.* Cauſes his Wife to be crown'd, *ibid.* Reſumes the Rights belonging to the Empire, *ibid.* By his ill Uſage obliges the *Swiſs* to recover their Liberty, 320. Reſolves to make himſelf Maſter of *Bohemia*, *ibid.* His too great Deſire of aggrandizing his Children coſts him his Life, 322. *&c.*

Alexander IV, choſen Pope, 229. The Emperor *Frederick* I, diſputes his Election, 230. Excommunicates the Emperor, *ibid.* Takes Refuge in *France*, 231. Returns into *Italy*, 233. Is reconcil'd to the Emperor, 235. His Death, 241.

Alphonſo King of *Caſtile*, elected Emperor, 295. His Death, 296.

Ambaſſadors, *Saracens*, entertain'd by *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, 63.

Anabaptiſts, Outrages of thoſe *Hereticks* againſt the *Catholicks*, 379. *&c.* They chooſe a Taylor King, *ibid.*

Apulia, its King put to the Ban of the Empire, 332.

Arnold, Duke of *Lombardy*, informs *Charlemagne* of the Conſpiracy form'd againſt him by his Son *Pepin*, 36.

Arnold, *Carloman's* Son, attains the Empire, 98. Utterly routs the *Normans*, 99. His Death, 100.

Avarians conquered by *Charlemagne*, notwithſtanding the Strength of their Frontiers, 32, *&c.*

Auguſtus Ceſar made Emperor, 5.

BAM-

B

BAMBERG erected into a Biſhoprick, 140.

Berenger conquered by *Otho* I, 123. That Emperor's Liberality to him, *ibid.* Revolts ſoon after, 124. Condemn'd to perpetual Impriſonment, 125.

Bernard, King of *Italy*, revolts againſt the Emperor *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, and is puniſh'd, 63, 64.

Biſhops obliged to ſubmit to their Sovereigns, as well as other Subjects, 50.

Bohemia, that Duchy erected into a Kingdom, 228. Troubles in that Kingdom, 321.

Boniface VIII, Pope, confirms the Emperor *Albert*'s Election, and offers him the Crown of *France*, 318. His imperious Uſage of the *French* King, 325, *&c.*

Bull, the golden one, Inſtitution and Publication of this Bull, 352.

C

CALISTUS II, choſen Pope, 205. His Negotiations for the Re-union of the Church and Empire, *ibid.* Arms againſt *Gregory* his Competitor, 206. His Death, 209.

Carloman, Son to *Lewis* King of *Germany*, Sir-nam'd the *Germanick*, divides the Empire with *Lewis* and *Charles* his Brother, 93. Diſputes the Empire with *Lewis* III, Sirnam'd the *Stammerer*, 94. Proclaim'd Emperor at *Rome*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*

Celeſtine III, elected Pope, inſtead of *Clement* III, 254. Circumſtances obſerv'd by him at the Coronation of the Emperor *Henry* VI, *ibid.* He confirms the *Teutonick* Order, 249.

Charlemagne attains the Empire of the Weſt, 11. His Encomium, 56. His Birth, 12. A Prodigy at his Birth, *ibid.* His Conqueſts, 13, *&c.* Subdues the *Saxons*, 20, *&c.* His Expedition into *Italy*, 18. His Journey to *Rome*, and his Actions there, *ibid.* Beſieges and takes *Pavia*, 19. The Reaſons that induced this Prince to make War upon the *Saxons*, 21. He takes *Lampeluna*, 23. His ſecond Tour into *Italy*, *ibid.* Chaſtiſes the *Saxons*, 24, *&c.* His third *Italian* Expedition, 28. Refuſes to give his Daughter in Marriage to the Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, 29. The *Romans* pay him Tribute, *ibid.* Reduces *Taſſilon* Duke of *Bavaria* to his Duty, *ibid.* His Clemency to that Duke, 30. Subdues the *Sclavonians*, *ibid.* Reduces the *Huns*, 31. The Eaſtern Emperor's Defeat by *Charlemagne*, 32. He reduces the *Avarians*, *ibid. &c.* He renders the Deſigns of the King of *Denmark* abortive, 35. *Pepin* his Son conſpires againſt him, 36. His Sovereignty over *Rome*, 38. His Reception at *Rome* by Pope *Leo* III, 40. Is crown'd Emperor of the Weſt, *ibid.* His Conqueſts, 42. His Right to the Empire, 43. He confirms the Gift made to the Pope by his Father *Pepin*, 53. He makes his Son his Aſſociate in the Empire, 54. His Death, 55.

Charles, King of *France*, arms againſt his Brother *Lothaire*, and why, 87. Is victorious, 88.

Charles II, Sir-nam'd the *Bald*, uſurps the Empire from his elder Brother, 92. His Death, 94. Is the firſt to whom the Pope gives the Name of *Moſt Chriſtian*, *ibid.*

Charles III, call'd the *Groſs*, is crown'd Emperor, 96. His Greatneſs but of ſhort Continuance, *ibid.* His Misfortunes, 97. His Death, *ibid.*

Charles the *Simple*, King of *France*, overcome by the Emperor *Henry* I, 115.

Charles Duke of *Anjou*, crown'd at *Rome*, with *Beatrix* his Wife, by Pope *Clement*, 299. His Victory over *Conradin* Duke of *Suabia*, 300.

Charles IV, Emperor, 348. Makes himſelf acknowledg'd Emperor, 349. Builds the City of *Prague*, *ibid.* Is crown'd in *Germany*, 351. And at *Rome*, *ibid.* Endeavours to appeaſe the Troubles in *Germany*, *ibid.* Inſtitutes the *Golden Bull*, 352, Increaſes his Patrimonial Dominions, 354. Sells Privileges to the Cities and States, *ibid.* Inſtitutes the Univerſity of *Prague*, 355. Enters into a League againſt the Tyrant of *Milan*, *ibid.* Gives up the Province of *Dauphine* to *France*, 356. Has his Son elected King of the *Romans*, 357. His Death, *ibid.*

Clement III, choſen Pope in the Diet of *Breſcia*, in the Room of *Gregory* VII, 177.

Clement V, does the King an ill Office, 326. Takes Precautions againſt the Emperor's Expedition into *Italy*, 330. Embroils himſelf with the Emperor, 332.

Conrad I, elected Emperor, 112. Is croſs'd, 113. Defeats *Arnold* Duke of *Bavaria*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*

Conrad II, nam'd the *Salique*, elected Emperor, 142. Is crown'd at *Rome*, 143. His Wars, *ibid.* His Death, 145.

Conrad III, elected and crown'd Emperor, 216. A Revolt againſt him in *Apulia*, 217. His Voyage to the *Holy-Land*, 221. His Death, 222.

Conrad IV, ſucceeds his Father *Frederick* II, 289. He eſcapes a great Danger, *ibid.* His Expedition into *Italy* where he dies, 290.

Conſtans, Son to *Conſtantine* the *Great*, aſſumes the Title of Emperor of the Weſt, and re-unites the two Empires in his own Perſon, 9.

Conſtantine was the firſt Chriſtian Emperor, 6. The Reaſon of his Converſion, *ibid.* Conquers *Maxentius*, 7. Tranſfers the Seat of the Empire from *Rome* to *Conſtantinople*, *ibid.* Divides the Empire into two Parts, call'd the Eaſtern and Weſtern Empires, 8. His Death, *ibid.*

Croiſade of *Frederick* II, to the *Holy-Land*, 276. Croiſade againſt the *Huſſites*, 384.

D

DIDIER ſurrenders himſelf to *Charlemagne*, 19.

Diet of *Aix la Chapelle*, with the Reaſon thereof, 81. Diet of *Goſlar* to depoſe Pope *Gregory* VII, 172. Diet of *Worms* call'd by *Frederick* I, 226. The Sentence pronounced there againſt ſome *German* Princes that had revolted, *ibid.*

Duke, the Signification of that Word, 14.

E

EAGLE, the Time when the *Romans* took the Eagle for their Enſign, 3, &c.

Elizabeth, of *Bohemia*, clears herſelf of the Suſpicion that prevented the Accompliſhment of her Marriage with Count *John* of *Luxembourg*, 327.

Emperor, what that Word ſignify'd at the Beginning, 4. The fatal End of moſt of the Heathen Emperors, 6. Emperors of *Italy*, 117. &c.

Empire of *Germany*, the Time when it was eſtabliſh'd, and by whom, 7, &c. Why transferr'd to *Conſtantinople*, *ibid.* Re-union of the Empire under *Conſtans*, 9. Partition of the Empire under *Theodoſius* the *Great*, 9, 10. End of the Eaſtern Empire, 11. The Empire confin'd to the Weſt under *Charlemagne*, *ibid.* The Reaſon why it was hereditary in *Charlemagne*'s Family, 12. Is transferr'd from *France* to the *Germans* in the Perſon of *Conrad* I, 111. Another Diviſion and Decay of the Empire, 255. Is refus'd by St. *Lewis*, 279. New Diviſion of the Empire, 293. Diſorders happen in the Empire, 333, 351, &c.

Eugene II, elected Pope in the Room of *Paſchal*, 67. His Death, 70.

F

FRANKFORT, the Right of that City in opening its Gates to the Emperors, 349, 350.

Frederick I, elected Emperor, 222. Crowns the King of *Denmark* with his own Hand, 223. Is crown'd at *Rome* by Proxy, *ibid.* Terminates the Differences between the Princes of the Empire, *ibid.* His Diſpute with the Pope accommodated, 224. *Italy* revolts againſt him, 225. His Interview with the Pope, 226. He conducts the Pope to *Rome*, and is crown'd there, *ibid.* His Return to *Germany*, *ibid.* Another Broil between him and the Pope, 227. His ſecond Expedition into *Italy*, 229. Aſſembles a Council to ſupport the Election of Pope *Victor*, 230. Is excommunicated by *Alexander*, 231. Ravages the *Milaneze*, 232. His Return to *Germany*, *ibid.* His third Expedition into *Italy*, 233. A League enter'd into by all *Italy* againſt him, *ibid.* His fourth Expedition into *Italy*, 234. He makes Peace with Pope *Alexander* III, *ibid.* Ratification of this Peace by him and the Pope in Perſon, 238. His Return to *Germany*, 240. His fifth Expedition into *Italy*, 241. His Return to *Germany*, 242. He enters into a *Croiſade* for the *Holy-Land*, and divides his Territories amongſt his Children, *ibid.* His Departure for that Expedition, 243. His Death, and Encomium, *ibid.*

Frederick II, declared Emperor under the Tuition of *Philip*, by Part of the *German* Princes, the others having elected *Otho*, 255. Is confirm'd Emperor, 268. Is crown'd at *Rome*, *ibid.* Is excommunicated, 270. His Reconciliation with the Pope, 271. His Marriage, *ibid.* He enters upon

upon a *Croiſade* for the *Holy-Land*, 272. His quick Return incenſes the Pope, 273. He is again excommunicated, *ibid.* He embarks again for *Jeruſalem*, *ibid.* His Return, 274. He makes War with the Pope, *ibid.* His Reconciliation with the Pope, who takes off his Excommunication, 275. His Son *Henry* convicted of Rebellion, 276. He marries again, *ib.* Confines *Henry* in a Priſon, 277. Cauſes *Conrad* his ſecond Son to be elected King of the *Romans*, 278. His Progreſs in *Italy*, *ibid.* He is again excommunicated by the Pope, 279. Another Excommunication iſſued againſt him by another Pope in the Council of *Lyons*, 282. Lays ſiege to *Parma* in vain, 284. They attempt to poiſon him, 285. His Camp is pillag'd 286. Takes Refuge at *Naples*, 287. Divides his Territories, 288. His Death, *ibid.*

Frederick III, choſen Emperor at the ſame Time with *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, 334. Is overcome, and taken Priſoner by his Competitor, 335.

G

GELASIUS II, created Pope, 204. His Death, 205.

Geneaology of the *French* Emperors, 106, *&c.*

Godefrid, King of *Denmark*, his Deſign proves abortive, 35.

Goths, the ſhort Duration of their Reign, 10.

Gregory IV, elected Pope, and is confirm'd by the Emperor, 70. Offers himſelf as Mediator to reconcile the Differences between *Lewis* the *Debonnair* and his Sons, 75.

Gregory VII, elected Pope without the Emperor's Conſent, but nevertheleſs confirm'd by him, 170. He excommunicates ſeveral Members of the Empire, 171. Cites the Emperor *Henry* the *Great* to *Rome*, 172. Excommunicates him, 176. His Death, 179.

Gregory IX, ſucceeds *Honorius*, 272. Excommunicates the Emperor, 273. Is reconcil'd to him, 275. Excommunicates him again, 279. His Death, 280.

Guelphs and *Gibelins*, the Riſe of thoſe Names, 218. Time when thoſe two Factions firſt diſcover'd themſelves, 273, 280.

Gunther elected Emperor in Concurrence with *Charles* IV, 349. Is poiſon'd, 350.

Guelphs & Gibelins — 218.

H

HENRY I, Duke of *Saxony*, choſen Emperor, 114. Gains a Signal Victory over the *Hungarians*, *ibid.* And over *Charles* the *Simple*, 115. His Orders for the Subſiſtence of his Troops, *ibid.* Fortifies the Towns, and exerciſes the Nobility, 116. His Death and Encomium. *ibid.*

Henry II, Duke of *Bavaria*, elected Emperor, preferably to his Competitors, 139. Is crown'd at *Milan*, 140. His Journey into *Hungary* to induce Duke *Stephen* to turn Chriſtian, *ibid.* His Wars with ſeveral Princes, 141. His Interview with *Robert* King of *France*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.*

Henry III, Sirnam'd the *Black*, elected Emperor, 146. His Wars, *ib.* Depoſes the King of *Hungary*, *ib.* His Expedition into *Italy*, 147. Names *Clemens* II, Pope,

or

of his own Authority, 148. He confirms the *Romans* Election of *Victor* II, 149. Declares his Son King of the *Romans*, 150. His Death, *ibid.*

Henry IV, Sir-nam'd the *Great*, attains the Empire, 151. Is carried away, 152. Eſtabliſhes Peace in his own Dominions, 153. The Reaſon why the *Saxons* declare War againſt him, *ibid.* The States combine againſt him, 154. He prepares to reſiſt them, 155. He agrees with the Rebels, 156. Another Inſurrection, where he offers to fight a Duel, 157. Fortune contrary to this Prince, 159. A new Rebellion of the *Saxons* againſt him, 161. The Conditions of Peace he makes with them, 164. His Diſpute with the Court of *Rome* about Inveſtitures, 165. He confirms Pope *Gregory* VII's Election, 169. Is ſummon'd to *Rome* by that Pope; and he, on the other Hand, depoſes him in a Diet, 172. The Pope excommunicates him, *ibid.* Indignities, to which he ſubmits, to ſatisfy that Pontif, 173. Is excommunicated again, and depriv'd of the Imperial Dignity, 176. Goes into *Italy*, and takes *Rome* by Aſſault, 178. His Coronation, 179. His Son *Conrad* rebels againſt him, 182. Cauſes *Henry* his ſecond Son to be declared King of the *Romans*, 183. Who revolts againſt him, 185. He is depos'd 187. His Poverty, 189. His Clemency, 190. His Death, 191. His Encomium, *ibid.*

Henry V, proclaim'd Emperor during his Father's Life, 187. Is thunderſtruck, 194. His Avarice, *ibid.* Makes War againſt the *Poles*, and is defeated, 195. His Diſpute with the Pope about Inveſtitures, 197. His Expedition into *Italy*, *ibid.* His bad Reception at *Rome*, 198. Conditions of the Agreement between him and the Pope, 199, *&c.* His Coronation, *ibid.* Gives the Emperor his Father Burial, 201. His ſecond Expedition to *Rome*, 202. His Coronation, 204. Creates a Pope, *ibid.* Is excommunicated at the Council of *Rheims*, 206. Makes an Agreement with the Pope, 207. Is abſolv'd from his Excommunication, 208. Reduces the Rebels, 210. His Death, *ibid.*

Henry VI, elected Emperor in the Room of his Father *Frederick* I, 244. Is crown'd at *Rome* by the Pope, *ibid.* *Tancred*, natural Son to *William* King of *Naples* and *Sicily*, uſurps thoſe two Kingdoms from him, 245. He confirms the *Teutonick Order*, 248. His Cruelty, 250. His Precaution on the Lying in of the Empreſs his Conſort, 251. Cauſes his Son to be choſen King of the *Romans*, *ibid.* His Death, 252.

Henry VII, elected Emperor, 326. His Coronation, 327. Marries his Son to the Heireſs of *Bohemia*, 328. Puts the Count *de Wirtemberg* to the Ban of the Empire, *ibid.* Goes to *Italy* with Deſign to re-eſtabliſh the Rights and Authority of the Empire, 329. Reduces moſt of the Cities of *Italy*, as well as *Rome* it ſelf, where he is crown'd, 331. Puts the King of *Apulia* to the Ban of the Empire, 332. Embroils himſelf with the Pope, *ibid.* His Expedition againſt the King of *Naples*, and his Death, *ibid.*

Henry de Walpot elected Great Master of the *Teutonick Order*, 249.

Henry, Landgrave of *Thuringia*, elected King of the *Romans*, 283. Gains a Battle over the Emperor *Conrad* IV, 284.

Hildebrand, the *Monk*, intermeddles in the Papal Affairs, 148. And endeavours to deprive the Emperors of the Right of Inveſtitures, 165, *&c.*

Honorius III, ſucceeds Pope *Innocent* III, 268. Excommunicates the Emperor *Frederick* II, 270. Is reconcil'd to him, 271. His Death, 272.

Hungary erected into a Kingdom, 140. Broils in this Kingdom, 368.

Hus, Riſe of the Schiſm of *John Hus*, 361. A Council call'd to deſtroy it, 378. Troubles that enſued thereupon, 379. This Heretick condemn'd to be burnt, 380.

Huſſites, an Order iſſued againſt them, 382. Violences exercis'd by theſe Hereticks againſt the Eccleſiaſticks and Catholicks, *ibid.* They are reconcil'd to the Church, 387.

I

JEROME of *Prague*, a Heretick, condemn'd to be burnt, 311.

Incumbents, their Duty to ſubmit to their Sovereigns, 50.

Innocent III, Pope, who ſucceeded *Celeſtine*, uſes his utmoſt Efforts to deprive the Houſe of *Suabia* of the Empire, 253. Foments Diviſions in *Germany*, 255. Uſurps the Imperial Territories, 264. Excommunicates the Emperor, *ibid.*

Innocent IV, inherits his Predeceſſor's Hatred againſt the Emperor, 281. The Reaſon of his Broils with the Emperor, *ibid.* Takes Refuge at *Lyons*, where he aſſembles a Council, to which he ſummons the Emperor, 282. The Emperor excommunicated there, *ibid.*

Interregnum in the Empire, 297. Diſorders that happen in another *Interregnum*, 333.

Inveſtitures, Origin of the Emperor's Right to inveſt or appoint Biſhops, 50. Definition of Inveſtitures at the Beginning, 175. By whom they were given, *ibid.* Difference between the Emperor *Henry* V, and the Pope, on Account of Inveſtitures, 197. Diſpute about Inveſtitures ended under Pope *Caliſtus* II, 208.

John XXII, that Pope's pretended Right over the Government of the Emperors, and the Adminiſtration of the Affairs of the Empire, 337. Excommunicates the Emperor, 338. His Death, 343.

Julius Cæſar attains the Empire, 4. His Death, 5. The Reaſon, and Accomplices, of his Death, *ibid.*

K

KING of the *Romans*, Conditions ſettled for their Election. *Vid.* Vol. II.

D

LABARUM, Signification of this Word, 7.

Leo III, elected Pope inſtead of *Adrian* I, 38. Takes Refuge with *Charlemagne*. His Clemency to his Accuſers, 40. His Death, 62.

Leo VIII, this Pope's famous Decree, whereby he acknowledg'd *Otho* I, as Emperor of the *Romans*, and Sovereign, and King of *Italy*, 126.

Lewis, Son to *Charlemagne*, is made Aſſociate in the Empire with his Father, 54. Is proclaimed Emperor under the Name of *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, 55. Takes Poſſeſſion of the Empire, 59. Makes ſeveral Regulations in the Empire, 61. Is crown'd at *Rheims* by Pope *Stephen* V, 62. Treats the *Saracen* Ambaſſadors magnificently, 63. Puniſhes the Treaſon of *Bernard* King of *Italy*, *ibid.* Defeats *Mortman* Duke of *Brittany*, 64. He is reconcil'd to his Brothers, 65. His Son's revolt, 71, *&c.* Is made Priſoner, and afterwards releas'd 73. He pardons his Sons, *ibid.* They unite and make War againſt him jointly, 75. He ſurrenders himſelf to them in their Camp, 76. They canton out the Imperial Territories into three Parts, *ibid.* He is ill us'd by his Son *Lothaire*, 77. Is deliver'd from Priſon, and re-advanc'd to the Throne by his two Sons *Lewis* and *Pepin*, 78, *&c.* Pardons *Lothaire*, 80. Puniſhes the Rebels, 81. Divides his Territories, 82. Agrees with his Son *Lewis* King of *Bavaria*, *ibid.* And with *Lothaire*, 83. The laſt Diviſion of this Emperor's Dominions, *ibid.* His Death, 85.

Lewis, ſecond Son to *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, is made King of *Bavaria* by his Father, 63. Provinces added to his Kingdom, 68. He joins his Brothers, 75. Delivers and re-eſtabliſhes his Father, 78. Arms againſt his Brother *Lothaire*, 87. Is defeated, *ibid.* Is victorious in his Turn. 88.

Lewis II, eldeſt Son to *Lothaire* I, is proclaim'd Emperor, 90. His great Qualities, *ibid.* Reduces *Adalgiſes* Duke of *Benevento* to an Agreement, *ibid.* His Death, 91.

Lewis, King of *Germany*, his Death, 93.

Lewis III. Sir-nam'd the *Stammerer*, crown'd Emperor, 94. *Carloman* diſputes the Empire with him, 95. His Death, *ibid.*

Lewis IV, Son to the Emperor *Arnold*, elected Emperor, 100. Is conquer'd by the *Hungarians*, and oblig'd to pay them Tribute, 101. Dies with Sorrow, 102.

Lewis V, of *Bavaria*, Emperor, Competitor with *Frederick* III, 334. Defeats and takes *Frederick* Priſoner, 335. Reigns alone, 336. Is excommunicated by the Pope, 338. His Expedition into *Italy*, 340. Cauſes himſelf to be crown'd at *Rome*, 341. Creates a Pope by the Name of *Nicolas* V, 342. His Return to *Germany*, 343. His Victory over the King of *Bohemia*, 344. Takes off the Pope's Interdict, 345. His Advantages over *Charles* of *Luxembourg* his Competitor, 347. His Death, *ibid.*

Lindevit, Duke of *Croatia* defeats Part of *Lewis* the *Debonnair*'s Army by Treaſon, 65. Is conquer'd, and oblig'd to ſave himſelf in a Caſtle where he dies, 66.

Lothaire, Son to *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, declar'd Co-regent of the Empire by his Father, 63. His Marriage with *Hermingarde*, Daughter

Daughter to Count *Hugh*, 64. Cauſes himſelf to be crown'd Emperor, 66. Is declar'd Succeſſor to *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, 68. Takes Poſſeſſion of the Government, 73. He joins with his Brothers to make War upon his Father, 74. Miſuſes his Father, 77. Is reconcil'd to his Father, who pardons him, 80. The Reaſon why he revolts again, 82. Agrees with his Father, 83. Cauſes himſelf to be acknowledg'd Emperor, under the Name of *Lotbaire* I, and ſeizes on his Father's Dominions, 85. Arms againſt his Brothers, 87. Is defeated, and eſcapes, 88. Agreement between him and his two Brothers, 89. Diſpoſes of his Dominions in Favour of his Children, *ibid.* Turns Monk, and dies, *ibid.*

Lotbaire II, elected and crown'd Emperor, 212. Pays great Honours to the Pope, 213. Goes into *Italy* to re-eſtabliſh Pope *Innocent* II, 214. Introduces the *Roman* Law into the Empire, *ibid.* His ſecond Expedition into *Italy*, 215. His Death, *ibid.*

Luitgard vanquiſh'd and condemned to Death by *Charlemagne*, 22.

M

MAGNENTIUS, the Infidelity and Death of the Tyrant, 9.

Marquiſs, Signification of that Word, 14.

Maxentius overcome by *Conſtantine*, 7.

Michael, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, ſends Ambaſſadors to *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, 70. His Death, 71.

Milan, that City taken and ruin'd by *Frederick* I, 232.

Mortality in *France* and *Germany* in the Year 829, 67.

Mortman, Duke of *Brittany*, defeated by *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, 64.

N

NIEDERMUNSTER, the Antiquity of that Abbey, 71.

Nicolas V, created Pope by the Emperor, 342.

Normans wage War with *France* under *Charles* the *Groſs*, 97. Conquer'd by the Emperor *Arnold*, 99.

O

OSTROGOTHS, their Government but of ſhort Continuance, 10.

Otho, *Duke* of *Saxony*, refuſes the Empire, 112.

Otho I, call'd the *Great*, elected Emperor, 119. His Coronation, 120. His Wars againſt *Boleſlaus*, Uſurper of the Duchy of *Bohemia*, 121, Againſt *Henry* his Brother, 122. Goes into *Italy*, 123. Marries *Alix* Widow to *Lothaire* King of *Italy*, *ibid.* His Generoſity to *Berenger*, *ibid.* His Son *Luitolf* revolts againſt him, *ibid.* He pardons him, 124. He goes to *Rome*, where he is crown'd Emperor by Pope *John* XII, *ibid.* He aſſembles a Council at *Rome*, at which he preſides, 125. Is acknowledg'd Sovereign of *Italy*, 126. Beſieges and takes *Rome*, 127. Revenges himſelf of the Perfidy of *Nicephorus* Emperor

of *Conſtantinople*, 129. His Piety, *ibid.* His Death. 130.

Otho II, ſucceeds his Father, 130. Reduces *Henry* of *Bavaria* to Reaſon, who would diſpute the Empire with him, *ibid.* Gives the Duchy of *Lorrain* to *Charles*, Brother to *Lothaire* King of *France*, 131. Is taken by Pyrates, 132. Defeats the *Saracens* in *Italy*, *ibid.* Cauſes the Throats of divers *Romans* to be cut at an Entertainment, *ibid.* By this Action acquires the Name of *Bloody*, *ibid.* His Death, 133.

Otho III, ſucceeds his Father *Otho* II, altho' an Infant, 133. His Expedition to *Rome*, 135. Is crown'd there by the Pope, *ibid.* Cauſes the Empreſs his Wife to be burnt, 136. His ſecond Expedition into *Italy*, where he is poiſon'd, 138. His Encomium, 139.

Otho IV, Duke of *Saxony*, elected Emperor by ſeveral *German* Princes, 254. His Advantages over *Philip*, Regent of the Empire for *Frederick* II, 255. His ſecond Coronation, *ibid.* Diſgraces that befal him, 256. His Wager with the King of *France*, 261. Manages the Eccleſiaſticks, 262. His Expedition to *Italy*, 263. His Coronation at *Rome*, *ibid.* His Feint to reſide at *Milan*, 264. Retakes what the Pope had uſurp'd, *ibid.* Is excommunicated by the Pope, *ibid.* Makes War with *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, 266. Is overcome, *ibid.* His Death, 267.

Ottocarus, King of *Bohemia*, oppoſes the Election of the Emperor *Rodolphus*, 306. Is declared a Rebel to the Empire, *ibid.* Is kill'd in a Battle againſt the Emperor, 308.

P

PASCHAL I, elected Pope in the Room of *Stephen*, 62. His Incroachment upon the Imperial Rights, 66. His Death, 67.

Paſchal II, deprives the Emperor of the Inveſtitures, 194, 202. His Death, 204.

Pepin, King, Father to *Charlemagne* and *Carloman*, divides his Dominions between them, 12.

Pepin, Son to *Lewis* the *Debonnair*, made King of *Aquitain*, and ſent by the Emperor his Father againſt the *Saracens*, 69. His Revolt, 72. The Emperor pardons him, 73. He eſcapes from the Priſon where his Father had confin'd him, and takes Refuge in *Gaſcony*, 74. He joins *Lothaire* and *Lewis* to make War againſt his Father, 75. He delivers and re-eſtabliſhes his Father by the Aſſiſtance of his Brother *Lewis*, 78. His Death, 82.

Philip declared Regent of the Empire, and Guardian to *Frederick* II, 253. Elected King of the *Romans*, 255. Excommunicated by the Pope, *ibid.* The Succeſs of his Arms, *ibid.* His ſecond Coronation, 256. His laſt Efforts againſt *Otho*, 257. Remains Maſter of the Empire, *ibid.* Is reconcil'd to the Pope, 258. And to *Otho*, *ibid.* His Death, *ibid.* His Encomium, 259.

Philip the *Fair*, King of *France*, aſpires to the Empire, 324.

Popes, Proofs that it was not in their Power to confer the Empire, 43. They never had any Right to give away Crowns, 45. Definition and Extent of the Pope's Authority, *ibid.* &c. Upon what Foundation ſome maintain that the Popes have a Right to confer the Empire, 47. Explication of this Gift, 49. The Multiplicity of Popes diſturbs the Church, 379.

Prodigies in the Air, 70.

R

REGALIA, Definition of the Rights of the *Regalia*, 59. Difference between the *Regalia*, and the Rights of the Prerogative, *ibid.* &c.

Reginger, Domeſtick to *Henry* IV, carry'd away by the Devil, 159.

Richard, of *England*, elected Emperor, 294. His Death, 296.

Robert, choſen Emperor, 364. Endeavours to heal the Breaches in the Empire, 365. The Reaſon of his going into *Italy*, *ibid.* Returns to *Germany*, where he dies, 366.

Rodolphus, Duke of *Suabia*, elected Emperor, 175. Crown'd by the Pope, 176. His Defeat and Death, 177. &c.

Rodolphus of *Hapsbourg*, Sirnam'd the *Merciful*, choſen Emperor, 303. His ſingular Piety, 302. His Coronation, 304. He re-eſtabliſhes Peace in *Germany*, 305. His Election diſapprov'd by *Ottocarus* King of *Bohemia*, 306. Conquers *Auſtria*, 307. Defeats *Ottocarus*, who is kill'd in Battle, 308. He ſells the Privileges to the Cities which they enjoy at Preſent, 349. Orders the *German* Tongue to be us'd in the Empire, *ibid.* Would have ſecured the Empire to his Son, but is oppos'd by the States, *ibid.* He foretels his own Death, 310. His Death and Encomium, *ibid.* His free Manner, *ibid.* His Sagacity in adminiſtring Juſtice, 312. His Modeſty in his Dreſs, 313.

Romans erect themſelves into a Commonwealth, under the Government of two Conſuls, 2. How advantageous this Government was to them, *ibid.* Reaſons why they have no Right to confer the Empire, 43. The Opinion of thoſe who maintain the contrary, and upon what founded, 47. They take an Oath never to elect any but a *German* Prince Emperor, 128.

Rome beſieg'd and taken by *Otho* I, 127.

Romulus, when he had laid the Foundation of the *Roman* Empire, 2.

S

SAXONS overcome by *Charlemagne*. 17, 20. Conquer *Charlemagne*'s Army in their Turn, under the Command of *Adalgiſes* and *Geilon*, 24. Agreement of the *Saxons* with *Charlemagne*, and their Converſion to the Faith, 27. They revolt againſt the Emperor *Henry* IV, 153, 161, &c. 177.

Schiſm, about the Election of a Pope, 229.

Sigiſmund, Broils in *Hungary* during his Minority, 368. A ſtrange Outrage committed by the Intendant of *Croatia* upon his Queen and Mother-in-law, 370.

Marches into *Hungary* against the Rebels, 371. His Wife deliver'd to him, *ibid.* Is crown'd King of *Hungary*, *ibid.* Punishes the Parricide committed on his Mother-in-Law, 372. His Concern for the Death of his Queen drives him on to ill Counsels, *ib.* Is overcome by *Bajazet*, 374. His Debauches oblige his Subjects to confine him, *ibid.* His Address in getting his Liberty, *ibid.* Arms and returns to *Hungary*, 375. Is elected Emperor by Part of the Electors, *ibid.* Sells the Electorate of *Brandenburg*, 376. Calls a Council to procure the Peace of the Church, and extirpate the Schism of *John Hus*, 377. Visits the King of *France*, 381. Receives the iron Crown at *Milan*, 385. Is crown'd by the Pope, *ib.* His Return to *Germany*, 386. Is crown'd in *Bohemia*, 388. His Death and Encomium, *ibid.*

Stephen V, chosen Pope in the Place of *Leo* III, 62. His Death, *ibid.*

Swiss begin to recover their Liberty, 320.

Synods held for the Church Discipline, 55.

T

TANCRED makes himself Master of the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, 245.

Taborists. Vide *Hussites*.

Teutonick, Institution of that Order, 246. Its Statutes, 248. The Number of its Knights at the Beginning, 249. Decay of this Order, 384.

Theodosius the *Great* divides the Empire, 9.

Triumvirate, by who form'd, 5.

Turks, Progress of those Infidels in *Hungary*, 374.

V

VICTOR IV, chosen Pope, 229. The Emperor supports his Election, 230.

W

WENCESLAUS, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, 358. His ill Qualities, 359. The States take Notice of his Extravagancies, 360. His Debauches, 361. Is put in Prison, *ibid.* Escapes, *ibid.* Sells the Rights of the Empire, 362. Is deposed, 363. His Death, 364.

Wilhormachus. Tragical End of this Duke of *Brittany*, 67.

William, Count of *Holland*, chosen Emperor, 291. His Misfortunes, and Death, 292.

Wirtemberg, the Count of that Name, put to the Ban of the Empire, 328.

FINIS.